

THE NEW CHINA

BY GRAYBILL & CHU

英漢
對照 **新中國**



啓明書局印行



3 2169 8010 6

告本書讀者

一提到中等學校的英文讀本，誰都會聯想到「新中國」這麼一本書，可見這冊英文書流傳之廣，無意中已經握得了中國學生必讀書籍的地位了。事實上「新中國」也自有牠成爲權威的英文讀本的原因：

- (一) 「新中國」的文理淺顯，文句實用，頗合乎一般中等學生的口胃。
- (二) 「新中國」的思想純正愛國情緒濃厚，頗適應新時代中國的環境需要。
- (三) 「新中國」的編制完善章節顯明，頗便於分段教讀。
- (四) 「新中國」的內容和結構，都是依照三民主義的教育爲規範的，從愛國愛家鄉說起，一直到和平守秩序爲止。其中對於民權和民生的問題，也頗多發揮。

總之，「新中國」是一冊完善的英文讀本，也是一冊可讀的公民叢書。可以當英文讀，也可以作公民課本讀。因此，一般中等學校的英文教師都很歡喜把它選作英文讀本。

據統計「新中國」自從初版問世迄今，差不多已有十

年。已經不知推行了若干地方，經過了多少學校當軸的採用；中間曾經原著者增訂過一次，把最近中國政府的機構，也都詳細列入，才成爲目前這一冊「新中國」。

「新中國」的原著者 H. B. Graybill 是美國人，曾在中國傳教數十年，對於中國的情形有着深切的認識和不可等閑的同情心。「新中國」之所以能够成爲「新中國」，也就是因爲他在書中所流露的那種同情心，對於中國學生引起了驚人的反響。

本書所以要譯成漢文，而且又排爲對照，乃是要便利讀者的研習英語。並不是給讀者在閱讀時，多增加一點偷懶的便利，這是要請讀者萬勿誤會的。至於註解：也已力求詳盡，做到了註解的能事。讀者可以隨時去觀摩體驗。

本書取名新中國，顧名思義，當然是一冊新時代中國的寫照，一服新中國青年的強心劑。譯者但願這冊書流傳之廣，能與新中國青年活躍的朝氣並傳不朽。至於中國青年爲什麼不能讀一本國人自編的英文讀本，而須借重於客鄉的著作，那是英文讀本的稿荒問題，也是整個中國英文界的大問題，這裏可以姑置不論。

英 漢 對 照
新 中 國
目 次

第一章 愛國.....3

(1)愛家鄉。(2)愛家鄉的意義。(3)回到家鄉去。(4)村落和國家。(5)我為什麼愛中國。(6)我愛中國因為她的人民。(7)我愛她因為她給我們的禮物。(8)中國的國旗。(9)中國人定要尊重他的國家。

第二章 中國一個足以自傲的國家.....19

(1)中國是先進的國家。(2)中國有可驚的歷史。(3)中國產生東亞的文化。(4)中國是一個有偉大紀念物的地方。(5)中國是“中央王國”。(6)向前看和向後看。

第三章 中國一應當保存的國家.....35

(1)寶貴本國的事物。(2)寶貴我們自己的國家。(3)地位優越的價值。(4)世界上亞洲的地位。(5)中國在亞洲的地位。(6)中國的面積和人口。(7)中國的特性。(8)人民的品性。

第四章 建國者.....55

(1)先驅者的精神。(2)中國尙未人滿。(3)建國。(4)建國方略。(5)死了的國家和活着的國家。(6)現代世界的口號。(7)中國的學生。(8)愛國烈士。(9)苦鬥的英雄。(10)廣大的眼光。(11)國家英雄和世界英雄。

第五章 穩固性與永久性.....81

(1)國家的高貴子女。(2)人民的可靠性。(3)中國立國已歷若干年代。(4)舊歐洲的新研究。(5)舊中國的新思想。(6)破壞抑建設。(7)空談家抑實行家。(8)一個建設團體。

第六章 企業.....99

(1)企業的精神。(2)志向和企業。(3)發明和企業。(4)廣告。(5)電影。(6)開發中國的富源。(7)運輸。

第七章 效率——經濟與成功127

(1)企業和效率。(2)兩個回國的學生。(3)經濟或浪費。(4)品質的經濟。(5)使用東西的三種方法。(6)材料和出品的浪費。(7)中國是貧窮麼？(8)商業的國家經濟。(9)由設備上獲得充分的利益。(10)效率和公衆服務。

第八章 保守147

(1)保守富源。(2)中國有偉大的富源要保守。(3)保存天然的物品。(4)森林必須保存。(5)森林必須要適當地用它。(6)一件悲慘的故事。(7)河流是有價值的。(8)河流要在堤岸裏面。(9)河流的運輸。(10)河流供給食物和飲料。(11)水力的地位。

第九章 時間和勞力165

(1)節省時間。(2)時間要素的重要。(3)要敏捷。(4)中國正在趕上去。(5)急促的呼聲。(6)省工計劃。(7)中國的大宗人工供應。(8)罷工和停業。(9)廢人。(10)半廢人。

第十章 節儉，投資，和安全189

(1)金錢不用就是浪費。(2)使錢幣運行。(3)浪費是什麼？(4)中國之節儉。(5)娛樂的節儉。(6)投資。(7)賭博。(8)銀行聚集資本。(9)銀行供給營業資本。(10)中國因爲高利貸而受着妨礙。(11)危險愈大利率愈高。(12)借錢太多。(13)借貸常是錯誤的。(14)國家的借貸。(15)中國該借外債麼？(16)營業的穩固性。(17)以保險抵償損失。(18)人壽保險。(19)誰監察這些監察人？

第十一章 營業與服務223

(1)古代的人民分類。(2)服務是估量的東西。(3)金錢並不污穢。(4)老式中人。(5)金錢是什麼。(6)貨物和服務。(7)什麼是營業。(8)勞工神聖。(9)服務是現代的口號。(10)金科玉律。(11)紅十字會。(12)學生如何幫助國家。(13)中國人應該天天爲國家服務。(14)一些特別的服務方法。(15)要有一技之長。(16)學校時期過了以後你打算怎樣呢？(17)中國人應該專精中國文字。(18)使用你一生的機會。

第十二章 科學與國家的進步253

(1)科學是什麼？(2)藝術與科學。(3)科學時代。(4)西洋科學的發展。(5)中國需要科學。(6)純粹科學與應用科學。(7)科學精神是什麼？(8)中國需要科學家。(9)中國科學家的將來(10)醫學科學。(11)科學的職業。(12)生物的科學。(13)食物生產的科學。(14)自然科學。(15)社會科學。(16)學校科學。(17)科學和數學。

第十三章 人民的生活293

(1)我們人民要些什麼？(2)一般福利。(3)生命的保全。(4)生命和自由。(5)家庭與自由。(6)幾種奴隸的方式。(7)永久的警醒是自由的代價。(8)健康和舒適。(9)現代家庭。(10)城市裏的西洋家庭。(11)小鎮裏面的西洋家庭。(12)西洋鄉村家庭。(13)農村的中國。(14)節儉與追求快樂。(15)食口太多。

第十四章 健康—體力—和精力333

(1)你的成功要倚靠你的健康。(2)你國家的成功也靠着它。(3)中國人是耐勞苦的人民。(4)健康為獲得成功與把握成功所必需的。(5)男童子軍與女童子軍。(6)我們有多少人是健康的？(7)為什麼要熱心地去找尋健康。(8)「安全第一」或是「我要留心」。(9)個人的攝生法。(10)疾病是什麼？(11)傳染病(12)預防疾病。(13)清潔的食物和飲料。(14)媒介物或居停主人。(15)抵抗疾病。(16)肺病。(17)受傷和局部的傳染。(18)醫院和看護。(19)急救法和家庭救護。(20)麻醉劑，酒精，和專賣藥品。(21)公共健康和衛生。(22)一些重要的衛生規條。

第十五章 中國的青年379

(1)兒童時期。(2)兒童是人民的一部分。(3)戶內和戶外運動。(4)公共體育場。(5)保護兒童。(6)一個國家保護它的兒童是怎樣的。(7)青年到前線去。(8)有教育傳統的國家。(9)教育能夠贖還麼？(10)學校幫助建立橋樑和鐵道。(11)有用的公民比之男女名人更為需要。(12)學校把平等機會給予全民。(13)教育將成為強迫。(14)一個民主國家的教育。(15)中國的大眾教育運動。(16)輿論。(17)白雲村之救濟事業。(18)一件奮勵的故事。(19)高等教育。(20)初等教育。(21)誰做這工作？(22)婦女與教育。(23)援手。(24)我們怎樣能幫助自己的學校。

第十六章 自由，法律，與秩序437

(1)十月十日。(2)每個公民該尊重自由和適當地運用它。(3)自由是什麼？(4)怎樣能保衛自由？(5)組織。(6)為什麼須要規則？(7)規則防止擾累。(8)家庭要有規則。(9)規則的另一名詞叫做「章程」。(10)沒有人超於法律之上。(11)尊重法律。(12)法律的實施。(13)公道是為每個人的。(14)法律和秩序。(15)選治。

第十七章 政府和公共事業475

(1)政府為一種組織。(2)公僕。(3)國際服務。(4)辦理人民的邦務。(5)電報和無線電的業務。(6)另一羣的公僕。(7)陸軍和海軍。(8)裁減陸軍。(9)文武官員。(10)公共事業的費用。(11)權與能。(12)在學校裏的政府實習。(13)建國大綱。(14)政府的五種行政權。(15)國民政府的組織法。(16)行政院。(17)立法院。(18)司法院。(19)考試院。(20)監察院。(21)統一和中央政府。(22)孫逸仙博士的遺囑。(23)三民主義。

THE NEW CHINA

新 中 國

CHAPTER I

PATRIOTISM¹

1. Love of Home

Everyone loves his home. He loves it whether the 地方 home is large or small, old or new. It is frequently the place where he was born, where for years his parents lived and near which *reside*² his *relatives*³ and friends. In a sense it is the place of all others that really seems to belong to him.

Out in the Atlantic Ocean, far from any coast, there is a small island which you would think a very poor place to live. You would not like to *spend*⁴ one night there. It is so *rocky*⁵ that little grows there. *Storms*⁶ often *sweep*⁷ over it. Clouds hang above it and *shut out*⁸ the sunshine for weeks at a time. There are no trees; so the people build little houses of rough stones and *hide*⁹ from the storms or the hot sun in these *huts*¹⁰. They cannot keep *grain*¹¹, because the many rats eat it up *at once*¹². They live on fish almost all the time. So few ships pass that the people rarely see anything of the rest of the world. If a *steamer*¹³ passes, they jump into their boats and *row*¹⁴ out to it. They just wish to see some other people, to learn something of the big world, or to get something to eat. Most of the time they spend their lives *doing things* that you would call very *uninteresting*¹⁵.

When a *certain*¹⁶ government learned of the condition of these people, it *offered*¹⁷ to move them to some other part of the world and to help them get a new start in life. But, strange as it may seem, none of them wanted to leave. This poor little island was their home. They had built humble little huts, had learned to love the *hard life*¹⁸, the storms and waves that beat on the rocky shores, and they wanted to live and die there.

1 愛國。 2 住。 3 親戚。 4 度過。 5 岩石重疊的。 6 暴風雨。 7 掃過。 8 遮沒。 9 躲藏。 10 小屋。 11 穀物。 12 立即。 13 輪船。 14 划。 15 沒有趣味的。 16 某。 17 企圖。 18 艱苦的生活。

第一章 愛國

一 愛家鄉

每一個人都愛他的家鄉。無論這個家鄉或大或小，或舊或新，他總是愛它。在那裏常是他生長的地方，他的雙親住在那裏已歷有年數，而他的親戚朋友住在它的近處。在某種意識上這是別人的地方，而又似乎確實屬於他的。

在大西洋中，遠離任何一條海岸，那裏有一座小島，這島上你必以為是生活很苦的地方。你決不高興在那裏過一夜。那裏岩石重疊，很少有植物生長。暴風雨往往掠過島上。在某一時有數星期之久雲兒佈空，遮沒陽光。沒有樹木，所以人民用粗石造成小屋，在這些小屋中躲避暴風雨和烈日。他們不能收藏穀物，因為有許多老鼠立即把它吃完。差不多他們永遠以食魚為生。經過的船隻是那樣的少，所以人民難得見到世界上的別的東西。如果有輪船經過，他們跳進自己的小船，划向前去。他們正願意看看別的人民，以學到一點巨大世界上的東西，和得到一點東西來吃。他們一生所費的太部分的時間，所做的事情你必要說是很沒有趣味的。

其時有某國政府曉得了這些人民的情形，就企圖把他們移植於世界上的另一地方，並且幫助他們得到一種新生活的開始。但是，看起來奇怪得很，他們竟沒有一個要離開。這個困苦的小島是他們的家鄉。他們已建有卑陋的小屋，已知道愛戀這個艱苦的生活，暴風雨和打在石岸上的波濤，他們願意生於斯，死於斯。

2. What Love of Home Means

Almost all people have this love of home, a strong love for some place—an island, a town, a mountain. They are *eager*¹ to work for their home, and even to fight for it if necessary. When the people of that little island *refused*² to *give up*³ their home for a *sunnier*⁴ place, where they would have more food, more clothes, more pleasure, they showed an *intense*⁵ love of their home.

If these people loved their poor little native island so much, should we not love this great country of China more? Love of one's country begins at home. He loves his little village or farm or his home town or city. It is his own; it is like a part of himself.

3. "Back to my Native Village"

The Chinese have, perhaps, more *loyalty*⁶ to their *ancestral*⁷ homes than any other people. This conversation once occurred in Shanghai, but probably not once only—maybe a thousand times :

"Where are you from, Mr. Wang?"

"I am from the southern part of Kwangtung."

"When did you leave there?"

"Four *generations*⁸ ago!"

Although his family had left there long ago, and he himself had never seen Kwangtung, he *considered*⁹ that old home as still his, to be loved and honored and supported, and to be visited just as soon as he could find the *opportunity*¹⁰.

If someone should say that this *undying*¹¹ love for one's own little country home and village is a very *remarkable*¹² thing, you might reply that it is as common in China as one's love for his *parents*,¹³—just as common and just as

1 熱心的。 2 拒絕。 3 放棄。 4 較愉快的。 5 熱烈的。 6 忠實。 7 祖先的。 8 代。 9 以爲。 10 機會。 11 永恆的。 12 非常的。 13 雙親。

二 愛家鄉的意義

差不多全部人民都有愛鄉之心，一種對於某幾處地方強烈愛戀的心——一座島，一個城鎮，一座山。他們熱心爲他們的家鄉工作，甚至在必要時爲它而戰鬥。當那座小島上的人民拒絕放棄他們的家鄉而到較爲愉快的地方去，雖在那裏他們必定可以有較多的食物，較多的衣服，較多的快樂，這是他們熱愛家鄉的表示。

這些人民對於他們的困苦小島尙且這樣的愛戀，我們還不該更愛這個中華大國嗎？一個人的愛國始於愛家。他愛他的小村落，田地，和他的鄉鎮城市。這個地方是他自己的；好像他身體上的一部分。

三 回到家鄉去

中國人也許比別的人民更忠於他們的祖先的故鄉。這個談話是曾經在上海聽到的，但是恐怕不止一次——也許有一千次哩：

『你從那裏來，王先生？』

『我從廣東的南部來。』

『你在什麼時候離開那裏的？』

『四代以前了！』

即使他的家庭已離開那裏好久了，他本人從未見過廣東，他仍以爲那個老家是他的，他該愛之敬之，與助之，一到他能找到機會就應立即去遊歷一番。

如果有人會說這種對於個人小鄉屋和村落的永續的愛是件很不平常的事，你可以回答在中國這是和愛他的雙親同樣地普

natural. Perhaps it *grew up*¹ merely out of the simple love for one's own father, mother, family, and friends. Perhaps in this country it is too common to *attract*² much notice, but the fact is that this is the root of patriotism. Here begins to grow the great power that *binds*³ a country together. This loyalty on a small *scale*⁴ in town and country *promises*⁵ wonderful things for China's future.

4. Village and Nation

A certain *world-famous*⁶ Chinese statesman recently said: "Although I am now a very old man, have had wide experience, and find my interest in many important *affairs*,⁷ I still like to go back to the little village where I was a boy. I like to talk to the elders there, to be friends with them again, to get their point of view, to feel with them about the land in which they live. I get something from them that is good for me."

Is it not probable that this loyalty to his old home village helped him to become a statesman of national and *international*⁸ fame⁹? The village is a real part of the nation. The nation is made up of such small parts. To help one helps the other. To love one ought to make us love the other. Just as we say "my own home", we must say, with the same sort of loyalty, "my own *district*"¹⁰. So, too, we must say "my own province," and, most important of all, "my own nation." If my loyalty and love stop at the small *circle*¹¹ of my family and friends, how small a love and loyalty that will be, and how poor the chance that my district or province will ever become a better place for my relatives and friends to live in! If our love and loyalty stop within our own village, district, or province, how limited that patriotism will be, and how small a chance will China have to become a great nation! Let us *hold*¹² full and strong our small loyalties while we build up equally natural, full, and strong loyalties to our whole nation of homes, villages, cities, districts, and provinces.

1 生成。 2 引起。 3 團結。 4 型。 5 保證。 6 世界聞名的。 7 事務。 8 國際的。 9 名譽。 10 縣。 11 範圍。 12 抓緊住。

通的——同樣地普通，和同樣地自然。也許這種愛戀只是出於對父母家庭，朋友的簡單的愛的生成。也許在中國這種愛戀太普通了，不足以引起多大的注意，但是在事實上這是愛國的根苗，這裏開始生長出偉大的力量以固合全國。這種忠於一個小型的城鎮和鄉村的心保證着中國有一個不可衡量的將來。

四 村落和國家

一位世界聞名的中國某政治家最近說過：『雖然現在我是個很老的人，已有廣博的經驗，而對於許多重要事務頗為關心，我仍是願意回到我童時的小村落裏。我歡喜和那裏的長者談天，重新和他們做朋友，獲得他們的觀察點，和他們在所居的地上一同感知。我從他們那裏得到一點有利於我的東西。』

是不是顯然這種對於家鄉的忠誠助他成爲國內國外聞名的政治家麼？村落實爲國家的一部分。國家是這許多小部分組成的。幫助一個人就是幫助別個人。愛一個人應當讓我們愛別一個。正如我們說『我自己的家，』我們必得說，以同類的忠誠而言，『我自己的縣。』因此，我們也必得說『我自己的省，』而總之最重要的是，『我自己的國家。』如果我的忠誠和愛戀止於我的家庭和朋友的範圍裏，那末這種愛戀和忠誠是怎樣的狹小呀，而我的縣或省恆成爲更好的地方以居我親戚朋友的機會是怎樣的稀少呀！如果我們的愛和忠誠止於我們自己的村落，縣省之中，那種愛國心將怎樣地狹小啊，而中國成爲一個大國的機會又怎樣地少呀！讓我們充實地，強固地抓握我們小小的忠誠，同時我們造成對於由家，村，城，縣，省而成的整個國家有相等的自然，充實，和強固的忠誠。

5. Why I love China

I wonder how many people could sit down and write out at once the reasons they have for loving their own country. One might *declare*¹ that he loved his country so naturally, so like a child's loving his own father and mother, that he could not give any other reason. "I love my mother only because she is my mother," he would say. This is what one student wrote:

I love my country, because it is my fatherland. If you say that you love your country because it is strong and *productive*,² you are not a true *patriot*;³ for you may have a stronger and more productive country by becoming a citizen of a country not your own. If you love your country because it is your fatherland, you are a true patriot.—TENG I CH'IU

However, there are probably many other good reasons that could be given. It is a good thing to try to give them. It is a good thing to try to state your reasons for anything. It is good to try to say why you like your school. It is good to stop at the end of a day or week or month or term or year and try to say exactly what you have found good in it, what you are thankful for. It is good to try to say why you love your own mother.

While reading this book you might stop here and write down at least one good reason you have for loving China.

6. I love her for her People

A student whose name is Chang Chin Te says:

The first reason for me to love my country is that I am a citizen of that country. I belong to it. But there are further reasons. One of them is that we Chinese, the citizens of China, all come from the same *original*,⁴ *ancient tribe*⁵. It *spread*⁶ to the east and then to the south until all the land was *settled*⁷ by our own people.

1 宣稱。 2 富庶。 3 愛國者。 4 本原。 5 古老部族。 6 展佈。 7 定居。

五 我為什麼愛中國

我不明白有多少人能夠坐下立即寫出他們所有的愛自己的國家的理由。有人會宣稱他愛他的國家是這樣地自然，正像孩子的愛他父母，所以他別無理由可說。『我愛我的母親就因為她是我的母親，』他會說。這是一位學生所寫的：

我愛我的國家，因為它是我的祖國，如果你說你愛你的國家因為它的強大和富產，那你就不是忠實的愛國者；因為由於成為異國的公民，你會有一個更強大，生產更富的國家了。如果你愛你的國家因為它是你的祖國，那你才是忠實的愛國者。——談意樞。

畢竟顯然有許多別的好理由能舉出來。試把它們舉出來是一件好事情。對於無論何事試述其理由是一件好事情。試說你為什麼歡喜你的學校是好的。在一日，一星期，一月，一學期，一年的終了時試確切地說出你所找到的好處是什麼，你所感謝的是什麼，這是好的。試說你為什麼愛你的母親也是好的。

當你讀這本書時，你必得停在這裏，只少寫下一個你所有的愛中國的好理由。

六 我愛中國因為她的人民

一位學生，他的名字是張承德說：

我愛我國的第一個理由就是我是本國公民，我是屬於中國的。但是還有別的理由。其中之一就是我們中國人，中國的公民，都來自同一本原的古老部族。這個部族展佈於東方，於是再行向南，直到中國全部都為我們自己的人民所定居。

You see he loves China because it is the land of his own people. Here is another student, Li Jen Lung, who loves China because he loves the people themselves:

I love China because of her people. They number *some*¹ four hundred millions. They are *descendants*² of the early civilized people of the yellow race. I love them. I love them partly because I believe I can help them. I can help to lead them into the *paths*³ of modern civilization.

7. I love her for her Gifts⁴ to us

A Chinese *proverb*⁵ says, "When you have water to drink, think of its *source*."⁶ It means when you have received some *benefit*⁷, you should think of the *benefactor*¹. Just think of the rich *harvest*⁹ of good things we have received from our *forefathers*,¹⁰ a harvest which they *sowed*¹¹ for us to *reap*¹²! Did you ever stop to think that if you or I had been put when a baby among *savages*,¹³ we should have grown up as wild and uncivilized as those savages? We receive the rich gifts of the ages. Shall we not love and honor those who have gone before and handed them down to us? Here is what one student says about it:

A child loves its parents because they have given their love to it. A student loves his school because he is receiving benefits and *privileges*¹⁴ from it. It is the same with love for one's country. I am a citizen of China. She protects me by her laws and gives me wonderful opportunities. Many heroes in the world's history have *rendered*¹⁵ unselfish service to *repay*¹⁶ their debt of *gratitude*¹⁷ to their mother countries. We are now studying to prepare ourselves to pay what we owe to our country. Else we are no citizens of China!

WEI SHUNG CHANG

Think how long it has taken China to collect all the good things she pours into our hands! It makes us love

1 大約。 2 子孫。 3 途徑。 4 禮物。 5 格言。 6 源。 7 恩惠。 8 恩人。
9 收穫。 10 祖先。 11 播種。 12 收穫。 13 野蠻人。 14 特權。 15 償過。
16 酬報。 17 感恩。

你得明白他愛中國因爲它是他自己人的土地。這兒還有一位學生，李仁龍，他愛中國因爲他愛中國的人民：

我愛中國因爲她的人民。他們總計約有四萬萬。他們是開化甚早的黃色人種的子孫。我愛他們。一半是因爲我相信我能幫助他們。我能幫助領導他們走進新文化的途徑。

七 我愛她因爲她給我們的禮物

中國有句格言說，『飲水思源。』它的意義就是當你受到一點恩惠，你必得想到這位恩人。想一想我們從祖先那裏得到的許多好東西的豐富收穫，一種他們爲我們播種的收穫吧！你會停下來想過麼？如果你或我在孩提時置於野蠻人之間，我們長成起來必是和那些野蠻人一樣的野蠻和不開化呢？我們接收年代的豐富禮物。我們還不該愛敬已經過去的而手贈一切與我們的人麼？這裏是一位學生說及此點的話：

一個孩子愛他的父母，因爲他們曾以他們的愛給他。一個學生愛他的學校，因爲他在校中接受到利益和特權。人愛他的國家也是同樣的。我是一個中國公民。她以她的法律保護我，而給我不可衡量的機遇，世界史中的許多英雄會做過於己無利的事業以酬報他們對於母國感恩的債務。我們現在正在求學以準備付還我們欠中國的債。否則我們不是中國的公民！——魏與昌

想一想中國經過多少時候集，合一切好東西交付在我們的

her more when we think back over that long period of work and *struggle*.¹ Read what another student says:

Five thousand years ago our forefathers came from the west and settled this region which we now call China. Four thousand years ago we had already developed a wonderful system of writing and a real literature. Then through forty centuries our people *maintained*² a great nation and a good civilization. How could I not love it and *devote*³ my life to its service?

CHEN YUAN CHIUE

8. The Flag of China

The principal of a big school came into the playground of another school late one afternoon. He was pleased to see all the boys out playing *games*⁴ and enjoying various *sports*⁵. Soon the sun began to set. Suddenly a *bugle*⁶ sounded. At once every game stopped; balls fell *neglected*⁷ all talk ceased; every face turned in one direction; every hand went up to *salute*⁸; and for a while every boy and teacher stood thus at attention while the flag of China was lowered and *folded away*⁹ for the night. The visitor said, "I am going right back to my school and I will start the same *custom*¹⁰ at once."

Why is the flag honored? It is kept carefully. It is often carried by special officers, guarded by special guards. It is *hoisted*¹¹ in the morning, often with special *ceremonies*.¹² It is not left out at night *lest*¹³ some dishonor might come to it. It is carefully folded and is not allowed to touch the ground, where some careless foot might step upon it. It is kept clean, and never used for any wrong purpose even when it is old. It is always hung right side up, and no other flag of any kind is ever hung above it. Can you tell why it is that all this honor and respect is shown to the flag of a country?

The flag is a *symbol*¹⁴ of China. To salute that flag means to salute the Chinese nation; to honor it means to honor your country. If a man loves China, he loves

1 奮鬥。 2 維持。 3 獻身。 4 遊戲。 5 運動。 6 喇叭。 7 不注意。 8 行禮。 9 折疊好。 10 風氣。 11 升起。 12 典禮。 13 惟恐。 14 徵象。

手中！當我們回想到它的長期的工作和奮鬥時便使我們更加愛她。且讀另一位學生的話：

五千年前我們的祖先從西方來，在這個區域住下，其地現在我們喚做中國。四千年前我們已發展成一種奇異的書法制度和真實的文學。於是經過四十世紀之久我們的人民維持着一個偉大的民族和良好的文化。我怎麼能夠不愛它而爲它的事業獻身呢？——陳元全

八 中國的國旗

一天傍晚，一位很大的學校的校長跑到另一學校的操場上。他很高興看所有的孩子們玩遊戲和做着各種的運動。不一會太陽下去了。突然喇叭聲響。立即每種遊戲都停止；球兒落下來誰也不管；談話聲息；大家的臉都轉向一個方向；每個人的手都舉起行禮；好一會兒，每一個孩子和教師都這樣地立正直到中國的國旗落下折好。這位參觀者說：『我回到學校以後，立即要開始這個校風。』

爲什麼要尊重國旗？它被慎重地保管。它常爲專員所攜帶，由專門守衛的人保護。它在晨間升起，常有特設的典禮。在夜間不把它留在外面惟恐遭到侮辱。它被慎重地折起來，不許碰着地面，在地上也許有不當心的腳踏在上面。它要保持清潔，即使已很老舊也不得用於非所宜用之處。國旗總是挂在正面，沒有別的旗能挂在它的上面。你能否說出爲什麼要向一國國旗這樣的尊重和敬禮？

國旗是中國的象徵。向國旗行禮其意就是向中華民族行禮，尊重它其意就是尊重你的國家。如果一個人愛中國的，他

her flag. If he wishes to show his respect for his country, he naturally turns toward the flag that *represents*¹ it. If he wishes his children to love their native land, he trains them to respect her flag. There is one flag for all China. The flag thus brings all together in *united*² thought for China.

9. A Chinese must honor his Country

You honor your country in the same way in which you honor a person. To honor a person means to show him great respect and *courtesy*³. To show respect for a person you must know as much as possible about him. What has he done to *deserve*⁴ your respect? At school you honor the student who has done most for the student body, the girl who got the highest marks in the class, the boy who won many *races*⁵ in *track meets*⁶. Before you can honor your country, you must know why it is worthy of your honor. This is why you spend so much time at school studying Chinese history. It is a wonderful history. There are some *incidents*⁷ in every history of which people are ashamed, but most of the pages of our history tell of men and of deeds of which we can really be proud.

For example, the Great Yu left his home to control a *flood*⁸ and saved the lives of many; Confucius *formulated*⁹ a noble system of *ethics*¹⁰ and became the "teacher of teachers"; Chuang Tzu founded a new school of Chinese philosophy; Tsin Shih Huang built the Great Wall to shut out the northern *invaders*¹¹ and standardized many *institutions*¹², and customs to make for greater unity in China; Tang Tai Tsung *promoted*¹³ education and established institutions of higher learning; in more modern times Chang Chih Tung *advocated*¹⁴ a series of reforms, such as opening modern schools, building a navy, railroads, *telegraphic system*,¹⁵ *mints*,¹⁶ etc.; toward the end of the Tsing Dynasty, Dr. Sun Yat-Sen led many attempts to free the people from

1 代替。 2 統一的。 3 禮貌。 4 應得。 5 賽跑。 6 徑賽。 7 意外事件。
8 洪水。 9 陳述。 10 倫理。 11 侵入者。 12 制度。 13 提倡。 14 提倡。
15 電政。 16 造幣廠。

也愛她的旗。如果他願意向他的國家致敬，他自然地轉面向代表國家的國旗了。如果他願意他的孩子們愛他們的祖國，他就得訓練他們敬禮她的旗。全中國只有一面旗。因此這面旗集合了中國的統一思想。

九 中國人定要尊重他的國家

你尊重你的國家和尊重個人是一樣的。尊重一個人意在以重大的敬禮和禮貌示之。向人示敬你必得盡情地知道他的爲人。他做些什麼才應受你的敬禮？在學校裏你尊重爲學生團體作事最多的學生，尊重這位得到全級最高分數的女孩，尊重這位屢次賽跑獲勝的男孩。在你能尊重你的國家之前，你必得知道爲什麼它值得你的尊重。這就是爲什麼你要在學校裏費了那末多的時間去學歷史了。這是本偉大的歷史。每一本歷史都有一些使人民蒙恥的事件，但是我們歷史中，大多數的篇幅說起的偉人和功業我們確可據以自傲的。

例如，大禹離開了他的家以治洪水，而救了許多的生命；孔夫子陳述一種高貴的倫理系統，而成爲『萬世師表；』莊子創設新派的中國哲學；秦始皇建築萬里長城，以阻禦北方的侵入者，規定了許多制度和風俗以造成中國的大結合；唐太宗提倡教育，建立高等教育的制度；更近代一點張之洞倡議連續的改革，例如開學堂，創立海軍，鐵路，電政，造幣廠等；到了清末，孫逸仙博士領導民衆，企圖把人民從滿清統治下解放出

Manchurian rule, which finally succeeded in the revolution of 1911. Many patriotic young men *laid down their lives¹ in order²* to overthrow the monarchy and establish the Republic of China. All these great heroes of the past deserve our highest respect and honor. You should spend much time upon the lives of those truly great men and women who saw the deeds and possibilities of their country and did brave deeds and performed great tasks for their country's good. It is a patriotic thing to think and talk of them.

So also you must make a thorough study of the *geography³* of China. Are you satisfied today with what you know of your country? A citizen of China should not let a week pass without learning something more about his country.

Resolve⁴ now that you will know your country better so that you may respect her more.

1 犧牲性命。 2 爲.....起見。 3 地理。 4 決定。

來，最後在一九一一年的革命中成功了。許多愛國青年不顧他們的生命以圖推翻專制建立中華民國。這些過去的大英雄都應受我們最高的敬禮和尊重。你必得費許多的時間於那些實在偉大的男子女子的生平，他們看到他們國家的需要和可能性，做下了勇敢的功績，而為他們的國家利益造成偉大的事業。記起他們，講說他們就是愛國的事情。

因此你也必得徹底學習中國的地理。你已滿足你目前對於你的國家的知識了麼？一個中國公民不能讓一個星期空過而對於他的國家沒有多學到一點東西。

現在決定，你要好好地認識你的國家，也許以此而你會更敬禮她。

CHAPTER II

CHINA: A NATION TO BE PROUD OF

1. China is the Senior¹ Nation

All people respect age. Rough people on crowded streets give way to a white-haired man or woman when they would not make *room*² for anyone else. Even robbers often respect an aged person. When there is a public meeting in a village in China it is usually managed by the elders, for the older men have *authority*³. When the *representatives*⁴ of foreign nations meet together,—for example, the captains of foreign *gunboats*⁵ or the foreign *consuls*,⁶—first place is given to the senior ranking officer. When two ships pass on the ocean, it is interesting to see how the one whose captain is the junior *dips*⁷ her flag first in greeting to the other. It is good that people the world over respect age.

China is the real senior among nations. In one way or another every thoughtful Westerner who visits China "takes his hat off" to her as he thinks to himself, "This is China, the most *venerable*⁸ of all the great nations." This respect for the ancient and *dignified*⁹ senior of nations was shown in a striking way recently. After the great World War had ended there was established the *League of Nations*¹⁰. This was the greatest move ever made to bring all the nations into one *organization*¹¹. Never before had the world's "family of nations" met together for united action of a *permanent*¹² sort. In this family were the representatives of big nations and little nations, strong ones and weak ones, old ones and new ones, some on the point of death and some just born. Now, whose representative was chosen as *president*¹³? Which nation *presided*¹⁴? To which country came the high honor of this position? To China, the senior in the family of nations. Her representative was selected as chairman of the *conference*¹⁵.

1 先進的。2 餘地。3 權力。4 代表。5 砲艦。6 領事。7 收下。8 可尊敬的。9 加榮。10 國際聯盟。11 組織。12 永久的。13 主席。14 充主席。15 會議。

第二章 中國一個足以自傲的國家

一 中國是先進的國家

一切人民都敬禮年老的人，粗魯的人在擁擠的街上讓路給白髮男子或女子，而他們決不爲另一個人閃開空隙。甚至強盜也常常敬禮一位老人。在中國當村子上有公共集會時，往往由年長者所主持，因爲年長的人有權力。當外國的代表集會時——例如，外國砲艦的艦長和外國領事官——首席却給予年齡較大的官員。當兩船在海洋裏相遇時，這是看起來很有趣的，那一艦的艦長年輕，就由他怎樣地先收下旗子以歡迎另外的一只。全世界的人民都敬禮年高是件好事情。

中國在各國間真是年高者了。每個有思想的西人以各種方式遊歷中國時都向她脫帽，他自己想着，『這是中國，一切大國中最可敬的國家，』這種敬禮古老和加榮於先進國家最近表示得頗爲顯著。在世界大戰結束以後，就有國際聯盟的建立。這是從未有過的最大的運動，以一切國家聯爲一個組織。以前從未有國際團體曾爲了一種永久性質的集團行動而聚會過。在這個團體裏有大國和小國的，強國的和弱國的，古國和新興國的，將要滅亡的和剛正產生的，各國代表。現在，那一國的代表可選爲主席呢？那個國家主席？這個地位的崇高榮譽給與那一國呢？給予中國，國際團體中的先進國。她的代表被選爲該會的主席。

If other people respect China for her age, how much more should all her own sons and daughters give her great honor! They know her better than others; they understand her historic struggles; they are themselves the fruit of her ancient life, which still *flows*¹ strong in her mind and body. They are foolish who think there is nothing good except what is new. The best things often come down from ancient times. Happy is the nation whose roots are far back in the past. Let us never forget the *dignity*² and honor of China the Venerable Nation. Students do well to write such an idea out and remember it. This is the way two boys have written it down:

Everyone knows that China is an old civilized country *According*³ to historical *records*⁴ she was founded more than four thousand years ago. Perhaps other countries, such as India, Egypt, and Babylonia were founded at the same time, or even earlier, but either they were *destroyed*⁵ or they gradually *declined*⁶. Certainly the nation which has had the longest history and earliest civilization is China.—CHENG FUNG TUNG

Chinese students have a special reason to be proud of their country. This is what they think of China's ancient origin. Among the many very ancient nations Egypt, Babylonia, and China were the greatest and most *lasting*,⁷ but of these three only one has continued as a nation down into the modern time. That one is China, our Fatherland. China is now the oldest *independent*⁸ country.—TSO TAT MING

2. China has had a Wonderful History

When a boy starts out without any help from family or friends and succeeds by faithful effort in getting an education and working his own way up in the world, we watch him with the greatest interest. Many of us do not need to go outside of our own schools to find a man or woman whose life has been such a hard fight up the *steep*⁹ mountain of success.

1 流注。 2 尊貴。 3 據。 4 紀錄。 5 滅亡。 6 衰敗。 7 長久的。 8 獨立的。 9 峻險的。

如果別的人民因為中國的年高而敬重她，她的全部兒女們該怎樣地以更大的尊重給予她呢！他們認識她比別人清楚；他們了解她歷史上的奮鬥；他們自己是她古老生命的果實，這個生命仍在她的身心裏強烈地流注着。以為除了新東西以外別無好處的人是愚人。最好的東西往往是從古代傳下來的。國家的根源可追溯到古遠的是幸福的國家。讓我們永不忘掉這個可敬的國家中國的尊貴和榮譽。學生們好好兒的把這樣一個觀念寫出來，和記住它。下面是兩個孩子寫下的話：

每一個人知道中國是一個老早開化的國家。依據歷史的紀錄她的建立已超過四千年之久了。也許別的國家，像印度，埃及，和巴比倫，都在同時建立，或甚至更早，但他們不是滅亡就是逐漸衰敗。當然一個國家之有最長歷史和最早文化者就是中國了。——陳芬東

中國學生有特別的理由以誇譽他們的國家。這就是他們想到中國古老根源之故。在許多很古的國家之間，埃及，巴比倫，中國是最大最長久的了，而在此三國中只有一國繼續地為一個國家垂至現代。那就是中國，我們的祖國。中國現在是最古的獨立國。——左達民

二 中國有可驚的歷史

當一個孩子開頭就沒有家庭和朋友的幫助，以忠實的效果得以受到教育而在世界上獨自工作，我們以最大的興趣去注視他。我們之中有許多人不需要跑出我們自己的學校去就能找尋一位男子或女子，他的生活會這樣地苦鬥以達到成功的峻嶺。

In the same way China's history has been the story of a nation that rose to power and *held*¹ under its rule almost all eastern Asia. It *tamed*² the great unconquered *wilderness*,³ it educated itself and won a great place in the world's history. It *warded off*⁴ for centuries attacks upon its national life. It discovered ways to control and *cultivate*⁵ both the loess plains and the flooded river plains, as well as ways to *subdue*⁶ the overgrown rich valleys among the hills and mountains. It used the native plants and animals and tamed and improved them. One great leader after another saw the values in certain good things and *encouraged*⁷ them. Sign-writing became a written language. It developed along with other arts. These spread even beyond the *boundaries*⁸ of the growing Chinese population, but they were the arts of the Chinese civilization developed without aid by the Chinese people. They made it possible for this people to be unified. Shih Huang Ti gave the people the idea that they must forever be a single great nation. This was a difficult ideal to reach. The struggle was long and *arduous*⁹. Enemies arose both within and without. Dynasty after dynasty had to arise and work to *perfect*¹⁰ the culture and the system of government that were necessary to unify so vast a nation as China grew to be. What a marvelous effort it was, and how wonderful the results!

3. China produced the Culture of Eastern Asia

Confucius and Laotze have been placed among the greatest *sages*¹¹ of the world, and yet they were but two of China's many great sages. Although their ideas and methods were quite different, both were great philosophers and led the people of eastern Asia to higher and better thought and action. Now, after many centuries, it is a most important historical fact that more people are directly under the *influence*¹² of their *teachings*¹³ than are under the influence of the teaching of any other one of the world's great sages. It is a wonderful thing to have had, far back in the history of one's country, men like Confucius

1 掌握. 2 馴服. 3 荒野. 4 防護. 5 墾植. 6 征服. 7 鼓勵. 8 境界.
9 困難的. 10 完成. 11 聖哲. 12 影響. 13 教訓.

同樣的，中國的歷史曾是一個民族的故事，這個民族勃興而強盛起來差不多把全部東亞置於它的統治之下。它馴服了廣大而不易征服的荒野，它自行教育而在世界史上贏得極大的地位。它防護東亞於它國家生命上的襲擊歷數世紀之久，它發明管理和墾植肥饒的土地和河流氾濫之地的方法，同樣地發明征服在丘陵山嶺間的草木茂盛的肥饒流域的方法。它利用土產的動植物，馴服而改良之。一個接一個的大領袖看見某種有益東西的價值，就加以鼓勵。符號的書法成爲可寫的語文。它和別的藝術一樣地發展。這些文字甚至傳播到中國人口滋生的境界以外，但是它們是中國文化的藝術，其發展却不藉中國人民的幫助。它們有使人民團結的可能。始皇帝把這種觀念給予人民，就是他們必得永遠是一個單純的大國。這是一種難以達到的理想。其奮鬥是長久而困難的。敵人在裏面外面起來，一朝又一朝的興起，做着完成文化和政府系統的工作，那是對於統一像中國這樣廣漠的國家是必需的。這是怎樣的奇異的努力和怎樣可驚的結果啊！

三 中國產生東亞的文化

孔子和老子在世界最偉大的聖哲之中都有位置，但是他們只是中國許多大聖哲之中的兩個。雖然他們的觀念和方法大爲不同，兩個却都是大哲學家，領導東亞人民臻於更高和更好的思想和行動。現在，在許多世紀之後，有許多人民直接受到他們教訓的影響比之受到任何一位世界大聖哲的教訓的影響爲多，這是件最重要的史實。追溯一國的歷史，有像孔子，孟子和

and Mencius and Laotze. It is even better to have had through the ages and still to have a *who'e peop'le*¹ who know the value of their wisdom, who give them honor and respect because so much of their teaching is good, noble, and true.

Not only the ideas but also the very language and literature of China's sages have become common to most of the people of eastern Asia. The *classics*² of China are the classics of Japan too. A Japanese or Korean scholar learns Chinese as though it were his own language. How wonderful is this literature which has been *preserved*³ for so long and by so many millions of people! It is now *translated*⁴ into many languages and read by people in all parts of the world. China has produced a great literature and *presented*⁵ it to the world.

The Chinese people have good reason to be proud of their art. The professor of art in one of America's greatest universities says, "For colors Chinese art has never been *surpassed*."⁶ *Collectors*⁷ of art objects come to China for pictures, *brocades*,⁸ *rugs*,⁹ *porcelains*,¹⁰ *carvings*,¹¹ *lacquer*,¹² *embroideries*,¹³ and many other products of Chinese art. What could one find in all the world more beautiful than a real five-color Kang Hsi vase,¹⁴ or a *marvelous*¹⁵ piece of *kussu fabric*,¹⁶ or a *bronze*¹⁷ of the Chow period, or one of the ancient pictures with deep greens and *pearl-dust*¹⁸ whites? To collect porcelains almost always means to collect Chinese porcelains China has given the world porcelain, lacquer, and *silk*¹⁹, and the best of those arts that depend upon these *materials*²⁰. Then in addition, she has given her own *peculiar*²¹ and *excellent*²² style in drawing, painting, and designing. Even handwritings are hung up and *appreciated*²³ like pictures.

The culture that China has produced includes many other things besides art and literature. The dress, the customs, the ideals, the education of eastern Asia, are largely of this same ancient Chinese origin. The Chinese eat from a bowl with *chopsticks*,²⁴ and so does every other east-Asiatic people that does not eat with its fingers.

1 全民族. 2 經典. 3 保存. 4 翻譯. 5 奉贈. 6 超越. 7 搜集家. 8 錦緞. 9 地毯. 10 磁器. 11 彫刻. 12 漆器. 13 刺繡. 14 花瓶. 15 奇異的. 16 織品. 17 銅器. 18 珠粉. 19 絲. 20 原料. 21 特殊的. 22 優美的. 23 欣賞. 24 筴.

老子的人物真是件可驚異的事。更好的是經過了年代，仍有全民族知道他們智慧的價值，人民以榮譽和敬禮給予他們，因為他們的教訓是這麼多的良好，高貴和真實。

不止在觀念方面，中國聖哲的語言和文學也成爲普及於東亞大部分人民的了。中國的經學也就是日本的經學。一個日本或高麗學者學習中文好像這是他自己的語言。這是怎樣的可驚奇，這種文學爲數百萬民所保存，而又保存得如此之久！到了現在已譯爲多種文字，爲全世界人民所誦讀。中國已產生偉大的文學而以之贈與全世界。

中國人民有良好的理由以誇譽他們的美術。一位美國最大的大學裏的教授說，『講到用色中國人的美術是無可超越的了。』美術品的搜集家到中國來搜集圖畫，錦緞，地毯，磁器，雕刻，漆器，刺繡和別的許多中國美術的產物。那一個能在全世界找出比之真正五彩康熙花瓶，或是一片奇異的錦繡的絲織品，或是周代的銅器，或是一張帶深綠和珠粉白色的古畫，更美麗的東西麼？收集磁器的意思差不多常是收集中國的磁器。中國曾以磁器，漆，和絲給予世界，而那些最好的美術品都以這三種原料製成。還有，她又曾以她的圖畫，著色和構圖的特殊與優美的風格給予世界。即使是書法也挂起來像圖畫般地欣賞。

中國所產生的文化除開美術和文學之外還含有不少別的東西。服裝，風俗，理想，東亞的教育，大都是發源於古老的中國的。中國人以筷從碗裏取食，以此使每一個東亞人民並不用

The ancient Chinese dress is found today with little change in the Japanese *kimono*.¹ The reverence² of the ancient Chinese for their ancestors and for learning is now a strong *element*³ in the culture of all the Mongolian people. Thus China's culture is now the culture of some five hundred million people or more.

4. China is a Land of Great Monuments⁴

China's *artistic genius*⁵ has expressed itself in other forms than those *mentioned*⁶ above. One may travel thousands of miles, east and west, north and south, and yet find in every region great *works*⁷ of skill and beauty. Many of the stone gates are perfect works of art. They stand over roads and streets in thousands of places. *Pagodas*⁸ of many kinds—always *strikingly*⁹ interesting—stand upon hills and mountains in every province. More beautiful than the gates and pagodas, however, are the *temples*¹⁰, and many of the other buildings of China. Here in a little wooded mountain *gorge*,¹¹ there on the plain among a group of ancient *pin*es¹² or *banyans*,¹³ stand these pretty temples with curving *roofs*,¹⁴ round doors, *granite columns*,¹⁵ green or blue or yellow *tiles*,¹⁶ and of gray brick or stone. Chinese *architecture*¹⁷ is one of the few *distinctive*¹⁸ styles. It is different from all others, and is beautiful. Public buildings in every city in the land and in many a small village prove the widespread architectural taste and ability of the people of China.

This ability does not stop with a single building or group of buildings, for a city like Peiping shows that at one time the builders took within their plan a whole city. Their architecture was not only fine; it was on a grand scale. Every Chinese boy and girl ought to study the plan of that wonderful city, and pictures of such things as the beautiful *Altar of Heaven*¹⁹ and its buildings and the little marble bridge at the *Summer Palace*.²⁰

The Chinese builders have given us great and lasting monuments of their ability, as well as beautiful examples

1 和服。 2 敬禮。 3 要素。 4 紀念物。 5 藝術天才。 6 陳述。 7 工程。 8 塔。 9 異常地。 10 寺廟。 11 山谷。 12 松。 13 榕樹。 14 屋頂。 15 花崗石的柱子。 16 瓦。 17 建築。 18 特殊的。 19 天壇。 20 熱河避暑山莊。

他的手指取食。中國古代服裝。在目前還能在略加變異的日本的和服上看到。中國人的敬禮祖先和看重學業現在是一切蒙古人種文化中的要素了。因此中國文化現在是五萬萬或五萬萬以上人民的文化。

四 中國是一個有偉大紀念物的地方

中國的美術天才曾於上述之外，在另外的形態上表現出來。一個人若旅行數千里，東西，南北，在各處他都能看到工緻美麗的大工程。有許多的石門真是美術的完全工作。它們矗立在路旁街上有數千處。許多種類的塔——異常有趣的——立在每一省的丘陵山嶺之上。比了石門和塔更美麗的是中國的寺廟和別的建築。這裏在一個樹木不多的山谷裏，那裏在古松和榕樹叢生的平原上，立着這些好看的寺廟，有着臺灣的屋頂，圓圓的門戶，花崗石的柱子，綠或藍或黃的瓦，和灰色的磚或石頭。中國的建築是一種稀有的特殊格式。它和別的不同，而却是美麗的。在每個城市裏和許多小村落裏的公共建築證明中國人民的建築趣味和能力是很普遍的。

這種能力不限於單獨的建築和大宗的建築，像北平這樣的城，在某時表示着建築者曾把全城置於他們的計畫之中。他們的建築不但精緻，也有宏大的規模。每一個中國的男孩和女孩都該研究那個奇怪的城的圖樣和這些畫片像天壇和牠的建築，與避暑山莊中的小石橋等。

中國的建築家會以他們的能為把偉大和久長的紀念物給予我們，恰正好是他們美術和建築的美麗例子。環繞北平的城牆

of their art and architecture. The walls around Peiping rise fifty feet above the plain, while those of Nanking are still higher—ninety feet in one place—and *extend*¹ twenty-two miles around the city.

More difficult by far to *construct*² were the bridges that have been built across broad rivers in the plains and rushing streams in the mountains. Some of these are beautiful as well as strong and are wonderfully built. In one of them the *blocks*³ of granite that lie across from *pier*⁴ to pier are said to weigh twenty-five tons each. The clever *engineers*⁵ of that bridge probably made the rise of the tide or flood lift the blocks up for them.

The building of the Great Wall and the *digging*⁶ of the Grand Canal were two pieces of work that have *astonished*⁷ the world for still other reasons. They were not difficult for the engineers to construct, as some of the bridges were, and they did not require a great architect to plan them, as the “*Forbidden*⁸ City” did. Of course there were *surveys*⁹ and maps, but the great difficulty lay in organizing such large undertakings and continuing the plan, organization, and purpose for a very long period, until finally the work was done. Few if any tasks in all the history of mankind have equaled these two in size. The Great Wall is said to be the only thing man has made that can be seen from the moon. A nation that can *accomplish*¹⁰ such enormous tasks commands the respect not only of her own sons and daughters but of all the world.

5. China is the “Middle Kingdom”

We have been discussing China's past glories. Has China still a large place in the world? China used to be called the Middle Kingdom, because she stood at the center of the life and power and influence of eastern Asia. When Japan *defeated*¹¹ China in war and claimed the position of the strong nation of Asia, and when China became the “Republic of China,” the name “Middle Kingdom” began to be forgotten. But the word “Middle” remains

1 延伸。 2 建造。 3 塊。 4 柱。 5 工程師。 6 開掘。 7 驚駭。 8 紫禁城。 9 測量。 10 完成。 11 戰敗。

從地起有五十尺高，而南京的城牆更要高一點——在某處有九十尺高——而延伸廿二里以環繞此城。

更難建造的是橋樑，那些橋樑有的造在平原上橫跨廣闊的河流，與造在山中的衝激的溪流上。有的既是美麗又是堅固，造得甚為可異。其中之一，在柱與柱之間都安放着一塊塊的花崗石，據說每塊重二十五噸。造這座橋的聰明工程師顯然是藉潮水或大水上昇時舉起這些石塊以為他們之用的。

長城之建築和運河之開掘是兩件在別種理由上震撼世界的工程。它們不像有些橋樑般，使工程師難以建造，它們也不像『紫禁城』般要大建築師來計劃。當然也有測量和地圖，但是其大困難却在於組成這樣鉅大的事業，繼續這個計劃，組織，目的至於很長的時間，直到這件工程最後的完成。在全部人類歷史中很少有工作在體積上能與這兩種工作相等的。據說長城是從月球裏能夠看見的唯一人爲的東西。一個國家能夠完成這樣鉅大的工作，不僅令她的兒女們尊重，就是全世界也得對它敬禮。

五 中國是『中央王國』

我們已曾討論中國過去的光榮。中國在世界上是不是仍有很大的地方呢？中國常被稱為『中央王國』，因為她處於東亞的生活，權力，和影響的中心。在日本戰敗中國，獲得亞洲強國的地位時，又在中國成為『中華民國』時，這個『中央王國』的名稱就開頭被忘掉了。但是『中』之一字仍留在中國的新名

in China's new name, and in truth China is still the middle nation of eastern Asia. She occupies the *geographical*¹ center. She is on the *mainland*,² not the islands. She has the population, and hence the possibilities of both *commerce and manufacturing*³. She is spreading her people farther and farther in every direction. She is fast becoming a modern nation. She constitutes *four fifths*⁴ of the population and area of eastern Asia. Does that not mean that she still occupies her ancient proud position of the "Middle Nation"?

Does it not make you glad to be a Chinese when you think of the wonderful country that is yours?

6. Looking Back and Looking Forward

Read what one young Chinese patriot says about his great country's past, present, and future:

As I look back at the history of the nations of the world, I am surprised to see that only one of the ancient empires of Europe, Africa, and Asia, such as Egypt, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which were so powerful, so civilized, and so progressive, can be said to have continued its *existence*⁵ down to this day. That one is China. She began her civilization thousands of years ago. She was a powerful nation *generation after generation*⁶, and even now she occupies a large place in the world. China's history, however, like the history of other countries, has been made up of hardships and struggles. When we study the history of our country, we realize that our ancestors did great and difficult work for the *preservation*⁷ of our nation and the *gradual*⁸ development of her civilization. Thus we take pride in her long and wonderful history. We love our nation. We are *determined*⁹ to develop her civilization to the highest possible point. She will advance and grow stronger, and some day the flag of China will be seen in every part of the world.

1 地理上的。 2 大陸。 3 商工業。 4 五分之四。 5 存在。 6 一代復一代地。 7 保存。 8 逐漸的。 9 決定。

內，其實中國也仍是東亞中間的國家。她佔有地理上的中心。她立國於大陸上，不是島國。她有入口，所以有工商業的發展可能。她的人民散佈於極遠極遠的每一方向。她很快地成爲現代國家。她是以東亞五分之四的人口和面積構成的。難道這樣她還不夠仍舊佔有她『中國』的古代光榮位置嗎？

當你想到這個可驚的國家是你所有的時，難道你還不樂於做中國人嗎？

六 向前看和向後看

請把一位中國青年愛國者所說的話讀一下子，這些話是關於他的大國的過去，現在和未來的：

當我在世界各國史上回顧一下時，我頗驚奇於歐，非，亞洲的古代帝國，如埃及，波斯，希臘和羅馬這些國家這樣的強盛，這樣的文明，這樣的進步，能說繼續存在垂至今日的却只有一國。那一國就是中國。她的文化在數千年前已開始了。一代復一代地她是一個強國，即使在現今她仍在世界上佔有鉅大的地方。中國的歷史畢竟也像別國的歷史般以艱苦和奮鬥做成的。當我們研究本國史時，我們實在知道我們的祖先做了偉大艱難的工作以保存我們的國家而逐漸發展她的文化。因此我們可以誇譽她的久長和奇怪的歷史。我們愛我們的國家。我們決定要發展她的文化到最高可能點。她要前進而日加強盛，總有一天中國的國旗可在世界各地上看見。

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Write a short paragraph *entitled*,¹ "Honor to China, the Venerable Nation."
2. Tell *briefly*² the story of some man whose life has been a hard fight up the steep mountain of success.
3. What are some of the teachings of Confucius that have led the people of eastern Asia to higher and better thought or action? of Laotze?
4. *Compare*³ the ideas of these two philosophers.
5. Make a short *list*⁴ of what you consider China's greatest literary works.
6. Write a letter to a boy in America, who has never been to China, and *describe*⁵ for him a piece of kussu fabric or a bronze of the Chow period.
7. Describe a beautiful Chinese pagoda for the benefit of someone who has never seen it.
8. Tell all you can about the *culture*⁶ of eastern Asia as produced by China.
9. What two *enormous*⁷ pieces of work accomplished by China have astonished the world? Why were these *tasks*⁸ so difficult?
10. What ideals did Shih Huang Ti give the people?
11. Is the word "Middle" in China's new name *appropriate*⁹? If so, why?

1 爲題。 2 簡短地。 3 比較。 4 一覽表。 5 描寫。 6 文化。 7 巨大。 8 工作。 9 適當的。

問題與練習

1. 寫一短文，以『尊重中國，這個可敬的國家』為題。
2. 簡短地述說某人一生艱苦奮鬥，而達到成功的峻嶺的小史。
3. 孔子有何教訓，曾領導東亞人民臻於更高更好的思想與動作？老子呢？
4. 比較這兩位哲學家的觀念。
5. 立一張你所知道的中國最高文學作品的小表。
6. 寫一封信給一個美國孩子，他從未到過中國，為他描寫一段錦繡絲織品或周代銅器。
7. 為利於從未見過寶塔的人描寫一篇美麗的中國塔。
8. 詳述中國所產生的東亞文化。
9. 中國有兩件什麼巨大工程震撼全世界？為什麼這兩件工作這樣的困難？
10. 始皇帝以何種思想給予人民。
11. 『中』之一字在中國的新名稱中適當麼？如果是的，為什麼？

CHAPTER III

CHINA: A NATION TO PRESERVE

1. Appreciating What is Native

A common saying in China is, "Native *ginger*¹ is not *hot*."² It means that the place where a man is least appreciated is in his *native locality*³. This is *due to*⁴ the fact that we become accustomed to the good things around us and then notice especially the new things that appear from somewhere else. That is why some people think that only foreign things are good. They are willing to pay more for an *article*⁵ if it has a foreign name. Many people want to have foreign names or to write their names in a foreign way, to wear only clothes that have been made from foreign fabrics, to eat foreign food, to buy foreign articles, to follow foreign customs, to speak a foreign language, to get a foreign *degree*,⁶ and even to marry a foreigner and to live in a foreign country. Some people choose certain foreign things because they are really better than their own. That is a good thing. It benefits the country to have good things brought in. But some people think foreign things must be better than native ones. They are proud of the foreign *character*⁷ of the things they have. Is that right? Is that patriotic?

It is foolish and unjust to be *blind to*⁸ what is right and good, either foreign or native, but it is also very unpatriotic to be blind to the *virtues*⁹ of one's own land and people and civilization. People have to *guard against*¹⁰ this. Have you not seen a Westerner buying very poor Chinese art objects? A Western man with good judgment as to Western art sometimes puts up in his house Chinese pictures or porcelains which a Chinese of good *taste*¹¹ would

1 薑。 2 辣的。 3 本鄉。 4 由於。 5 物件。 6 學位。 7 性質。 8 不知。
9 優點。 10 慎防。 11 鑑賞力。

第三章 中國：應當保存的國家

一 寶貴本國的事物

中國有句俗語說，『本地產的薑不會辣的。』它的意義就是說人所不貴的地方就是他的本鄉。這是由於在事實上我們已慣熟於這些我們四周的良好東西，於是特別注意從別地方來的新鮮東西。那就是有些人們以為只有外國貨好的理由。他們願意出價較高而買有外國名字的物件。許多人願意有一個外國名字，或把他們的名字寫成外國式。只穿以外國絲織品做成的衣服，做倣外國風俗，說外國話，得到外國學位，甚至和外國人結婚而住在外國。有些人選擇某種外國貨因為它們確實比自己的東西好。那也是好事情。買進好東西來也有利於國的。但是有些人以為外國貨一定比國貨好。他們以其所有的外國性質的東西為誇譽。那是對的麼？那是愛國的麼？

不知外國貨或國貨何者為優良和正路，這是愚蠢和不公正的，但是不知他自己土地和人民，文化的優點，却是太不愛國了。人民必須慎防這種態度。你不看見一個西洋主顧買很粗劣的中國美術品麼？一個善於鑑定西洋美術的西洋人有時在他的屋子裏放着中國的圖畫和磁器，這種東西一位精於鑑別的中國

*scorn*¹. So also one often finds very poor *specimens*² of Western art in the home of a Chinese collector of fine Oriental things. Even when they are bad, things often seem good if they are foreign. This makes us wish to learn to appreciate better both foreign things and our own things. Begin at home. Ask your parents to tell you more of the values of native things.

2. Appreciating Our Own Country

What can be more important than to know the value of one's native land? Not only *in order to*³ have greater love for it and to be more proud of it, but also in order to believe in it more earnestly, to feel greater faith in its future, to have greater *ambition*⁴ for it, and to know better how to preserve it and develop it. In some countries every youth is carefully taught to value rightly the good *qualities*⁵ and great resources of his own country.

China has had a long and wonderful past. What of her present? Has she qualities and resources that are of great value? She is old. Is she *exhausted*⁶? Is she useless because she is ancient? Does experience make a man weaker or stronger? Is China a small *factor*⁷ in the modern world? If not, how important is she?

How much is China worth? A very much *discouraged*⁸ student speaker once said: "China is hopeless. She has gone to pieces. She is now worthless. We might as well *pick*⁹ her up and throw her into the *Pacific Ocean*."¹⁰ What do you think of that student? He knew nothing of China's value.

Let us, then, *evaluate*¹¹ China, *appraise*¹² China, appreciate China. "Evaluate" means to judge the value of; "appraise" means to put the *proper*¹³ price upon; "appreciate" means to feel in our *hearts and minds*¹⁴ the *full* value of some good thing.

1 輕蔑。 2 樣品。 3 爲……起見。 4 志願。 5 特質。 6 耗盡。 7 因素。
8 灰心的。 9 拾。 10 太平。 11 估量。 12 評價。 13 相當的。 14 心臆上。

人將加以輕蔑。這樣也有人常看見在中國的精美東方物品收藏家的屋子裏有粗劣的西洋美術品。即使這些東西是不佳的，如果是外國貨看起來便優良了。這使我們願意學習鑑賞外國貨和我們自己的東西。從家庭裏開始。請你的父母，把國貨的價值多告訴你一點吧。

二 寶貴我們自己的國家

何事能比認識祖國價值更爲重要呢？不但對它該有更大的愛，與更大的誇譽它，但也該更迫切地信仰它，對於它的將來有更大的信心，對它抱着更大的志願，和十分明白怎樣去保存它和發展它。在有些國家裏每個青年都鄭重地教導着，使他們正當地看重他們本國的優良的特質和偉大的富源。

中國有一個悠久和奇怪的過去。她現在怎樣呢？她有沒有鉅大價值的特質和富源呢？她是老了。已耗盡精華了麼？是不是因爲她的古老而無用了麼？經驗使人較弱呢，還是使人較強？在世界上中國是個小因素麼？如果不是，她有怎樣重要呢？

中國價值幾何？一個很灰心的學生演說者有一次說：『中國是無望的了。她已經碎裂了。現在她毫無價值的了。我們再好還是把她拾起來，把她拋到太平洋中去。』你對於那個學生有什麼感想？他一點也不曉得中國的價值。

那麼，讓我們估量中國，評價中國，寶貴中國吧。『估量』的意義就是判定其價值；『評價』的意義是加以相當的價格；『寶貴』的意義是在心意上感覺到一些優良物品的充足價值。

3. Value of a Good Site¹

A good site for a store means a great deal in business. If it is in the *heart*² of the business section of a city, easily reached by *customers*³, surrounded by the best shops, it is an important factor making for the success of the store.

It is *somewhat*⁴ the same with nations. The United States is in a very good position, while the Argentine Republic, with much the same sort of soil and *climate*⁵ and history, is not in nearly so favorable a *location*.⁶ England is in a wonderfully good location, while New Zealand is not, because it is too far away from the main travel *routes*⁷. What shall we say of China's position?

China has one of the world's best national locations. Her "site" is an *extremely*⁸ valuable one. Let us examine some of the reasons.

4. Asia's Place⁹ in the World

In the first place, China is in Asia.

Civilization began in Asia. All the great *religions*⁹ began in Asia. Science and mathematics once were found only in Asia; we get many such words as "*algebra*,¹⁰" "*alcohol*,¹¹" "*ammonia*,¹²" from Western Asia and its neighbor Egypt. The very letters and *figures*¹³ in this book for the most part had their origin in that same region. For a long time the centers of world history were in Asia—in China, in India, in *Asia Minor*¹⁴. Then, with the higher development of Western Asiatic culture, the center was Greece. Civilization began to march westward. Then it was Rome. Then it was western Europe. Soon the United States came forward as a possible *applicant*¹⁵ for first place among the nations. In most of this movement westward the seas were *highways*¹⁶ and *fields*¹⁷ of action. First the *Mediterranean Sea*¹⁸ was the center of movement, the field to be held by the victor. Then the Atlantic Ocean became the field of action, with Great Britain the *acknowledged*¹⁹ mistress of it. Then civilization continued

1 地位。 2 中心。 3 主顧。 4 有點。 5 氣候。 6 地位。 7 路線。 8 極有。
9 宗教。 10 代數學。 11 酒精。 12 阿母尼亞。 13 數字。 14 小亞細亞。
15 候補者。 16 大路。 17 範圍。 18 地中海。 19 公認的。

三 地位優越的價值

一家店舖的地位優越即是營業擴大之意。如果它在城市的商業區中心，主顧們易於走到，四周都是最好的商店，這便是這家店舖成功的重要因素。

國家也有點相同的。美洲合衆國有很好的地位，而同時阿根廷共和國有同樣種類的土壤，氣候，和歷史，却沒有這樣有利的地位。英倫有極好地位，而紐西蘭却沒有，因為它和主要航線離開太遠了。我們對於中國的地位將說些什麼呢？

中國是世界有最優越地位的諸國之中的一國。她的『地位』是極有價值的一個。讓我們考察其中的幾個理由吧。

四 世界上亞洲的地位

第一個原因，中國是在亞洲。

文化發源於亞洲。一切大宗教發源於亞洲。科學和數學有一時只能在亞洲找到；我們得到許多字，如代數學，酒精，阿母尼亞都是從西亞和它的隣居埃及來的。本書中的字母或數字大部分都是發源於上述地方的。世界史上的中心有悠久的時間在於亞洲，——在中國，在印度，在小亞細亞。後來以西亞文化之高度發展，中心就在於希臘。文化開始向西推進。復次就在羅馬了。復次就在西歐。不久合衆國盡其所能向前邁進，希望處於各國間的第一個位置。在西進運動的大部分裏海洋就是活動的大路和範圍了。最先地中海是運動的中心，這個範圍是為勝利者所把持的。以後大西洋成為活動的範圍，大不列顛就是公認的它的主婦。以後文化不斷向西推進。遠東就開放

its westward march. *The Far East*¹ was opened up. The *Oriental*² countries came into the "family of nations." Japan pushed Russia back many miles on the land and built a great *fleet*³ on the water. Great Britain developed India and planted her feet *firmly*⁴ upon islands all around the shores of the Pacific. Australia, New Zealand, and the countries of South America began to develop. The United States developed her western *territory*,⁵ bought Alaska, accepted the Hawaiian Islands from their ruler, *secured*⁶ the Philippine Islands, and finally cut through the Isthmus of Panama and sent a fleet through it. Does all this not look as though now the *arena*⁷ of world interest would be on and around the Pacific Ocean? Has the march of civilization not come all the way around the world and back again to Asia? One after another the *continents*⁸ join the march. First Europe and then North America and Australia developed "modern civilization." Now South America, with a small population, and Asia, with half the population of *the globe*⁹, promise to come into the field of action. After that may come Africa.

The development of Asia is the world's great undertaking for the next few generations. To be a part of Asia is to be in the future field of action. To hold a section of Asia is to hold a part of the next and altogether greatest continent to be developed by modern civilization.

5. China's Place in Asia

Just as the little continent of Europe is broken up by a great mass of mountains and *a string of*¹⁰ seas and gulfs, so the great continent of Asia is separated into four or five different regions by the *deserts*¹¹ and mountains of central Asia. There are the regions of (1) Asia Minor, with its long and discouraging history of conquests and religious wars; (2) the great undeveloped plains of the cold northern region; (3) the ancient and *densely*¹² populated Indian and Malay sections of the South; and

1 遠東。 2 東方的。 3 艦隊。 4 堅定地。 5 地域。 6 佔領。 7 競爭地。 8 大陸。 9 地球。 10 一串。 11 沙漠。 12 稠密地。

了。東方國家加入了『國際團體』。日本把俄國在陸地上推後多少里，而在水裏建立了強大的艦隊。大不列顛發展印度，並且堅定地踏足於太平洋沿岸的一切島嶼。澳大利亞，紐西蘭，和南美各國起頭發展了。合衆國發展她的西境，買進了阿拉斯加，從夏威夷羣島的統治者那裏承受了它，保護菲律賓羣島，最後鑿通巴拿馬海峽，派遣艦隊通過那裏。照一切的事情看起來，即在現今，世界利益的競爭場不是會在太平洋上和太平洋沿岸麼？文化的推進不是環繞世界一周又重新回到亞洲了麼？一個跟一個的許多大陸都加入這個推進了。先是歐洲，其次是北美和澳洲發展成『現代文化』。現在人口稀少的南美，和佔有地球上人口半數的亞洲都保證要加入這個活動的範圍了。自此之後也許要推到非洲去。

亞洲的發展是以後幾代的世界大任。爲亞洲的一部就是進入將來的活動範圍。把握亞洲的一部分就是把握以次和一切爲新文化所發展的大陸的一部分。

五 中國在亞洲的地位

正和小小的歐洲大陸般爲一大堆的山和一串的海和海峽所碎裂，亞洲大陸也被中亞的沙漠和山嶺分爲四部或五部不同的區域。那些區域是：(1) 小亞細亞，其地有悠久的和沉痛的被征服的歷史和宗教戰爭；(2) 大部分的平原未曾開闢的北方寒冷區域；(3) 南方的古老而人口稠密的印度和馬來區域；(4)

(4) the Mongolian "Far East." All of these reach into that high and dry and immense central Asia. What will come out of that and how each region will be developed no one can guess. But the *vast*¹ importance of the Far East is clear now to everybody.

China lies in the Far East region. She occupies the largest part of it. She is the center of it. She lies along the coast of eastern Asia for four thousand miles, and her people extend far into Russian territory to the north and into French, British, *Dutch*,² and American territory to the south.

China lies thus in the center of eastern Asia, occupying an enormous section of the body of the continent. Her position is not naturally a weak one. She has no great number of islands to *protect*³. Her long seacoast has few good landing places, though there are enough for commerce. On the west she is protected by vast deserts and mountain ranges.

Finally, China lies in the *temperate zone*⁴. History shows that the independent and progressive nations lie in those parts of the earth where the climate is neither so cold as to be limiting and discouraging nor so hot as to take away much of the desire and need for labor.

Shall we not say, then, that China occupies the best and largest position in the most important region of the greatest continent in the world?

6. China's Size⁵ and Population

Every student in China has learned the facts of China's geography. With the exception of *Siberia*⁶, which is for the most part undeveloped territory, China has the largest area of any country in the world, as a *glance*⁷ at the map will show.

Mere *extent*⁸ of territory, however, does not make a nation great. When we think of the great *antarctic continent*⁹, upon which there is not yet one *inhabitant*¹⁰, we can only wonder whether that now worthless continent

1 巨大的。 2 荷蘭的。 3 保護。 4 溫帶。 5 面積。 6 西伯利亞。 7 一看。
8 大小。 9 南極洲。 10 居民。

蒙古人的遠東。這些區域都伸到高燥而廣漠的中央亞細亞去。那些地方將來怎樣的結果，每一區將怎樣地發展，沒有人能夠推測。但是遠東的無限重要，現在是人人明白的了。

中國位於遠東區域。她佔有遠東的最大部分。她又是遠東的中心。她沿東亞的海岸線有四千英里，她的人民往北遠佈於俄國境內，往南到法國，不列顛，荷蘭，與美國境內。

因為中國位於東亞的中心，佔有本大陸體積的鉅大部分。她的地位天然不會弱的。她沒有多數的島嶼要她保護。她的長長的海岸線很少有好碼頭，雖然所有的在商業上已足夠了。在西方，她有廣漠的沙漠和山脈，可資保護。

最後，中國是位於溫帶上的，歷史上看來，那種獨立而進步的國家都位於地上的那一帶，那裏既不冷到防礙工作和減其效率，又不熱到把工作上的需要和欲望的大部分都除掉。

那末，我們還不該說，中國佔有世界上最大大陸上最重要區域中的最好和最大的地位麼？

六 中國的面積和人口

每個中國學生都知道中國的地理事實。除掉西伯利亞之外，那裏的大部分的土地未經開闢，中國在世界各國中是面積最大的了，一看地圖，便能夠看出來。

僅僅乎國境的大小，畢竟還不能成就國家的偉大。當我們想到上面沒有一個居民的龐大的南極洲時，我們祇有驚奇那塊現在毫無價值的大陸將來能否在世界上有價值。如果中國只是

will ever be of value to the world. If China were just an uninhabited area belonging to some *colonizing nation*¹, she would not be the center of so much interest and activity. There would be few ships arriving at her *ports*², little commerce or banking, no foreign *dip'omatic*³ representatives, no *tourists*⁴ or foreign students of art, no great railway plans or system of *postal*⁵ and *telegraph*⁶ communication, and no such rapid growth of *factories*⁷ and business houses as has taken place in the last few *decades*⁸. It is population that brings all these things. It is a *combination*⁹ of what people want and what people can do that makes things move. China has the people (400,000,000 of them, nearly four times as many as the United States), and they are people who want and can do many things. According to a recent *estimate*¹⁰ by the *post-office*¹¹ there are about 427,700,000. If they were 400,000,000 or more savages who wanted only *beads*¹² and toys and spears, the world would have little interest in them; but they are 400,000,000 or more civilized people who make clothes and build houses and produce *raw materials*¹³ and ride in *automobiles*¹⁴ and read books and run ships and know what is going on all over the world as well as in their own country. Such a population has an influence upon *manufacturers*¹⁵ and writers and statesmen and rulers of every part of the world.

Such a population could not be *separate*¹⁶ and by itself even if it wished to be. Such a population could not be disregarded by the rest of the world even if the rest of the world desired to leave it entirely alone. The world now is a unit. Every part is influenced by every other part. Just as someone has said that if you let a brick fall it shakes the whole earth a little, so we might say now that the buying or selling of a *catty*¹⁷ of rice on a village street in China *tends*¹⁸ to change a little the price of food all over the world. A large population used to be important because of what it could steal and destroy. It is now of world-wide importance because of what it

1 殖民地國家。 2 港口。 3 外交的。 4 遊歷家。 5 郵政的。 6 電信。 7 工廠。 8 十年。 9 結合。 10 估計。 11 郵政局。 12 珠子。 13 原料。 14 汽車。 15 製造家。 16 分裂。 17 斤。 18 傾向。

一個附屬於幾個殖民地國家的無人的面積，她決不會成為趣味與活動的中心了。只有稀少的船隻到達她的港口，商業與銀行也不會多，沒有外國的外交代表，沒有遊歷家和外國的美術學生，沒有偉大的鐵路計劃和郵電交通的制度，並且也沒有像近數十年來的產生得那麼快的工廠和商店。全爲了有口才帶來一切的事物。人民的需要和人民的工作能力結合起來才能使事物活動，中國有這些人民（共有四萬萬，幾近四倍於美洲合衆國），他們都有需要，也都能作許多事。據最近的郵局的估計，人口已有四萬二千七百七十萬。如果他們是四萬萬或更多的野蠻人，只需要珠子，玩具和槍矛，那末世界上將對之不復注意；但是他們是四萬萬或更多的文明人，他們製衣，造屋，製出原料，坐汽車，讀書，行船，並且還明白世界和國內的大勢。這樣一個的人口就有影響於全世界的製造家，作家，政治家和統治者了。

這樣一個人口是不能分裂的，即使它自己願意這樣。這樣一個人口是不能爲世界各國所漠視的，即使世界各國願意完全棄之而使其孤立。世界現在是一個單位了。每一部分都受到任何一部分的影響。正如有人說過，如果你讓一塊磚頭落下來，便稍稍的把世界搖動一下，所以我們現在可以說，在中國鄉村街上的一斤米的賣買，也有使全球糧食價格略爲變動的可能。龐大的人口往往因爲他們會偷竊和破壞，而成爲要務。但是現

can produce and buy, or refuse to buy. Everything that China does or fails to do *affects*¹ the world.

7. The Character of the Country

Rivers are the *arteries*² of a country! All great countries have great rivers. China has three. She has two of the greatest rivers of the world. Parts of them are really *arms of the sea*³. China may thus be said to have a *total*⁴ seacoast of four thousand miles. There are many small rivers in addition, and a great *network of canals*⁵.

Already seven or eight thousand miles of railways have been added to the waterways, and runners and *carriers*⁶ have for centuries traveled well-established roads and paths to every part of the country.

One of the interesting thing about the mountains of China is that they are not *confined*⁷ to long narrow ranges in only one or two regions, but they are *scattered*⁸ far and wide in almost every part of the country. This gives *upland*⁹ regions to every province, and a great variety of geographical conditions to the country as a whole. All this means widespread opportunities for agriculture, fruit-raising, *forestry*¹⁰, fisheries, manufacture, power development, mining, and many other types of industry.

It is an important fact, also, that China has such a varied climate. It ranges from severe winters to *tropical*¹¹ summers, from the region of apples, wheat, horses, and ice *storage*¹² to that of bananas, rubber, water buffaloes, and *all-the-year-round gardens*¹³. It ranges from the dry land of *dates*¹⁴ and camels to the wet lands of rice and *lotus*¹⁵ fields and *lichee orchards*¹⁶. It is a peculiar thing that in China the very plants and animals, like the people themselves and their customs, often have a wide range. *Persimmons*¹⁷ grow in the extreme north as well as in the extreme south. Peaches and *plums*¹⁸ grow in the far south with oranges and bananas, as well as in the north with apples and pears. The *bamboo*¹⁹ is found in every part of the country. Rice comes from regions a thousand miles

1 影響。 2 動脈。 3 海灣。 4 總計。 5 運河網。 6 腳夫。 7 限制。 8 分佈。 9 高地。 10 森林業。 11 酷熱的。 12 貯藏。 13 四季常綠的花園。 14 棗子。 15 蓮花。 16 荔枝果樹園。 17 柿子。 18 李子。 19 竹。

在却因為他們能生產，購買，拒絕購買而普遍地認為重要了。中國每一件事的成敗都影響及於世界。

七 中國的特性

河流是國家的動脈！一切大國都有大河。中國有三條，她有兩條世界最大的河流。它們有許多部分真的是海灣。所以可以說中國共計有四千哩長的海岸線。此外還有許多小河流，和偉大的運河網。

除了水道之外，已有七八千哩長的鐵道，而跑路人和腳夫幾世紀來都在全國各地築得很好的路上行走。

中國的山嶺也是有趣事件之一，它們並不限於一兩處的狹長山脈，却是廣而且遠，分佈於全國各處。這件事使每一省都有高地，而就整個而言，全國的地形就頗為不同。既是這樣，就使對於農業，果樹，森林業，漁業，製造業，動力的發展，鑛業和許多別的工業都有普遍發展的機會。

中國有這樣不同的氣候也是重要的事實。從嚴冷的冬季到酷熱的夏季，從出產蘋果，小麥，馬，和冷藏品的區域到出產香蕉，橡皮，水牛和四季常綠的花園的區域，它都包括在內。它還包含着出產棗子，駱駝的乾地直至出產稻，蓮花和荔枝的濕地。這也是件奇怪的事情，中國的動植物也像人民和他們的風俗般常有大大的不同。極北和極南都產柿子。桃子和李子還有橘子和香蕉產於極南，北方產生蘋果和梨。全國各處都有竹子。米從千里之遙的區域外運來，絲也來從差不多遠的地方。

apart, and silk from regions almost as widely separated. China can grow almost everything, and in time could, if necessary, become independent of almost all foreign *trade*¹.

A country with such a climate, such a range of *latitude*² and geographical conditions, such *fertile*³ fields and rich *stores of minerals*,⁴ such rivers and plains and lakes and coast as China has, is a country to be highly valued, carefully preserved, and wisely developed.

8. The Character of the People

The people of China, though differing in many ways, have a most remarkable *unity*⁵ of culture and character. Nowhere else is there a population of half that size so much alike in looks, ideas, customs, religion, and language. Only in China can a message written in one language carry to so many people. The genius the Chinese people have for standing together upon any question is of great importance. It may bring them to *disaster*⁶, but rightly used it will rather bring them to a new national life. People today tend toward greater *individuality*⁷, and the Chinese people will move in that direction, too; but still their ability to cooperate will be one of their greatest *assets*⁸ both in war and in peace. A great people who can think and act together may even find that they need no other *means of defense*⁹. For the progress and development of the country, too, few *characteristics*¹⁰ are more important than the ability to think and feel together.

Another characteristic of the Chinese people is their desire to settle matters by reason rather than by force. Everybody knows that this rule is right, but few people act upon it so *consistently*¹¹ as the Chinese. It is very difficult to bring oneself to face facts and judge justly and not to *take advantage of*¹² one's greater strength. If the Chinese can take the *leadership*¹³ in the use of reason rather than force, the world will forever be greatly in their debt.

1 貿易。 2 緯度。 3 肥沃的。 4 礦產儲藏量。 5 統一。 6 不幸。 7 個性。
8 財產。 9 防禦方法。 10 品性。 11 一致地。 12 利用。 13 先導。

各樣東西中國差不多都有出產，如果必要，將來可以脫離外國貿易而獨立。

一個國家有這樣的氣候，這樣不同的緯度和地形，這樣肥沃的田地和礦產儲藏量的豐富，這樣的河流，平原，湖沼和海岸如中國所有的，真是個值得重視，應該慎重地保存，和明智地發展的國家。

八 人民的品性

中國的人民，雖然在許多地方大為不同，在文化和品性上却有最可注意的統一性的。再沒有一處地方，它的面積和人口有中國之半而能有這樣相像的形貌，觀念，風俗，宗教和言語的。只有在中國能夠以一種文字寫成的東西傳達給這樣多的人。中國人的天才對於任何問題能夠站在一起，這是頗關重要的。這也許會致其不幸，但是正確地應用它，也許會把他們帶進一種新的民族生活。目今的人民大都有個性的趨向，中國人民也將向這個方向活動；但是不論在戰時或是和時他們的合作能力仍舊是他們最大財產中的一種。一般能夠思想和行動一致的人民甚至可以覺得他們不需要別的防禦方法。因為國家的進步和發展，很少有能比思想，感覺一致的能力更重要的品性了。

中國人的另一品性就是他們願意處置一件事物，與其用力，毋寧以理。每個人知道這條規則是對的，但是很少有人能像中國人般行動相符。不由於更大力量之助而能使一個人面向事實，審斷公正是件很困難的事。如果中國能夠提倡『與其用力，不如以理』的使用，全世界將永遠大為感激。

China is a country of *ripe*¹ experience. She has much to learn about modern science, but in *human affairs*² she has much to teach. Her ways are the result of ages of experiment and thought. Her culture is not that of a family recently grown rich. She has found values by long experience. We should be slow to cast aside or fail to learn from that experience. She has learned, for example, that it is better to deal honestly than to break *agreements*.³ She has learned that language study is necessary to *sound scholarship*.⁴ She has learned that *officers*⁵ ought to be educated people. She has learned that the scholar is of greater importance than the soldier. She has learned that it is not so necessary to get things done as it is to do them in the right way. She has learned that things are to be judged by *practical results*⁶ rather than by *finespun theories*.⁷ She has learned that courtesy is better than haste. Shall China's experience be disregarded, as if she were an *immature*⁸ nation with everything to learn and nothing to teach? Shall we, for example, let her lose her *reputation*⁹ for courtesy and kindness, for the *observance*¹⁰ of the rules of proper conduct in *social intercourse*¹¹? Shall we not agree with Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, who *urged*¹² us not to *discount*¹³ such ancient virtues as loyalty and *filial devotion*¹⁴, kindness and love, faithfulness and justice, *harmony*¹⁵ and peace, but to preserve them as among China's most valued *possessions*¹⁶?

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. What *advantage*¹⁷ has China geographically?
2. Draw a simple *diagram*¹⁸ showing the march of the centers of world history.
3. The *text*¹⁹ says, "It benefits the country to have good things brought in." Why?

1 成熟的。2 人事。3 合同。4 高深的學問。5 武官。6 實際結果。7 空幻的理論。8 未成熟的。9 名譽。10 遵守。11 社交。12 督促。13 忽略。14 孝。15 和。16 資產。17 優點。18 圖表。19 課本。

中國是個富於經驗的國家。對於現代科學她該大大地研究，而對於入事她却大可教人。她的習尚是積久的經驗與思想的結果。她的文化不是一個暴發戶的家庭。她由於悠久的經驗而發見價值。我們應該慢慢拋棄和不學習這些經驗。譬如，她知道處事誠實比破壞合同好。她知道高深的學問必需要學習文字。她知道武官該由受過教育的人做。她知道學者比較軍人更為重要。她知道要把事情用正當的方法去做，否則不必需做事情。她也知道要以實際結果判斷事件，不必用空幻的理論。她知道禮貌比急遽更好。中國的經驗將被輕視麼？好像她是個未成熟的國家，每一件事都要學習而無以教人麼？譬如，我們將讓她失掉她禮貌和仁愛的名譽麼？將讓她失掉她社交上視為正當行為的規則麼？我們將和孫逸仙博士不一致麼？他督促我們不要忽略舊道德，如忠，孝，仁，愛，信，義，和平，要像中國最有價值的資產般保存它們。

問題與練習

1. 中國的地形有何優點？
2. 畫一簡單的圖表，說明世界歷史中心的進行。
3. 課本上說，「買進好東西來是有利於國的」。為什麼？

4. State a few ways in which one may show his *appreciation*¹ of his country.

5. Compare China with the United States, or some other country, as regards (1) population, (2) area, (3) number and size of rivers, (4) railways, (5) climate.

6. What valuable lessons can China teach the world?

7. A Chinese boy on a visit to England wishes to tell an English boy something of the characteristics of the Chinese people. Write what he says.

4. 陳說幾種使人表示重視國家的方法。
5. 比較中美兩國，或其他國家的（1）人口，（2）面積，（3）河流的體積和數目，（4）鐵道，（5）氣候。
6. 中國有什麼有價值的好教訓可以教導世界？
7. 一個中國孩子遊歷英國，願意把中國人的品性告訴一個英國孩子。把他的話寫出來。

CHAPTER IV

BUILDERS OF THE NATION

1. The Pioneer¹ Spirit

In the early days of every country there were some brave men and women who opened the roads. They broke the way for the new nation. They led civilization into a new land. We call them pioneers.

Some pioneers dragged their way across hot deserts. They found the roads and marked the good *springs*.² They led water from the mountains by great canals in places like *Szechwan Province*.³ They sometimes left their broken carts and even their own *bones*⁴ in such numbers as to map the land out for those who followed.

Some pioneers cut their way through forests of trees and *vines*⁵ and *bushes*.⁶ They killed the *snakes*⁷ and tigers and other wild animals, but many were killed by the animals and many lost their way and died. All had to be *bold*⁸ and strong. They not only *conquered*⁹ the forests but also developed races of strong people.

Some pioneers, like Columbus, were brave enough to go out upon the sea to find new lands. They had no maps, but they had courage. Their ships were small and weak, but their faith was great and strong. We think often now of the great pioneers of the sea, and we try to catch some of their wonderful spirit.

Other pioneers broke roads over the high mountains, fought with the wild tribes, cleared the valleys for farms, built bridges and great walls, and *diked*¹⁰ the rivers. What heroes they were! How strong and determined! How proud we are to have as our ancestors men and

1 先驅者。 2 泉源。 3 四川省。 4 骨骸。 5 葛藤。 6 灌木。 7 蛇。 8 勇
的。 9 征服。 10 以堤壩。

第四章 建國者

一 先驅者的精神

各國初期都有勇敢的男子和女子來開闢道路。他們為新國家打開了出路。他們把文化引進一個新的境地。我們稱他們為先驅者。

有幾位先驅者長途跋涉，踰越炎熱的沙漠。他們找尋道路，標明良好的泉源。他們把山上的水用水道引下來，像四川省就是如此。他們有時遺下已破的車輛，甚至遺下自己的骨骼，其數之多好像可以指出路逕而為他人所跟蹤。

有幾位先驅者開闢道路，經過樹木，葛藤，灌木的叢林。他們殺死了毒蛇，猛虎，和別的野獸，但是也有許多人為野獸所殺，許多人因迷失道路而死，他們都是勇敢而強壯。他們不但征服了森林，並且發展了強壯的種族。

有幾位先驅者，像哥倫布般，其勇氣足以出海去找尋新大陸。他們沒有地圖，但是他們有勇氣。他們的船既小而且脆弱，但是他們的信心却大而且強。我們現在往往想到海上的偉大先驅者，而我們要抓住一些他們可驚的精神。

還有別的先驅者開闢道路，越過高山，和蠻族爭鬥，清治山谷，以供農作，建造橋樑和長城，堤防河流。他們多麼英雄啊！多麼強壯和有決心啊！我們有那一類的男子和女子為我們

women of that kind! Every time we cross one of those bridges or look at any result of their courage and spirit we should think of them and feel in us some of the red blood of those heroes. Pioneer times in every country are full of interest. That is why there are so many stories of pioneer days. There are a great number of these storybooks, and you may find them in every *library*¹. There are many good stories that have not yet been written down. You sometimes hear them at an *inn*² or from some old men at home. They are often good when they are *genuine*³. Why should you not be one to write them down? Perhaps the brave old captain of some big *junk*⁴ can tell you stories that all the world would like to hear. Search among people for such tales and write them down. Look for books of pioneer stories and read them. Catch some of the spirit of the early pioneers, for not all such work is done yet. There are some parts of China not yet civilized, some wild places not yet taken up by farmers or miners or foresters. There are regions yet to be *explored*,⁵ vast *acres*⁶ yet to be developed, histories of China's great past to be written.

2. China is not yet Crowded

There are many parts of China where the population is very *sparse*⁷. Villages are few and far *apart*⁸. A traveler must go long distances from town to town. There are thousands of miles of hills and plains which are still waiting for people to come and live on them. China is one of the very few countries which still have a Great West not yet fully taken up by people on farms and in villages. It has vast *stretches*⁹ still waiting for the *plow*¹⁰.

In Kwangsi, Yunnan, Kweichow, and in many parts of other provinces the *unsettled*¹¹ country is chiefly hilly or even mountainous, but both the hills and the valleys are waiting for us to take and use them. The hills are good for cattle, and the valleys are rich and pleasant to live in wherever there are good roads by which people can enter and leave them.

1 圖書館。 2 旅館。 3 誠實的。 4 沙船。 5 探險。 6 田畝。 7 稀少的。
8 疏隔。 9 土地。 10 耕種。 11 無人居住的。

的祖先，我們該怎樣的驕傲啊！無論何時，我們跨過一座那種橋樑，或是見到任何一件他們的勇氣和精神的結果，我們就該想到他們，並且在內心上感覺到那些英雄們的鮮紅的血。各國的先驅時代都是充滿着興趣的。那就是先驅時代的故事有這樣多的理由。有很多很多的這一類的故事書，你可以在每座圖書館裏找到它們。還有許多好故事還沒有寫下來哩。有時你在一家旅館裏或是從家中的一位老人口裏聽到了它們。如果這些故事是誠實的，那末也是好故事。爲什麼你不把它們寫下來呢？也許這位大沙船勇敢老船主能夠告訴你一些故事，那種故事是全世界都歡喜聽的。在人民當中找尋這種故事，並且把它們寫下來。搜尋講先驅故事的書，並且熟讀它們。抓牢初期先驅者的一點精神，因爲一切這樣的工作至今尚未做完哩。中國還有一些地方尚未開化，有些荒野的地方尚未爲農夫，礦工和造林家所取用。有些區域尙待探險，廣漠田畝尙待開闢，中國偉大的過去的歷史尙待著述哩。

二 中國尙未人滿

中國有許多地方，那裏的人口甚爲稀少。村落不多而疏隔。一個旅客由此鎮到彼鎮要走很長的距離的路。有數千哩的山地和平原尙待人民前去居住。中國仍有一個廣大的西部，其地尙未爲人民充分應用於農業上和形成村落，這在世界上真是個少見的國家。它有廣漠的土地尙待耕種呢。

在廣西，雲南，貴州，和別省的許多地方，這種無人居住的地方都是小山地，甚至是山嶺重疊之區，但是小山地和溪谷正待我們去應用呢。山地利於畜牧，溪谷肥饒而宜於居住，在那裏有好的道路，人民由此出入的。

In the northwest, on the other hand, there are great plains with but few people living on them. These rich plains are yet to be *covered*¹ with farms, villages, and highways. It is said that Mongolia, three fourths of which is fertile, is a third of the size of the United States, and yet it has a population of only one to a *square mile*². These vast plains are waiting for us to take them, to plant them, to *water*³ them, and to build homes on them.

In the northeast, there is Manchuria, or the "*Three Eastern Provinces*."⁴ There are large areas of excellent soil not yet cultivated by people. The *abundance*⁵ of fish along the coast, the extensive forests on the mountains, the coal and iron in the ground, are all waiting for us to make use of them. Manchuria is a land of rich resources, and we must lose no time in opening it up.

Many-people say China has too many people. Do you think so? Look, then, at the population map of China and see if China is crowded yet. Has China stopped growing? Is her land development all in the past? Is there no new land for us to occupy? Will our children and grandchildren have no pioneering to do? Shall we say that China is old? No, China is old *in a certain sense*,⁶ but, *in fact*⁷, she is young and growing. The future will be full of work for us to do, even of pioneering work as interesting and important as that of the early days. It makes us eager to go forth and begin our work. It gives us the pioneer spirit to look at the map and think of all the wild land that waits for us to make it serve our country and our people as it should.

3. Building a Nation

Just as the pioneer spirit lives in those who go out to develop new land today, *as well as*⁸ in those who broke the first roads and fought the first fights of civilization, so also there is pioneer work of many kinds still to be done in our big cities and even in the oldest parts of our country. There are still bridges to build, bigger and more

1 佈置。 2 英里。 3 灌溉。 4 東三省。 5 豐富。 6 在某種意義上。 7 事實上。 8 和。

從別方面看來，在西北有廣大的平原，却祇有稀少的人民住在上面。這些肥饒的平原漸將為農田，村落和大道所佈滿。據說蒙古的面積有美國的三分之一那麼大，而四分之三是頗為肥沃的，不過它所有的人口只有每方哩一人。這些廣漠的平原正待我們去開發，種植，灌溉和建屋其上。

在東北就是滿洲，一稱『東三省』。那裏有極大面積的好土壤正待人民的開墾。沿岸富於產魚，山嶺上的廣大森林，地下的煤和鐵，也正待我們去應用。滿洲是富於利源的地方，我們決不可失時不治，不去開闢它。

許多人說中國的人民太多了。你也這樣想麼？那末看吧，看中國的人口分佈圖，中國果然擁擠麼？中國已停止發展麼？她的所有土地都在已往開闢了麼？我們沒有新的土地可以估據了麼？我們的子孫已無先驅工作可做了麼？我們將說中國已經老了麼？不是的；在某種意義上中國是老了，但是在事實上，她却是年青而正在生長哩。未來將充滿着工作待我們去做，甚至有像初期般有趣和重要的先驅工作。它要我們熱心前進，和開始我們的工作。它把先驅精神給我們，當我們看着地圖而想到一切荒地正期待着我們，我們要使其盡力為我們的國家和我們的人民服務。

三 建國

在今日那些出去發展新土地的人們的先驅精神正如那些打開第一條道路，首先和文化奮鬥的人民一樣，所以在我們的大城市裏，甚至在國中最古老的幾處地方，正有許多先驅工作要去完成哩。仍舊有橋樑需要建築，其巨大和艱難却較之初期時

difficult than those of early times. There are forests to plant where once there were forests to conquer. There are robbers to fight in the cities and villages as well as in the mountains. There is still need for bold and strong men and patient and heroic women, because there is great pioneering work still to be done in schools, in factories, in *shipyards*,¹ in machine shops, in government offices, and in hundreds of other places where now our nation of tomorrow is being built.

The pioneers and people of earlier times were the builders of this nation that now belongs to us. Who, then, will be the builders of the China of the future? Who will pioneer, who will struggle and *suffer*² and labor for the new China as our ancestors did for us in the old China? Have any of us now the pioneer spirit? If so, there is hope for China. If anyone *lacks*³ that spirit he is no true citizen of China, for China is forward-looking now and is in need of boys and girls, men and women, who will work for the great China of tomorrow.

4. "Plans for National Reconstruction"⁴

Have you ever read Dr. Sun Yat-Sen's "Plans for National Reconstruction"? Part II of this book in English is called "The International Development of China." When you read this great plan, you will realize how large a task is waiting for us. Although the plan may not be perfect in all its *details*,⁵ yet the *magnitude*⁶ of the work it describes will set fire to our *imagination*⁷. The plan calls for the building of 100,000 miles of railroad and 1,000,000 miles of stone *motor*⁸ road, the *repair*⁹ of the *Grand Canal*¹⁰ and the construction of other canals, the improvement of *Yellow River*¹¹ and *Yangtze River*,¹² *etc.*¹³. It proposes a network of telegraph and *telephone*¹⁴ systems, *wireless and radio*,¹⁵ to cover the whole country. It plans for the development of three large *seaports*¹⁶ into world centers of commerce, one in the northern part of, the coast line, one in the middle, and one in the southern,

1 造船所。 2 受苦。 3 缺少。 4 建國方略。 5 細目。 6 宏大。 7 幻想。
8 汽車。 9 修治。 10 運河。 11 黃河。 12 長江。 13 et cetera 等等。 14
電話。 15 無線電。 16 海港。

代爲甚。有森林需要種植，在那裏曾經有森林被征服了的。在城市裏村落裏和山上都有強盜，要去掃除他們。那裏仍舊需要勇敢和強壯的男子和堅忍與英武的女子，因爲在學校裏，在工廠裏，在造船所裏，在機器廠裏，在政府機關裏和凡百地方之爲建設明日的國家之需的仍有鉅大的先驅工作正待完成呢。

這些先驅者和初期時代的人民都是國家的建設者，而現在這個國家却屬於我們了。那末，誰是未來中國的建設者呢？誰將作先驅者，爲了新中國而奮鬥，受苦，勞力好像我們祖先爲古老中國努力一般呢？我們之間任何一人，都有前驅精神麼？如果有的，中國就有希望。如果任何一人缺少那種精神，他就不是真實的中國公民，因爲中國現在正是向前遠颺，正需要男孩子，男子和婦女爲了明日的大中國而工作。

四 建國方略

你曾讀過孫逸仙博士的建國方略麼？這本書的英文本第二章題爲『中國的國際發展計劃』。當你讀到這個大計劃，就實知有怎樣大的事業待着你做哩。雖然這個計劃的一切詳細節目也許不完全，但是他所述工作之宏大已足使我們的幻想大爲熱烈了。這個計劃打算築十萬哩長的鐵道，一百萬哩長的石子汽車路，修治運河和建設其他的水道，改良黃河和長江，等等。書中還建議要一個電報，電話，無線電的巨網周遍全國。它計劃發展三大海港，以之爲世界貿易的中心，一在海岸線的北部，一在中部，一在南部，此外還有在海岸邊的與在河邊的

*in addition to*¹ *numerous*² minor ports on rivers as well as the coast. It further provides for the building of modern cities; development of water power; opening of *steel*³ factories, *cement*⁴ factories, shipyards; the improvement of agriculture; mining and *forestation*⁵; *irrigation*⁶ in Mongolia, Sinkiang, and other *arid*⁷ regions; *colonization*⁸ in the West, Northwest, and Manchuria. What a wonderful *vision*⁹ of the new China! Are you getting ready to do your part in this task of nation-building?

5. Dead Nations and Living Nations

No living nation is ever finished. There is always something to improve. Sometimes a nation dies. Ancient Rome and Egypt once were rich and powerful, but today they are so dead that even the languages which they spoke are "called dead languages. Whether or not the Chinese nation dies depends on its builders. The builders of today are doing heroic and noble *deeds*¹⁰. What will the builders of tomorrow do? Will they make China live a new life in the modern days, or will they let her die? China is the oldest nation. Is that a reason that she should die? No. It is a wonderful reason for wanting her to live on as a modern nation in as great *glory*¹¹ as she had as an ancient nation.

6. The Watchword¹² of the Modern World

There is an English poem which tells about the first voyage of Columbus. He was seeking a way to India and China, but he found America. This poem says that his forward-looking spirit gave America a watchword, but the watchword is good also for the lands Columbus was seeking when he found America. That watchword was "On! Sail on!"

A few great men in the time of Columbus, a little over four hundred years ago, thought the earth was round, but no one had *dared*¹³ try to sail around it. Most of the people laughed at the idea, and when anyone *proposed*¹⁴

1 此外。 2 許多。 3 鋼鐵。 4 水泥。 5 造林。 6 灌溉。 7 乾燥的。 8 移民。 9 景象。 10 事業。 11 光榮。 12 口號。 13 敢。 14 建議。

許多小港。它還計劃現代城市的建築，發展水力；開辦鋼鐵廠，水泥廠，船廠，改進農業；開鑛，和造林；蒙古，新疆，和別的乾燥區域的灌溉；西部，西北部，和滿洲的移民。新中國的景象多麼偉大啊！你已準備做這建國工作的你的本分麼？

五 死了的國家和活着的國家

沒有生存的國家會已完成了的。常有一些東西要加改進。有時一個國家死掉了。古羅馬和埃及也曾富厚強大，但是現在他們已死掉了，甚至於他們所說的語言也稱為死語言。中國是否死掉全靠它的建設者。今日的建國者正做着英勇和高尚的事業。明日的建國者將做些什麼呢？他們將使中國在現代享着新生命呢，或是就讓她死掉？中國是最古老的國家。那就是她必歸死亡的理由麼？不是的。這是一個奇怪的理由。讓她生存下去，如一個現代國家般而光榮一如古代的中國。

六 現代世界的口號

有一首英國詩述說哥倫布的首次航行。他正在找尋一條到印度和中國去的路，然而他找得了美洲。這首詩說他的前進精神給予美洲一個口號，但是這口號對於哥倫布找得了美洲時正找我的土地也是有利益的。那句口號是「前進！向前進去！」。

四百餘年以前與哥倫布同時有幾個偉人想到地球是圓的。世界上沒有一塊敢嘗試繞地航行。大多數的人民譏笑這種觀念，當時如有人建議從海岸一直出海航行，他們說這是很危險的

to sail straight out from the-shore, they said it would be dangerous. It would be dangerous not because one could not find the way back—for the *compass*¹ had been *invented*² not long before and was in use—but because one might reach the edge of the earth and go off over it. They were afraid of *evil spirits*,³ of strange winds and great storms, of lack of food and failure of courage.

At last Columbus determined to try it, to go directly west on the winds that blew straight out from Africa, in hope of reaching the lands which he believed were on the *opposite side*⁴ of the world.

He found it difficult to *persuade*⁵ anybody to give him the ships and then to persuade sailors to go with him. At last he got ships and *crews*⁶ and boldly sailed out.

The wind carried them straight out, away from the shore. Day and night it blew west, always strong and always west. Day after day onward they sailed, out and away from home, and not a bit of land did they see, not a sail, not a bird, not a sign of land on the *horizon*⁷.

The sailors began to say: "We are going too far. There is no end to the sea. We can never return. The wind blows only out, and never back."

They became afraid to go on any longer. They told the officers they would not go. They made the officers also afraid. They were almost ready to fight. They sent an officer to Columbus to ask him to turn back.

Columbus answered, "Sail on, and on, and on!"

Again and again the officer came, with white face and *shaking*⁸ voice, and said: "This sea is strange and dangerous. The winds are wild. We are out of the reach even of God. Let us turn back now before it is too late."

Columbus said, "Sail on, and on, and on!"

Then he stood alone on the *deck*⁹ at night and watched the west, hoping, hoping as he sailed on through another

1 指南針。2 發明。3 惡魔。4 對面。5 勸說。6 水手。7 地平線。8 顫抖的。9 甲板。

。其危險不是因為這個人不能找到回來的路——因為以前不久指南針已經發明應用了——而却是因為這個人會跑到地球的邊上，就此掉了下去。他們都怕惡魔，怕怪風和暴風雨，怕糧食缺乏而失掉勇氣。

哥倫布終於決定試行此事，一直向西去，趁着直由非洲吹來的風，希望達到這塊土地，其處他相信是世界上的對面。

他覺到難於勸人家把船隻給他，其次就艱於勸水手和他同去。最後，他得到了船隻和水手，勇敢地出海了。

風載着他們直向前去，離開了海岸。風兒夜以繼日地向西吹，總是很強，也總是西風。他們夜以繼日地向前行駛，遠離了家，却沒有看見一點點的陸地，沒有一只帆船，沒有一只鳥，地平線上不見陸地的影子。

水手們開頭說了：『我們走得太遠了。海是沒有邊端的。我們決不能再回去了。風只是向前吹，老不向後呢。』

他們變作懼怕再向前行駛了。他們告訴船員們，不願再行過去。他們使船員們也害怕起來。他們差不多預備打起來。他們差遣一位船員去要求哥倫布回去。

哥倫布回答，『向前進，前進，前進！』

船員一次次的來，帶着灰白的臉與顫抖的聲音，說道：『這個海是奇怪而危險的。風又吹得太大。我們已走到人達不到的地方，甚至上帝達不到的地方。在覺得來不及之前讓我們回去罷。』

哥倫布說，『向前進，前進，前進！』

在夜間他獨個兒站在甲板上，望西注視，希望着，希望着，這樣開駛着又經過了一夜。突然他看見了一點亮光！這是

night. Suddenly he saw a light! It was land! He had found the New World because he had gone on and on and on.

So, the poem says, that is the New World's watchword, "On, on, on." Shall China not take this watchword, too?

7. The Students of China

The first group of people who come to mind as loyal sons and daughters of the new China are the students.

When *Chang Chi-tung*¹ wrote his famous book "Learn!" (called in English "China's Only Hope"), he said that the Chinese people of today must STUDY, or China would be lost. Later an *imperial edict*² commanded the people to study modern as well as ancient subjects, in preparation for *official*³ positions. Then modern schools were built by the central government, by the provinces, by districts and towns, by churches and *missions*,⁴ by other groups of people, and by generous individuals. The watchword of all this movement was "For China's sake,⁵ learn!"

From these schools arose a patriotic group of people, the "students." When Japan made unjust *demands*⁶ upon China, and some Chinese officials were *false*⁷ to their country, the students saw the danger and came to their country's *rescue*⁸. When a *decree*⁹ was published to *compel*¹⁰ the students everywhere to learn the *national dialect*,¹¹ they willingly *submitted*¹² and bravely undertook this difficult task in a truly patriotic spirit. When difficulties have arisen with Japan Great Britain, and the United States, and *boycott movements*¹³ have been started, the students have usually been the group who have made these boycotts successful. They have not only given up their foreign books, pens, paper, and *uniforms*,¹⁴ for native articles, but they have been so faithful and earnest in their *appeals*¹⁵ that merchants and other people have loyally supported the boycotts. We cannot

1 張之洞. 2 勸學篇. 3 詔. 4 文官. 5 傳道會. 6 絲故. 7 要求. 8 不忠的. 9 拯救. 10 命令. 11 強迫. 12 國語. 13 服從. 14 抵貨運動. 15 制服. 16 呼籲.

陸地！他已找着了新世界，因為他已前進，前進，前進。

所以這首詩上說，那是新世界的口號，『前進，前進，前進，』中國還不該採取這個口號麼？

七 中國的學生

想來新中國的忠心的子女們，第一批就是學生了。

當時張之洞寫成他的名著『勸學篇』（英文題名為『中國唯一之希望』），他說今日的中國人民必須讀書，否則中國必將滅亡。後來下詔，令人民新舊兼學，準備作官。於是中央政府，各省，各縣，各鎮，各教會，各人民團體，和慷慨的個人都開設現代學校了。凡此一切運動的口號是『為中國的緣故而讀書！』

從這些學校裏興起一羣愛國人民，就是『學生』。當日本以無理要求加於中國時，有幾個中國官員不忠於國，學生們看到了危險，就來拯救他們的國家。當有命令發表強迫各地學生學習國語時，他們願意地服從，並且勇敢地以一團真實的愛國精神擔任這個艱難工作。當中國和日本，大不列顛，合衆國發生糾紛時，就開始了抵貨運動，而學生們往往是使這些抵貨有效的一羣。他們不但拋棄了他們的外國書，鋼筆，紙張和制服，而用國貨來代替，並且他們是這樣的誠懇和忠實去呼籲商人們和別的人民要忠心地支持這種抵貨運動。我們不能說學生們

say that the students have always been wise enough to *solve*¹ their country's problems and save her from loss, but they have always been earnest, *active*,² and patriotic.

8. Patriot Martyrs³

When people sacrifice their lives *for the sake of*⁴ a good cause, they are called "martyrs." When a man dies for his country, he makes his country live more strongly because of his noble death. We must study our history to learn more about the martyrs. Let us remember them so that this day may not lack such patriots. Stop here and *recall*⁵ the stories of some of the noblest martyrs you have read of in history. Can you tell the stories of *Yu-Fei*,⁶ *Kang-Ming*,⁷ *Wen-Tien-Siang*?⁸ Read of others. *

You have probably both read and heard stories of many heroes and martyrs of the revolution which established the *Republic*.⁹ Read Dr. Sun Yat-Sen's own story of the early martyrs of the revolution (in his book, "Plans for National Reconstruction," Part I, chap. viii). Recall some stories that have not yet been *recorded*.¹⁰ Write down some of these. If every student who reads this paragraph would write out one such story that he has heard in his district or city, what an interesting and wonderful book every student could make.

Men and women ready either to live or to die for their country are needed in the new China.

9. Hard-Work¹¹ Heroes

China needs not only those who are ready to die for her but also those who are eager to live and work for her. China has had such patriots in the past and must have many more in the future. No *great good*¹² comes without hard labor, and no nation can long *endure*¹³ without heroes of hard labor.

*Li Hung Chang*¹⁴ was a man who worked long and hard for China. *Chang Chi-tung* was another. Read their

1 解答。 2 勤奮的。 3 烈士。 4 因為。 5 回憶。 6 岳飛。 7 孔明。 8 文天祥。 9 民國。 10 紀錄。 11 苦鬥的。 12 利益。 13 持久。 14 李鴻章。

總是智足以解答他們國家的問題，把她從滅亡中救起來，但是他們却總是誠懇的，勤奮的和愛國的。

八 愛國烈士

有人爲了義舉而犧牲他們的性命，就稱爲『烈士』。有人爲了他的國家而死，因爲他的高貴的死使他的國家更爲強壯地生存下去。我們必得多讀一點國史，以多知道關於這些烈士們的事。讓我們記憶他們，借此使現日不會缺少這樣的愛國者。止住在這裏，回憶你曾在歷史上讀到的幾位最高貴烈士們的故事吧。你能述說岳飛，孔明，文天祥的故事麼？再請讀一讀別人的故事罷。

顯然你曾讀過，也曾聽過許多建立民國革命的英雄和烈士們的故事。請讀孫逸仙博士自己的初期革命烈士傳記（在他的著作『建國方略』，第一編第八章。）回憶幾件還沒有記錄下來的故事，寫下幾件來。如果每一個學生讀了這一節，就會寫下一件他從縣裏城裏聽到的。這樣的故事，那末每個學生所做的書多麼的有趣和奇怪啊。

男子和女子能爲了他們的國家而或生或死才是新中國所需要的。

九 苦鬥的英雄

中國不但需要爲她而死的人們，並也需要爲了她而熱烈圖存與工作的人們。中國在過去已有許多這樣的愛國者，而在未來必要更多呢。沒有艱苦的工作就沒有大利益，沒有艱苦工作的英雄沒有一個國家能夠長久存在。

李鴻章就是爲了中國而長期艱苦工作的人。張之洞是另一

*biographies*¹ in Chinese. Think how earnestly Sun Yat-Sen labored to establish the Republic. Think of the years *Wu Ting Fang*² spent in the service of his country. These are names that everybody knows, but thousands whose names are known only to a few have been just as truly "hard-work heroes." The farmers work hard *year in and year out*³ to produce *foodstuff*⁴ and raw materials. Ships' crews *fare*⁵ far away from their homes to *maintain*⁶ means of transportation⁷. Doctors and *nurses*⁸ in *hospitals*⁹ work even at night. Factory workers *toil*¹⁰ day after day to manufacture goods. The *life-savers*¹¹ on the coast and the *fire squads*¹² in the city *risk*¹³ their own lives to rescue others. There are *innumerable*¹⁴ "nameless" heroes in the country. Every man in an official position, no matter how small, if he does justice to all and works faithfully, is a patriot. Every man employed in work for the good of the country is one of the public servants. All honor to the great numbers of such men in China today and in the past! They may not be in the histories, but they are in the hearts of men. When a boy knows his father has been an honorable public servant, a faithful worker, an honest merchant, a *sincere*¹⁵ teacher,—one of the hard-work heroes of his country in any line of service,—he holds his head up and looks at the world boldly and proudly. And so should every boy and girl whose mother has been a good mother, for at least half of the heroes of faithful and unselfish labor are women. An American poet has said, "Lives of great men all *remind*¹⁶ us we can make our lives *sublime*,"¹⁷ and every boy and girl should take this lesson to heart.

10. A Broad Point of View¹⁸

We can learn the way of patriotic service from other countries as well as from our own. If we wish to join the *army*¹⁹ of Chinese patriots who will serve their country in work of every kind, we should learn from men and women of all times and places. Many of you have read English storybooks and have seen how they presented to us

1 傳記。 2 伍廷芳。 3 年年。 4 食糧。 5 航行。 6 維持。 7 運輸方法。 8 看護。 9 醫院。 10 勞作。 11 救生隊。 12 消防隊。 13 冒險從事於。 14 不可勝數的。 15 真摯的。 16 提醒。 17 崇高。 18 眼光。 19 隊伍。

個。讀他們的中國傳記。想想建立這個民國，孫逸仙工作得怎樣熱誠。想想伍廷芳爲國服務的時期。那都是盡人皆知的名字，但是好幾千人的名字祇有很少的人知道，却是真正的，『苦鬥英雄』。農夫們一年一年的勞苦工作以出產食糧和原料。船上的水手們遠離故鄉以維持運輸方法。醫生和看護在醫院裏甚至夜裏工作。工廠的工人天天勞動以製造貨物。海岸上的救生隊和城市裏的消防隊冒了自己生命的危險以拯救別人。這些都是國中的不可勝數的無名英雄。每個官吏不論怎樣小，如果他公正待人，忠於職務就是個愛國者。每一個被雇用着，爲國家利益而工作的人就是公僕。現在與過去中國的許多這樣工作着的人們都要受到一切尊敬！他們也許不在歷史上的，但是他們却在人們的心裏。當一個孩子知道他的父親是一位光榮的公僕，一位忠實的工作者，一位誠實的商人，一位真摯的教師——無論那一行爲國勞苦工作的英雄之一——他就可昂起頭來勇敢地，榮譽地傲視世界。每個男女孩子他的母親是一位良母也是一樣的，因爲至少有一半忠實的英雄和不自私的工人是婦女們呀。一位美國詩人曾說，『我們注意偉人的生活能使自己的生活崇高』，每一個男女孩子都該把這個教訓藏在心頭。

十 廣大的眼光

無論從別國或是本國我們都能學到愛國工作的方法。如果我們願意加入爲國做着各種工作的中國愛國者的隊伍裏，我們就該從各時代各地方的男子女子們學習。你們有許多已讀過英國故事書了，看到他們怎樣把不止一國的好許多國家的英雄介

heroes not of one nation but of many. Who has not read of the leadership of Napoleon, of the constructive work of Peter the Great of Russia, of the patient and useful service of George Washington, of the work of the Italian hero Garibaldi, of the *persistence*¹ of Robert Bruce,² of the faith of *Alfred the Great*?³ This lives of such men teach the whole world lessons of great value.

There was a time when people said: "China does not learn from other nations. She studies her own history but not the history of other nations. She looks to the past and not to the future, *inward*⁴ and not *outward*⁵. Her point of view is too narrow." But that is not true now. China is fast leaving her *conservatism*⁶ and taking knowledge from all sources. She wants the best from every nation. She will keep the good things of her past and seek the good things of other countries.

Therefore, in order to develop strong men and women for China's future, we must study the people of other lands. Let us find out their good and useful points so that we too may try to develop such qualities. Let us be friends with them, for that is a good way to learn, is a service to the nation, and is a pleasant way to live in our modern world. The people of this *twentieth century*⁷ in all lands are looking forward to a time when all nations will be friendly one to another. People now see that all can profit by the fullest and closest coöperation. There are now few boundaries to commerce, travel, science, religion, *philanthropy*,⁸ and public service.

11. Notional Heroes and World Heroes

We have mentioned some great national heroes of Western nations, and you have recalled some great national heroes of China; but we must not forget that the greatest men and women do not belong only to a nation. They belong to the world. They serve not only their own people but all peoples. They do not *push out*⁹ the boundaries of their own country; they extend the

1 堅忍心。2 羅勃脫勃羅斯。蘇格蘭國王，曾擊敗英國而使蘇格蘭獨立。3 亞爾福來特大王。英國之西撒克遜王，曾逐丹麥人出英國。4 向內的。5 向外的。6 保守主義。7 二十世紀。8 慈善事業。9 開拓。

紹給我們。拿破侖的領袖事業，俄皇大彼得的建設，喬治華盛頓的忍耐和有効的服務，意大利英雄加利波底的工作，羅勃脫勃羅斯的堅忍心，亞爾福來特大王的信實，誰沒有讀過呢？這般人的生活把大有價值的教訓教導全世界了。

有一時人民說道：『中國沒有從外國學習什麼。她研究她自己的歷史，而不學別國的。她向着過去看而不向着未來，向裏看而不向着外面。她的着眼點太狹小了，但是現在那些話是不確實了。中國已很快地脫離她的保守主義，從各種來源取得知識。她需要每個國家的特長。她將保守她過去的好的事物，而尋覓別國的良好事物。

所以，若要為未來的中國培養強壯的男子和婦女，我們必得研究別地方的人民。讓我們找出他們的優點和有用之處，這樣我們就也能試行發展這樣的品質了。讓我們和他們做朋友，因為那是個學習的好方法，也是為國的工作，並且是生活在我們的現代世界裏的愉快事情。二十世紀的各地人民都向前期待着有一個時期，其時一切國家彼此都成為朋友。現在人們已經知道由於最充實和最密切的合作一切都能有利。現在對於商業，遊歷，科學，宗教，慈善事業和公益事業已不大有國界的了。

十一 國家英雄和世界英雄

我們已曾提及幾位西方各國的偉大國家英雄，你也曾回憶幾位中國的偉大國家英雄；但是我們決不可忘掉最偉大的男子和婦女不但是屬於一個民族的。他們是屬於世界的。他們不但為他們自己的人民却是為了全人類而服務。他們並不把他們自己的國界開拓；他們却把世界福利的計劃發展開去。他們建設

measure of the world's good. They build their own nations, not at the *expense*¹ of other nations but by making their own people a *blessing*² to all other peoples. Such men and women are more than patriots. Their countries take in them a pride that is *everlasting*,³ and all other countries unite to do them honor.

It is a good thing to read biography. You will find in many books the stories of such men and women as *Pasteur*⁴, who made wonderful discoveries in the study of diseases; Florence Nightingale, whose system of nursing-service has stood the test of all time and has been *copied*⁵ in every country; Edison, who gave the world electric lights, *gramophones*,⁶ and many other inventions; *Bell*,⁷ who gave us telephones; Marconi, whose wireless now sends messages, *lectures*,⁸ music, and news to all parts of the world; *John Howard*⁹ and *Elizabeth Fry*,¹⁰ who taught us how to take care of prisoners; Madame Curie, who discovered *radium*¹¹ and new fundamental principles of chemistry; Watt and *Trevithick*¹² and Stephenson, who developed the steam engine for use in factories and on railways; Fulton, who put the engine to driving a boat; *Heilmann*,¹³ who invented the *combing machine*;¹⁴ Arkwright, who developed the spinning machine; Vaucanson and Jacquard, to whom modern *weaving*¹⁵ owes a great debt. Then there were Volta, Galvani, and Faraday in electricity, Stevenson in *lighthouse*¹⁶-building, Morse in telegraphy, Langley and the Wright brothers in the invention of the *airplane*,¹⁷ Lavoisier and many others in chemistry, Newton and others in physics, Copernicus and Galileo and Kepler in *astronomy*,¹⁸ Darwin and Lamarck and Mendel in *biology*.¹⁹ These are only a few of the many famous names. We must go back to Francis Bacon and Roger Bacon, who turned men's minds to scientific studies. We must go back still farther to find the ancient leaders, among whom are Hippocrates in medicine, Archimedes in physics, and

1 花費。 2 加惠。 3 永久的。 4 巴斯德，法國名化學家，及科學家，因研究霍亂病菌成名。 5 模仿。 6 留聲機。 7 倍爾，英國人，發明電話。 8 演說。 9 約翰好安，英人。 10 依利沙白弗賴，英婦人。 11 鐳。 12 屈利佛肯克，英人，首先發明蒸氣車。 13 海爾門，英人。 14 梳櫛機。 15 紡織。 16 燈塔。 17 飛機。 18 天文學。 19 生物學。

自己的國家，却不花費掉別國的，而使自己國家的人民加惠於一切別的人民。這樣的男子和女子們比較愛國者更爲偉大。他們的國家以之爲永久的光榮，而一切別的國家也一致向他們致敬的。

讀傳記真是有益之事。你將在許多書上找到如巴斯德般的男子和女子的故事，他在研究病理學中造出驚人的發明；佛羅倫斯尼丁加，她的看護制度經過多時的試驗，各國都模仿；愛迪生他把電光，留聲機和別的許多發明的東西給予世界；倍爾他把電話給予我們；馬可尼他的無線電現在向世界各地播送着信息，演說，音樂，和新聞；約翰好安和依利沙白弗賴教導我們怎樣去當心獄囚；居禮夫人，她發明了鐳錠和化學上新的基本原理；瓦特，屈利佛昔克和斯蒂文生，他們把汽機推進，應用於工廠中和鐵道上；浮爾登他把引擎用於行船；海爾門發明了梳櫛機；埃克賴脫改進了紡織機；伏根生和傑可特，現代紡織對於他們應大爲感激。再有伏爾泰，加爾凡尼，及法賴台之於電學，斯蒂文生之於燈塔建築，摩爾司之於電報，朗萊和賴脫弟兄的飛機的發明，拉佛華昔哀和另外許多人之於化學，牛頓及別個之於物理學，哥白尼和伽利留和凱白萊之於天文學，達爾文，拉馬克和孟德爾之於生物學。這些只是許多著名人物中的幾個。我們必得回溯到法朗西士，培根和羅傑培根他們把人民的意志轉向科學的研究。我們更進而追溯到古代的領袖，其間如希波克拉底之於醫學，阿几密特之於物理學，歐克力特

Euclid in mathematics. Try to find time to read the biographies of some of these. Many of them suffered for the sake of valuable *truths*¹ they discovered.

Most of these men and women were inventors and discoverers in science or industry. There is also a long line of world heroes and *heroines*² of other kinds. Try to find time to read about travelers and discoverers like Columbus, Diaz, Magellan, Marco Polo, Livingstone; about great thinkers like Adam Smith, Malthus, Huxley, Spencer, Karl Marx, William James, Bergson; about great leaders and *reformers*³ like John Hampden, William Wilberforce, Thomas Jefferson, Abraham Lincoln, Maz-zini Rousseau. We can name only a few here, and we have not named the great religious leaders, great educators, great writers, great artists, or great architects.

This makes us remember how much the past can help us in the future. Perhaps it will make us more eager to read the history of the world, and from it to learn more of how men and women live and labor to benefit their people and the people of the world.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Describe the first voyage of Columbus to the New World. *Contrast*⁴ this voyage with the journey you might take to America today.
2. What are some of the advantages of travel to
 - a. The individual?
 - b. The nation?
3. The pioneer spirit never dies. What pioneer work can be done today in China?
4. The old walls and pagodas of China must have looked down upon many interesting events and people. Write briefly of what you would like a pagoda to see in China fifteen years from now.
5. State a few advantages resulting from coöperation.

1 真理。 2 女英雄。 3 改革家。 4 對比。

之於數學。試抽閒把其中有幾位的傳記讀一讀罷。其中有許多人爲了他們所發明的有價值的真理受了不少損害。

這些人們大多數的男子和女子是科學界或實業界的發明家與創見家。世界上還有許多別種的英雄和女英雄。嘗試得有工夫就去讀關於旅行家和創見家的事，比如哥倫布，狄亞子，麥哲倫，馬可波羅，利文斯頓；和關於思想家的，比如亞當斯密司，馬爾薩司，赫胥黎，斯賓塞，加爾馬克斯，威廉哲姆士白格孫；關於大領袖和大改革家，比如約翰漢伯生，威廉威爾勃福斯，湯麥斯傑弗生，亞伯拉罕林肯，瑪志尼羅素。在這裏我們只能舉出很少幾個名字，我們還沒有舉出大宗教領袖，大教育家，大作家，大藝術家，和大建築家的名字哩。

這使我們記起過去對於未來有這樣大的幫助。也許這將使我們更其熱心去讀世界史，而從其中多多學得怎樣男子和女子生存着爲了有利於自己的人民和世界人類而工作。

問題與練習

1. 描寫哥倫布第一次向新世界航海的情形。把這次航海和你今日旅行美國的情形相比較。
2. 旅行有什麼利益
 - a. 對於個人？
 - b. 對於國家？
3. 先驅精神永不死。在現在的中國有什麼先驅工作能夠完成？
4. 中國的古城和塔必有許多趣事趣人可記。簡單地敘述最近十五年在中國你所歡喜的塔。
5. 說明幾件因合作而得的利益。

6. Tell of something important which you think China can learn from the West.

7. What modern subjects are studied in the schools of China today? Can you *suggest*¹ others that should be studied?

8. Make a list of a few of the world's
- a. Great *mora*² or religious leaders.
 - b. Great educators.
 - c. Great writers.
 - d. Great artists.
 - e. Great architects.

9. Of the many *contributions*³ made to the world that are mentioned on page 36, which two do you think the most important? Why?

10. What do we mean when we say that China is "not yet crowded"?

1 建議。 2 道德的。 3 貢獻。

6. 說出幾件你以為中國能夠從西方學到的重要事情。
7. 今日中國學校裏有什麼新科目學習？你能建議其他尚需學習的科目嗎？
8. 造一張表關於幾位世界的：
 - a. 大道德家和宗教領袖。
 - b. 大教育家。
 - c. 大著作家。
 - d. 大美術家。
 - e. 大建築家。
9. 在本書第三十六頁上所指出的許多有助於世界的貢獻中你以為那兩樁最重要？為何？
10. 當我們說中國「並未人滿」時，究有什麼意義？

CHAPTER V

STABILITY¹ AND PERMANENCE²

1. A Country's Noble Sons and Daughters

One of the most wonderful *features*³ of the World War was the manner in which men and women in different countries supported their government *voluntarily*.⁴ Without waiting to be called they came from all parts of the country and offered themselves freely. They *never hesitated*⁵ to obey even when they knew they were going to *sure death*⁶. They willingly *laid down*⁷ their lives for the safety of their country.

With such soldiers of war and of peace a nation can go forward. If you can depend on a soldier, you can lead him to victory. If you can depend on a leader, you can bravely follow him. If you can depend on a servant in your home, you can go to work with a *confident*⁸ heart. If you can depend on an *agent*,⁹ you can do business boldly and successfully. If you can depend on a buyer, you can sell goods to him cheap. If you can depend on an official, you will find it easy to work for the government. If you trust the judge, you will honor and support the law. If you trust your doctor, you have a much better chance to get well. What lesson is more important? What will do more for a country than to have the people always dependable? How noble will be the history of a people that respects the rights of other countries and gives to its own people just laws and leaders who follow worthy ideals and direct a pure and *enlightened*¹⁰ government!

2. Dependability¹¹ of a People

A strong nation must have dependable people. They build strongly. Their bridges do not fall down. Their

1 種固性. 2 永久性. 3 特徵. 4 自動地. 5 躊躇. 6 必死. 7 犧牲.
8 信任的. 9 代表. 10 光明. 11 可靠性.

第五章 穩固性與永久性

一 國家的高貴子女

世界大戰中一件最奇怪的特徵就是各國男子和女子的態度，他們都是自動地扶助他們的政府。不等到召集，他們就從國中各地到來，而毫不遲疑地以身獻國。當時即使他們曉得此去必死，也決不躊躇而服從命令。他們樂意地犧牲他們的生命以謀本國的安全。

戰時和平時有這樣的軍人，國家才能前進。如果你能夠信託一位軍人，你就可領導他打勝仗，如果你信託一位領袖，你就可勇敢地跟隨他。如果你能信託你家裏的一個僕人，你就可放心出去工作。如果你能信託一位代表，你就可勇敢地和成功地去完成你的事業。如果你能信託一位主顧，你就可以把貨物廉價賣給他。如果你信託一位官員，你將覺得為國家作事很容易。如果你信任這位審判官，你將尊重和扶助法律。如果你信任你的醫生，你身體健康的機會就多了。有什麼教訓更重要呢？國家還有什麼比有可靠的人民更為有益的呢？一個民族的歷史能夠尊重別國的利益，以公正的法律和遵從有價值的理想，指導廉潔光明政府的領袖給予人民，這是多麼高貴啊！

二 人民的可靠性

一個強國必定要有可靠的人民。他們堅固地建設着。他們的橋樑不會坍塌。他們的道路不會碎裂。他們的建築物豎立着。

roads do not go to pieces. Their buildings stand. You feel no fear on their well-built ships. They keep things in good repair. They make things *solid*¹ and dependable, because they are honest people.

Chinese merchants have won an excellent reputation for honesty. We hope that our people will become famous the world over for their dependability in every way. That will make our nation stand as if *founded*² upon rock.

3. China has stood for Ages

The Chinese know what "permanent" means, if anybody does. Of all the ancient nations China is the only one which has continued until today. The Chinese have preserved their nation for thousands of years, while other nations have lasted only a few hundred years. Of the very ancient written languages Chinese is almost the only one which is in use today. The Chinese have preserved not only their ancient history and literature but also their ancient language. The Great Wall is a very permanent thing. When we look at it we think of the things which last. We say: "Here is the ancient time still with us. Here is something which has stood for ages and will stand. It is solid, well built, *stable*,³ permanent."

Two things have made China stand through so many ages: she has been protected from enemies outside, and she has had a stable character within.

In ancient time China feared no enemies from the east, because there were no great *navies*⁴ on the Pacific. She feared no enemies from the south or southwest, because the high mountains protected her. She feared no enemies from the west, because the desert protected her. On the north she built the Great Wall to *shut out*⁵ her enemies, and when they came through the wall, China was already so great and stable a nation that she was little changed by them. She *absorbed*⁶ her conquerors. Her civilization went right on just the same.

1 堅固的。 2 建立。 3 鞏固的。 4 海軍。 5 攔斥。 6 吸收。

你在他們造得很好的船上不會覺得害怕。他們把東西修理得很好。他們把東西做得堅固可靠，因為他們是誠實的人民。

中國的商人因為誠實而贏得最好的名譽。我們希望我們的人民以他們各方面的可靠性聞名世界。那就可使我們的立國如建立於磐石之上。

三 中國立國，已歷若干年代

中國人懂得什麼叫做『永久』，過於其他之人。一切古國中只有中國能繼續存在，直至今日。中國人已保存他們的國家數千年了，而別的國家只是持續數百年而已。最古文字中差不多只有中文還能應用於今日。中國人不但已保存了他們的古代歷史和文學，却也保存了他們的古代語言。長城是最永久的東西。當我們一看到它時，我們就想到持久的東西。我們說：『在這兒古代仍舊和我們在一起。這兒有些東西已是經歷年代了，而還要持續下去。它是牢固的，堅實的，鞏固的與永久的。』

兩件事情使中國立國如此之久遠：她對外防禦她的敵人，和對內有一種穩固性格。

在古時中國不怕從東方來的敵人，因為太平洋上沒有偉大的海軍。她不怕從南方或西南方來的敵人，因為有高山保護她。她不怕從西方來的敵人，因為有沙漠保護她。在北方她築了長城以攔斥敵人，等到敵人跨過長城時，中國已成為宏大與穩固的國家了，所以並不因此而生變化。她吸收了她的征服者。她的文化照樣一直下去。

All that is different now. The ocean is not a protection, but a *clear road*¹ for an enemy. China's great sea-coast is an opening thousands of miles long, and people of many nations land upon it daily. The mountains and desert are no longer a sure protection, because modern travel is fast and overcomes difficulties so easily that no country now *lives to itself*². The question is whether China is still a stable nation and sure to remain whole and independent.

Now what shall we say of the stable character of China's people? She has been protected by that. Is it also changing? China *used to*³ learn nothing from other lands, but now every school teaches the geography of the world, and every middle school teaches Western science, history, and languages. China used to *allow*⁴ no foreigners to *enter*,⁵ but now foreign people are all over China, and Chinese people travel all over the world. It used to be thought *impossible* to break through the wall of language, but now many foreigners speak Chinese, and thousands of Chinese speak English, French, and other Western languages. China used to know nothing of the *current events*⁶ of other lands, but now the news of the world *rushes* into China by *wire* and *wireless* and is *published*⁷ in hundreds of newspapers before it is one day old. China used to have only her own books, but now she has whole *libraries* of foreign books in Chinese and in Japanese and in other languages.

What does all this mean? It means that the ancient common culture of China is passing, and a new culture is forming. Will the new culture unite China as did the old, or will it destroy unity and stability? These are big, *serious*⁸ questions for patriotic citizens of the new China to answer.

4. New Learning in Old Europe

The Greeks of two thousand years ago were wonderful *athletes*,⁹ artists, writers, students and thinkers, statesmen, travelers, and even scientists, but the *warlike*¹⁰

1 孔道。 2 閉關自守。 3 慣於。 4 許可。 5 入境。 6 時事。 7 刊載。 8 嚴重的。 9 體育家。 10 尚武的。

現在一切都不同了。海洋不復是保障了，却是敵人的孔道。中國的偉大海岸線開張至於數千里之長，天天有許多國家的人民在這上面登陸。山嶺和沙漠也不復是確實的保障了，因為現代行旅迅速，易於征服困難，因此現在沒有一國能閉關自守。問題就在中國是否仍舊是個穩固的國家，確能完整存在而獨立。

對於中國人民的穩固性我們現在將說些什麼呢？她曾被那種品性所保障。現在這種品性也改變了麼？中國往往不從別國學習什麼，但是現在每一所學校都教着世界地理了，每一所中學校都教着西洋科學，西洋史，和西洋語。中國往常不准外人入境，但是現在外人遍於中國，而中國人也旅行到世界各地去。往常以為不能破除語言的隔膜，但是現在有許多外國人說着中國話，而幾千的中國人說着英，法，和西洋各國的語言。中國往常一點也不明白別地方的時事，但是現在新聞從電報和無線電傳到中國來，而且不到一天已刊載在幾百種報紙上了。中國往常只有她自己的書籍，但是現在她的圖書館中已有中日書籍和別種文字的書籍。

一切所云有何意義呢？其意就在中國的古代普通文化已成過去，而新的文化正在形成。新文化能如舊文化般統一中國麼？或是將破壞其統一性和穩固性麼？這些都是要中國愛國公民回答的重大與嚴重的問題。

四 舊歐洲的新研究

兩千年前的希臘人都是體育家，美術家，著作家，學者和思想家，政治家，旅行家，甚至還有科學家，但是尚武的羅

Romans conquered the world and blindly *covered up*¹ most of the valuable civilization of the Greeks. The Romans gradually developed organization, and then wealth, rather than general culture and education. Then came the Northern *barbarians*,² and they in turn failed to *appreciate* either the Roman or the Greek civilization. This brought Europe into *the Dark Ages*³.

Through this long period the *Church*⁴ preserved and *handed down*⁵ much literature, a system and organization, and many high ideals. The Church taught Latin everywhere; so European scholars had a common written language. The barbarian *tribes* became educated and *law-abiding*⁶ and ready to develop a new civilization.

Then the Greek ideas and methods were found again, and the modern world began. Old languages were studied, books were collected, and new languages were developed. Roman law and order were established and *altered*⁷ until finally the West was under such rules as that of *the Code Napoleon*⁸ and of the wonderful French governmental system, of the English common law, of the American republic, and of the many *constitutional monarchies*⁹ of Europe and the widely extended republics of South America. Both the rights of the people and the protection of *property* were established. The earth was proved to be round, and *sea routes* to all lands were opened. Inventions came, first one at time, then by dozens, then by hundreds, for often one great invention led the way for many others. Then industries developed *rapidly*¹⁰. Transportation caused *commerce* to grow. Commerce in turn awakened the people of all nations. Wealth greatly increased, as did *populations* and the needs of the people. Knowledge was rapidly increased and *disseminated*¹¹; for inventions (such as *printing*¹²) and travel and wealth and law and order all made learning easier and more *desirable*. Education became the rule instead of the exception. The Church itself grew and improved; religion developed, so that today the high ideals of the ancient teachers are more fully honored than ever before.

1 掩蔽。 2 野蠻人。 3 黑暗時代。 4 教會。 5 流傳。 6 信仰法律。 7 變
動。 8 拿破侖法典。 9 君主立憲。 10 迅速地。 11 傳播。 12 印刷術。

馬人征服了世界，盲目地掩蔽了大部份的希臘高價文化。羅馬人慢慢發展了組織，其次是財富，視為應在普通文化和教育之先。後來北方的野蠻人來了，他們無論對於羅馬或希臘文化都一樣不加尊重。這一來就使歐洲陷於黑暗時代了。

當這個長時期，教會保存，並且流傳了許多文學，一種系統和組織，和許多高尚的理想。各處教會教授拉丁文，所以歐洲學者有了共同的文字來寫作。野蠻民族受了教育與信仰法律，準備發展一種新文化。

於是希臘思想和方法重新恢復了，現代世界開始了。學習古老的語言，書籍也搜集起來，而新語言也發展起來了。羅馬法和制度都建立起來而變動了，最後直到西洋各國都處於這樣的規則之下，如拿破侖法典和可奇的法國政府系統，英國的平民法，和美國的民主制度，以及許多歐洲的君主立憲政治和南美洲的廣佈的民主制度。人民權利和財產保障都建立起來了。地球證明為圓的，到各地去的海路已開。發明的東西來了，起先只有一種，於是一打，於是數百種，因為一樣偉大的發明往往引導許多發明的路其後工業很快地發展。運輸便利是商業發達的導因。商業逐一喚醒了一切國家。財富大大地增加，因為人口和人民需要的增加。知識也很快地增加和很快地傳播；因為發明品（例如印刷術，）旅行，財富，法律，秩序都使學業更為容易，和更為貪圖。教育從特有變為普遍的規則。教會本身發達而改良；宗教也發展起來，所以在今天古代導師們的高尚思想比之從前更加大受尊敬。

So Europe had a *new birth*¹ and came gradually into the life of the modern age.

5. New Thought in Old China

Shall we say that the same is true of China today? Yes; China is being born again. Everything is *undergoing*² change, as it was in Europe; we find new thought, learning from *abroad*,³ scientific methods, industrial development, revolution, constitution-making, social changes, religious changes. Study the history of Europe and you will better understand the history of modern China.

But there is one great difference. No European name *fits*⁴ the change in China, because China is trying to do in forty years what Europe did in four hundred years. For example, the Western engineers have reached the motor car of today through the development of the cart, the *wagon*,⁵ the carriage, the water wheel, the *windmill*,⁶ the little *stationary engine*,⁷ the old-fashioned *traction engine*,⁸ the railway *locomotive*,⁹ the modern *marine*¹⁰ engine, the *turbine engine*,¹¹ the electric motor, the tricycle, the bicycle, the *pneumatic tire*,¹² the ball bearing, the gasoline engine, etc. The Chinese gentleman of wealth, however, steps from the ancient cart or *wheelbarrow*¹³ right over all that long process and into his motor car of the latest type. To be sure, only to ride in a motor car does not benefit the country very much. But when we study the science *involved* in a motor car, we profit by the long experience of the West. Did you ever stop to think how much science there is in one motor car?

So also it is with other modern things—with art and science, with laws and customs, with government and religion. China has many new things to *master*¹⁴ in government, in science, and in *social welfare*¹⁵ to keep in step with the rapid progress of the world.

1 新生。2 遭受。3 海外。4 通用。5 貨車。6 風車。7 定置機。8 牽引機。9 火車頭。10 汽船。11 渦旋機。12 裝空氣的橡皮車胎。13 手推車。14 深究。15 社會福利。

所以歐洲有一個新生，慢慢兒的走進近代生活中去了。

五 舊中國的新思想

我們將說今日之中國也是同樣情形麼？是的；中國正在重生呢。無論何物都遭受着變遷，好像歐洲一般；我們找得新的思想，從海外傳來的學說，科學方法，工業的發展，革命，立憲，社會改革，宗教改革。研究一下歐洲歷史將使你易於了解現代中國的歷史。

但却有一件大大的不同。中國的變化並無歐洲名稱可以用，因為中國要把歐洲幹了四百年的事物在四十年內做到。例如，西洋機械師做到今日的汽車，其發展的經過是兩輪車，貨車，馬車，水車，風車，小型定置機，老式牽引機，火車機頭，新式汽船機，渦旋機，電氣摩托機，三輪腳踏車，兩輪腳踏車，裝空氣的橡皮車胎，球形軸，汽油機等等。中國富紳却從古式的兩輪車和手推車跳過長長的過程步上他的最新式的汽車了。當然只是乘坐汽車於國家並無多大好處。但是如果我們研究汽車所含有的科學，我們便受西方悠久經驗之利了。你會停一會兒想想一輛汽車裏含有多少科學麼？

其他新式東西也是一樣——如藝術和科學，法律和習俗，政府和宗教。中國有許多新的東西要深究，如政府，科學，社會，福利，和世界的迅速進步整齊步伐。

Let us, then, have earnest and *open minds*¹. Let us for China's sake be humble learners both of the old and of the new. Let us be eager to seize² knowledge, but careful in using it in this changing China.

6. Destruction³ or Construction?⁴

It is easy to destroy. It is difficult to build up. A Chinese proverb says, "To complete a thing, a hundred years is not sufficient; to destroy, one day is more than enough."

Revolution is a destructive-process⁵. It is not constructive. It may sometimes be necessary before the construction begins just as you may need to tear down⁶ an old house and dig up⁷ the foundation⁸ before you can build a new one. It may be necessary; but we must remember that it is destructive and that it requires all the more labor to build the new if the old is destroyed by storm or earthquake⁹.

Destroying is easier than building. Has the breaking down of old government and old customs and old ideas in China been difficult? If so, it only shows how strong and stable were the old things! How great they were! How great, then, is our task of rebuilding¹⁰! We need a thousand builders for every destroyer. Be a builder. Join the noble army of China's constructive men and women. It is too easy to break things down. Let us do the more difficult and heroic work of establishing¹¹ things. We want China to stand.

7. Talkers or Doers?

It is easier to talk than to act. It is easier to talk than to think. We must think if we act, or else we may suffer from our action, but it is easy to talk without much thought.

1 虚心。2 攫住。3 破壞。4 建設。5 程序。6 拆除。7 開掘。8 基地。
9 地震。10 重建。11 建立。

那末，讓我們有熱誠和虛心。讓我們爲了中國的緣故要做一個虛心的學者，不論新舊都要學習。讓我們熱烈地攫住知識，但是在這個變易的中國要謹慎地應用它。

六 破壞抑建設？

破壞是容易的。建設却艱難。中國有句古話說，「成事百年不足，敗事一日有餘。」

革命是一件破壞中的程序。它不是建設。在建設開始之前有時需要破壞，正像你在能夠建設一座新屋子之前也許需要拆除舊屋子和開掘基地，這也許是必需的；但是我們必得記憶這是破壞，假使舊屋被暴風雨或是地震所燬，需要很多的工人來建築新的。

破壞是比建設容易。破壞中國的舊政府，舊習俗，舊觀念有何困難？假使如此，也只是表明舊東西有怎樣的堅牢和穩固！他們是怎樣的偉大！那麼，我們要重加建設又是一件怎樣偉大的事業啊！每一個破壞者我們要有一千個建設者相抵。做一個建設者。參加中國的男女建設者的隊伍。破壞一件東西太容易了。讓我們做建立事物的工作，那是更困難與更英勇的工作。我們要中國久立不搖。

七 空談家抑實行家？

空談比實行容易。空談還比思想容易。我們實行時一定要思想，否則我們要從我們的實行裏得到痛苦，但是不加思想的空談却是容易的。

The new citizen of China is going to be a man of action. He is not going to be *guilty*¹ of *empty words*². He knows that people talk when they do not know what to do, or are afraid to act for themselves. Silent *streams*³ run deep. The modern man is a thinker and a man of action, and with his brain he *produces*⁴ the great works we see around us.

The easiest sort of talk is destructive talk. What is the easiest thing in the world? There is an English phrase which says "as easy as *rolling off*⁵ a log."⁶ Drop-ping down is the easiest thing. Pulling up is the most difficult. We do not wish to be "on the downward road." Then let us talk construction and encouragement. Let us *turn a deaf ear*⁷ to the one who is always criticizing. Let us resist the temptation⁸ to say that things are wrong. Let us rather praise the good efforts we see, and *lend a hand*⁹ to them, no matter who is managing or how much better we think we could do it. Let us by *our word of cheer*¹⁰ promote every worthy endeavor¹¹.

8. A Construction Club

In some schools there is a *gloomy*¹² spirit of discouragement. Everybody says that things are all wrong. The students *criticize*¹³ the teachers. The teachers criticize the principal. The principal criticizes the *school board*.¹⁴ The school board says it is the students' fault. Perhaps the one thing needed is to stop criticizing. Then the spirit will change. All will wish to work harder. All will be ready to do better. All will be encouraged where they were discouraged. Work will take the place of talk. Everything will improve. It is weak and *childish*¹⁵ to *complain*¹⁶ and be discouraged. We must not be that kind of man or woman if we are to help China in her time of change.

1 犯罪的。 2 空話。 3 河流。 4 產生。 5 滾。 6 圓形木材。 7 不理睬。
8 引誘。 9 幫助。 10 獎勵之辭。 11 努力。 12 憂鬱的。 13 批評。 14 校董。
15 孩子氣的。 16 抱怨。

中國的新公民要做一個實行者。他不去犯說空話的罪。他明白人們在不知怎樣去做和自己怕去做的時候就空談起來了。靜靜的河流，其流甚深。一個現代的人是一個思想家和一個實行家，用他的腦筋產生偉大的工程，這我們在四周都可以見到。

頂頂容易的空談是破壞的空談。世界上什麼事最容易呢？有一句英國成語說道，『好像滾木頭一樣容易。』墮落，是最容易的事情。推上去是最難的事情。我們不願意『站在墮落的路^上。』那末讓我們談論建設和勉勵吧。讓我們不理睬一位專事批評的人吧。讓我們拒絕說壞話的引誘吧。讓我們還是稱贊我們所見的好效果吧，幫助他們，不要管誰在管理這件事，或是設想自己可以比他做得更好。讓我們用愉快的話推進各種有價值的努力。

八 一個建設團體

在有些學校裏滿是頹廢的憂鬱的神氣。每個人都說那件事情是錯誤的。學生批評教師，教師批評校長，校長批評校董。校董說這是學生的錯處。如果有必需之事，那就是停止批評。那末這個氣象才能變換。人人願意更勞苦地工作。人人才準備做得更好一點。人人以勇氣代替灰心。工作代替空談。每件事情要改良。怨恨和灰心是脆弱和孩子氣。如果我們要在中國變動的時期幫助她，我們必定不可做那一類的男子和女子。

In some schools there is a custom of doing something good for the school every year, something that will be a permanent benefit to the school. The students sometimes build something with their own hands, or give something good to the school. They are builders of that school. They are doing constructive work for it and for China.

There are many kinds of clubs, and many of them are *anti-something*¹. Those have chosen the easy road of destroying things. Why not have a Construction Club? There would be great *satisfaction*² in making things. It might build a boat, wall, or even a road; it might make a *flagpole*,³ a *stone seat*, a *wireless station*, a set of *bookshelves*,⁴ or even a complete set of seats for the *assembly room*⁵; it might develop a collection of plants, or of *insects*,⁶ or of animal *skeletons*,⁷ or of *coins*,⁸ or of *stamps*,⁹ or of pictures, or even develop a whole library; it might *put up* a flag, or a clock, or some pictures, or a newspaper board with papers on it, or even a whole building, as the students in some schools have done with their own hands.

Can you not form a Construction Club? Perhaps the *entire school*¹⁰ can be one. Certainly you can be constructive in something and add a little real bit to China's stability and permanence. Guard against starting things that will be a *burden*¹¹ rather than a benefit in the future. A school *magazine*,¹² for example, may in the future be such a great burden as to discourage your successors.

In any case be *optimistic*¹³. Just laugh at the man or the woman who talks discouragement. We are in China's new day. Let us, with her, be forward-looking and optimistic. Begin Now!

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. *In connection with*¹⁴ Chapter III you were asked to tell the advantage of China's geographical position. How has this advantage been affected by modern progress?

1 反對什麼東西。 2 滿意。 3 旗桿。 4 書架。 5 會場。 6 昆蟲。 7 骨骼。
8 錢幣。 9 郵票。 10 全校。 11 重負。 12 雜誌。 13 樂觀的。 14 關於。

有些學校裏年年有爲學校做有益事情的習慣，有些事情竟是對於學校永遠有利的。學生們有時用自己的手造起一些東西，或是以有益的事物給予學校。他們是學校的建設者。他們爲了學校，爲了中國做着建設的工作。

那裏有許多種類的團體，其中有許多是反對什麼東西的。那些都選擇了破壞事物的捷徑。爲什麼沒有建設團體呢？做成事物必能得到大大的滿意。或是造一只船，築一座牆，一條路；或是造一根旗桿，一張石櫈，一個無線電台，一副書架，甚至於會場裏的全套坐位；也許推而至於收集植物，昆蟲，獸骨骼，錢幣，郵票，圖畫，甚至擴充爲一整個的圖書館；或是裝置一面旗，一只鐘，一些圖畫，報紙架，甚至於整個的建築物，正如有些學校裏的學生們用他們自己的手所做成的。

你不能組成一個建設團體麼？也許以全校成爲一個團體。當然你能建設一些東西，和稍爲加增一點中國的穩固性和永久性。提防着一件事的開頭，不要是在將來並無利益，却反而成爲一種重負。例如，一本學校雜誌，也許在將來成爲這麼大的重担而使你的繼續者大爲灰心。

無論如何總要樂觀。嘲笑專說灰心話的男子和女子。我們是在中國的新時代中。讓我們跟着中國向前遠矚和樂觀。開始罷，現在！

問題和練習

1. 在第三章裏已請你陳述中國地勢的優點了。那末這些優點受現代進步的影響如何？

2. *Consult*¹ a history of Europe and compare the "new birth" in Europe with conditions in China today as to
 - a. New thought.
 - b. Learning from abroad.
 - c. Scientific methods.
 - d. Industrial development.
 - e. Social changes.
3. Compare methods of transportation in a Chinese city today with those of fifty years ago.
4. Compare a Chinese school *curriculum*² of today with one of sixty years ago.

2. 參考歐洲的歷史，並且把歐洲的『新生』和今日的中國情形比較。

- a. 新思想。
- b. 外洋來的學術。
- c. 科學方法。
- d. 工業發展。
- e. 社會變化。

3. 以今日中國城市裏的運輸方法和五十年前比較。

4. 以今日中國學校的課程和六十年前的比較。

CHAPTER VI

ENTERPRISE¹

1. The Spirit of Enterprise

When we think of the Chinese, who have carried their business and their homes to every country in the world and even to the little islands in the middle of the ocean, we wonder² why so many writers have said that the Chinese people are conservative and not enterprising. Surely they have shown enterprise in business.

One of the striking characteristics of the modern West is the spirit of enterprise, of boldly attempting new and difficult tasks. While it is true that this quality does not belong to any one people alone, yet we may take America as an example and see how the enterprising spirit has helped the development of that new continent.

It was that spirit of enterprise that carried the people of America westward through the wild forests, over the great plains, across the terrible³ deserts, and so in a very short time civilized a whole wilderness. It was enterprise that brought money from abroad to build thousands of miles of railroads where there were almost no people as yet to use them.

In the last hundred years there has been an astonishing⁴ number of inventions and discoveries in the West. Especially in America these have been used in enterprises and have been developed by large business companies. As the result of these enterprise the country is covered by a network of railways and car lines as well as motor roads; there is a telephone in almost every house, even far out in the country; every child is given an elementary-school education,⁵ and even a college education is within reach of⁶ every young man and woman;

1 企業。 2 驚奇。 3 可怕的。 4 驚人的。 5 小學教育。 6 能及於。

第六章 企業

一 企業精神

當我們想到中國人帶着他們的事業和他們的家到世界各地去，甚至到海洋中間的小島上，我們驚奇爲什麼這樣多的著作家都曾說道中國人是保守性的和沒有企業性的。確然的，他們在事業上已表示着企業性了。

現代西洋的顯著品格之一就是企業精神，勇敢地嘗試着新的與困難的事業。確實的這種性質不是獨獨地屬於任何一個民族，不過我們要把美洲做例子，以見這種冒險精神怎樣有助於那個新大陸的發展。

這就是企業精神，它把美洲人運到西方去，穿過了荒野的森林，渡過廣大的平原，橫過可怕的沙漠，於是在一個短短的時期裏開化了整個的荒野。這就是企業精神，它從外國取錢來建築幾千哩路的鐵道，而這條路却是直到現在差不多無人應用它們。

在最近百年裏西洋有其數驚人的許多發明和創見。尤其在美國，這些發明已曾以冒險精神來應用和爲大商業公司所發展。至於這些企業的結果却是佈滿着鐵道和電車道，汽車路的巨網；差不多每一所屋子裏都有電話，甚至遠在鄉村的也有；每一個孩子都受着小學教育，甚至於大學教育也能及於每一個青年男女；穀物大規模地播種，並以奇妙的節省人工的機器去

*grain*¹ is raised on so large a scale and *handled*² by such wonderful labor-saving machines that now the price of daily bread is within the reach of almost every person; the streams are made to work, and great *waterfalls*³ are made to *furnish*⁴ electric light and electric power; modern scientific methods of construction have been used not only to build some of the world's greatest bridges but also to build the world's tallest houses.

American enterprise built the Panama Canal, which unites the Atlantic and Pacific water routes. The great difficulty was the danger from disease. It was said that one man had died for every *tie*⁵ laid on the former Panama Railroad. American enterprise combined medical skill, especially in preventing disease, with engineering skill, and used government organization to *finance*⁶ and manage the *undertaking*⁷. It was in every way a success.

Someone has said, "China needs a Roosevelt to develop her *resources*."⁸ Yes; China needs a Roosevelt, a Goethals, an Edison, a Hill, a Cecil Rhodes, a Pasteur, a Northcliffe, a Lloyd George, and a great many other men of large ability, strong character, and bold enterprise; and China must find them among the people of China, upon whom rests the *responsibility*⁹ of her development. Do all you can to encourage among your people such important qualities as that of enterprise.

2. Ambition and Enterprise

Everybody likes to see a young man or woman who is ambitious, who is not satisfied with the place where he or she is if there is a chance to do better, who is eager to advance, who is always watching for a chance to learn more and become more able to do good work. He is a poor *employee*¹⁰ who says, "I will do more work if you will pay me more." He is ambitious and enterprising who goes ahead and does more work without *calculating the returns*.¹¹ He is the one who gets an advance in pay and position without asking for it.

1 穀物。 2 處理。 3 瀑布。 4 供給。 5 枕木。 6 司財政。 7 事業。 8 富源。 9 責任。 10 雇員。 11 計算。

處理，所以現在每日麵包的價格差不多爲人人能力所及了；河流也用之工作，用偉大的瀑布供給電燈和電力；建設的現代科學方法已不但用於建築一些世界最大橋樑，而也用以建築世界最高房屋。

美國人的冒險性開鑿了巴拿馬運河，這是聯合大西洋和太平洋的小路。大困難却是疾病的危險。據說每安放一根枕木在以前的巴拿馬鐵道上就得死一個人。美國人的冒險性是結合醫學的技術，（尤其是在防止疾病上）和機械的技術的，對於事業的財政和管理，是應用着政府組織的。於是用各種方法都能成功。

有些人說道，『中國需要個羅斯福來開發她的富源。』是的；中國需要個羅斯福，一個蓋德爾，一個愛迪生，一個希爾，一個賽昔兒露治，一個伯斯德，一個拿斯克立甫，一個勞合喬治，和許許多多有偉大能力，堅強性格和勇於冒險的人；中國一定要在中國人之間找到他們，中國的發展責任就安在他們身上。盡力在你的人民之間鼓吹這樣個重要性質，這個企業的性質吧。

二 志向和企業

人人喜歡見到一位有志氣的青年男子或女子的，如有機會可以改善他是不滿意於所處的地位的，他是熱心前進，他常常注視着機會以多學到一點和養成更好的作事能力。他是一個不良的雇員，若說，『如果你錢給我多一點我可以做更多的工作。』如果他是一個有志氣的和企業性的人，他向前走去，做着更多的工作，而不計算酬報的。他就是一個無需要求就能增進金錢和地位的。

A big *exporting firm*¹ in a *thriving*² city had in its office three bright young men, all ambitious and eager to get ahead. There was an opportunity to advance one of them, but which should it be? One noon, after a busy morning, the manager *announced*³ that the office would be closed all the afternoon—everybody could have a half-holiday. When he greeted his *assistants*⁴ the next morning, he asked each how he had spent the *previous*⁵ afternoon. One young man had been to the *theater*⁶, the second had not done “much of anything,” the third, with a happy face, *exclaimed*⁷ that he had gone down to the *wharf*⁸ to watch the *loading*⁹ of the big cargo of supplies which the company was sending to a foreign country.

Until he saw for himself, he had not realized how much *skill*¹⁰ it took to *pack*¹¹ away hundreds of tons of boxes and *bales*¹² so that no space would be wasted and no goods would be *damaged*¹³. He had talked with the engineer, who explained that because of an improvement in their *machinery*¹⁴ they expected to be able to increase the rate of speed half a mile an hour and thus save several thousands of dollar on each trip. He had also talked with a *weather-beaten*¹⁵ sailor who had “sailed on every sea,” and from him had learned some of the difficulties of *stowing away*¹⁶ cargo. It was that young man who was advanced. In his half-day of *liberty*¹⁷ he had learned some valuable lessons. He had been both ambitious and enterprising.

There is an old saying that Opportunity comes knocking at your door, but that if you do not open the door and take her in, you will find that she never comes again. An ambitious and enterprising young man or woman is eager for an opportunity to advance and is quick to seize it when it *appears*¹⁸. Many boys and girls at this moment are standing about doing nothing while opportunities to learn, to be active, practice, to grow, to do things, are being lost. Others are filling every hour with the activities that opportunity offers them. They are enterprising and ambitious. Two boys in a certain middle school *occupied*¹⁹

1 出口行。2 繁盛的。3 宣告。4 助手。5 先的。6 戲院。7 述說。8 碼頭。9 裝載。10 技巧。11 裝運。12 包裹。13 受損。14 機械。15 飽歷風霜的。16 儲藏。17 自由。18 出現。19 利用。

在一個繁盛的都市裏有一家宏大的出口行，它的辦事室裏有三個伶俐的青年，都是有志氣和熱烈向前的。恰有一個機會，可以在三個之間升進一個，但是誰該升呢？一天午間，在勞碌的早晨之後，這位經理宣告下午不辦公——那末人人有半天假期了。第二天早上他問候着他的助手，他向每個人詢問，問他怎樣消磨上天的下午。一個青年是到戲院裏去，第二個一點也沒有作什麼，第三個，有一張快活的臉說他曾跑下碼頭，細看運去的巨大貨箱怎樣裝載，這宗貨物是這家公司運到外國去的。

在他沒有親眼看見之前，他不明白裝運幾百噸的箱子和包裹使得沒有地位浪費，沒有貨物受損，要用多大的技巧。他曾和機師談論，他解釋給他聽，因為他們機械的改良，他們希望能夠每個鐘點增加半哩的速率，那末每次開船可以省下好幾千塊錢呢。他還和一個飽經風霜的水手談話，這個水手曾經航行各處的海，從他那裏又學到了儲藏貨物的困難。於是這個青年升職了。在他半天的自由裏他已學到了一些有價值的教訓。他既是有志氣，也有企業性。

有句老古話說命運來敲你的門呢，但是如果你不肯開這扇門放她進來，你要曉得她決不再來了。一個有志氣的有冒險性的青年男子或女子，都是熱心於進升的機會，並且在它出現時很快地抓住它。在這一剎那間有許多男孩和女孩只是站着不做什麼，而其時所有學習的，活動的，練習的，生長的，做事的機會都失掉了。有的却機會一到就每一點鐘都充滿着活動。他們是有志氣的與有企業性的。某中學的兩個孩子利用他

their spare¹ time by translating a series of books. They kept at it for many months. At last, after hard labor, they finished the series and offered it to the *Commercial Press*,² which gladly purchased³ it. A pocketful of money and a great sense of satisfaction were two of the rewards⁴ that came from their enterprise and ambition.

3. Invention and Enterprise

One day the owner⁵ of a small chemist's shop in America mixed together two common liquids,⁶ and found that the new mixture⁷ made a very pleasant drink. Perhaps many people had made the same discovery already, but this man was enterprising. He did three things: he patented⁸ the mixture, he advertised⁹ it, and he sold it. The result was that in a few years his business was worth fifteen million dollars. What was the difference between that man and the other people who had made the same discovery? What are the elements of his success?

Three things are important in such cases. The first is the discovery of something good. Many discoveries are made by chance, but most of them come from long working and thinking and searching¹⁰. Even those made accidentally¹¹ are usually made by people who are working hard and thoughtfully upon some related problem. Discoveries and inventions laid the foundations of the modern world. They are extremely¹² important for every country. Remember that they come by hard work, keen¹³ thinking, and an enterprising spirit that seizes upon the underlying principle¹⁴ when it appears.

The second important item¹⁵ is the patenting or the copyrighting¹⁶ of the article. In the first place this protects the owner of the invention, discovery, name, book, or whatever it may be. He may make and sell it, but for a term of years no one else may do so without his permission¹⁷. Under such protective laws people are eager to invent good things. Without them people become discouraged and say: "What is the use of trying? Some big company will steal¹⁸ my invention."

1 省下的。 2 商務印書館。 3 購買。 4 報酬。 5 主人。 6 液質。 7 混合物。
8 取得...的專賣權。 9 登廣告。 10 尋覓。 11 偶然地。 12 極端地。
13 謹慎的。 14 潛在原理。 15 項目。 16 出版權。 17 許可。 18 偷竊。

們省下來的時光翻譯一套書。他們好幾個月繼續做這件事。終於在勞苦工作之後，他們完成了這套書，就送到商務印書館去，館中很樂意地把它買下來。一滿袋的金錢和大大的滿足心就是兩件報酬，那是從他們的企業性和有志氣來的。

三 發明和企業

有一天美國一個小化學舖的主人混合了兩種普通的液質，覺得那種新混合物可做一種很好吃的飲料。也許已經有許多人曾有過這同樣的發現了，但是這個人却有企業性。他做了三件事情：他第一取得了這件混合物的專利權，第二登廣告，第三出賣。結果沒有幾年他的事業足值一千五百萬元。這個人和別的有同樣發明的人有何不同？他的成功有何要素？

在這樣的情狀下三件事情是很重要的。第一件是要發明一些有益的東西。許多發明是機會造成，但是大多數却是從長期的工作，思想，尋覓而來的。即使是那些偶然而成的也往往為艱苦工作，深加思慮的人們，在一些相關問題上得來的。發見和發明奠定了現代世界的基礎。它們對每個國家都極端重要。要記住它們是從艱苦工作，縝密的思想，和一種企業的精神——當它出現時就抓住這潛在原理的一種企業精神——而來的。

第二件重要的項目是取得這一件發明的專利權和出版權。第一點這種權利可以保護這件發明品，創見品，名字，書籍或是無論何物的所有人。他能製造和發賣它，在一定時期內沒有別人能夠不得他的許可而擅自製造和發賣。在這樣的法律保障之下人民就熱心於發明有益的東西了。沒有這重保障人民都要灰心，說道：「努力有什麼用呢？幾家大公司會偷我的發明的。」

The patent and copyright laws are valuable for another reason. Each new discovery is described, and the description is permanently preserved. There is no danger of its being lost. Before these laws were established, people kept their discoveries *secret*¹. A father passed on his secrets to his son; but sometimes the father died suddenly without telling his secrets, and the world thus lost them. Often, when you *admire*² some work of skill and beauty, you are told that the process is now lost, or that it is a secret known only to a few. If it is good, it ought to be preserved and widely used.

There are now in China many materials, processes, *devices*,³ plants, medicines, etc., which the whole world needs and is ready to *pay for*⁴. They ought not to be lost, nor should their use be limited. China and the world will *gain*⁵ if enterprising people bring them forth and make them available. Oil is an example of a Chinese *product*⁶ which brings to China riches from all the world. In 1925 China exported 46,453,583 *taels*⁷ worth of *vegetable oils*⁸ and 53,568,447 *taels*' worth of oil-cakes. Enterprise of the right kind will develop hundreds of such sources of great *revenue*⁹ to China and of great benefit to the world. One department of the United States government recently employed an American woman for some time in finding out how Chinese *bookbinders*¹⁰ made a certain sort of *paste*¹¹. Pictures and books using this paste are not eaten by insects and rats. If this paste is so valuable, why could not some enterprising Chinese bookbinder produce it for the market and so benefit himself, his country, and the world? He can; but he must be *wide-awake*¹² and enterprising.

4. Advertising

The third item in the success of the man mentioned above was advertising. Forty years ago there was very little advertising in the world except the *putting up*¹³ of *signs*.¹⁴ Even in America only a few kinds of business had begun to advertise. The three greatest advertisers were

1 秘密。 2 稱贊。 3 策略。 4 購買。 5 獲得。 6 產物。 7 銀兩。 8 菜油。
9 歲入。 10 書籍裝訂者。 11 漿糊。 12 機警的。 13 挂。 14 招牌。

在另一理由上專利權和出版權的法律也是很有價值的。每一種新發明都有說明，這種說明是永遠保存的，而並無失去的危險。在這幾條法律成立之前，人們都把他們的發明保守秘密。一個父親把秘密傳給他的兒子；但是有時這位父親突然死掉了，沒有說出他的秘密，那末世界上就失掉了這宗發明了。當你稱譽一些工巧，美麗的物品時，往往有人告訴你這個製造法現已失傳，或是說這是只有很少人知道的秘密。如果這宗發明是有益的，就該保存起來和廣為應用。

在中國現有許多材料，製法，策略，種植，醫學等等為世界所需要，並且準備購買。它們不該失傳，也不該限止它們的用途。如果企業性的人民把它們取出來，加以利用，那末中國和世界都有所獲的。油就是中國出產的例子，這樣東西使中國從全世界取得財富。在一九二五年中國菜油出口價值銀四六，四五三，五八三兩，油餅出口價值銀五三，五六八，四四七兩。正當企業會發展幾百種的這樣使中國有龐大歲入的源流和大大的有利於世界。合衆國政府的某部最近雇用一個美國婦女，以相當的時間找出中國的書籍裝釘者所用的某種漿糊。圖畫和書籍用了這種漿糊就不會蟲傷鼠咬了。如果這種漿糊這樣的有價值，為什麼有些富於企業性的中國裝釘者不出產它以供市場上的需要以利自身，本國，和世界呢？他能做的，但是他必定要機警和富於企業精神。

四 廣告

上面所述這個人成功的第三項目便是廣告。四十年前除掉挂一塊招牌以外世界上只有很少很少的廣告。就是在美國也只有少數種類的商業開始用廣告。三種最大的廣告就是醫藥公司

the *proprietors*¹ of *patent-medicine*² companies and tobacco companies, and P. T. Barnum. Barnum, the first great advertiser, said, "The people love to be *humbugged*."³ Therefore he and those who advertised the medicines and the tobaccos *deceived*⁴ the people constantly and got their money. Barnum advertised wonderful animals, such as the "great *bikorned*⁵ *amphibian*⁶ *bovolopus*,"⁷ when there were no such animals in the world. The advertisement of the patent medicines promised to cure all diseases, when, in fact, the medicines could cure almost none. In China, the early great advertisers were also patent-medicine makers. These first great advertisers taught the world that advertising promotes business.

Now advertising has become an honorable part of business. Modern business fights against dishonest advertising. The people refuse to *deal with*⁸ a shop that *lies*⁹ about its goods. Honesty has been found to be the best *policy*¹⁰. The magazines and newspapers could not live without their income from advertisements; they are therefore careful about the character of those advertisements. Some magazines will print no untrue *statements*¹¹ in their advertising pages and no advertisements of unlawful or *immoral*¹² things. The readers demand truthful and *high-grade*¹³ advertisement. This coöperation between publishers and readers is the means of raising the standard of advertising. You can do much in this matter. You can write to your newspaper and magazine and call their attention to false or immoral or unpatriotic advertisements. Gradually such letters will bring about improvement.

Advertising is now one of the largest factors in commercial success in the West. Someone has estimated that America now spends each year \$600,000,000 (gold) for published advertisements. It is said that one foreign *tobacco company*¹⁴ in China spent \$1,000,000 in advertising its *cigarettes*¹⁵ before it began to sell any. One store in Canton is said to spend \$30,000 a year for printing alone.

Why does business put so much into advertising? How can a motor-car company in America afford to pay

1 主人。2 醫藥。3 受騙。4 欺騙。5 兩角。6 兩棲的。7 大牛。8 交易。9 說謊。10 政策。11 記載。12 不道德的。13 高尚。14 煙草公司。15 香煙。

主人的廣告，煙草公司的廣告，和巴納恩馬戲團的廣告。巴納恩，首先登大廣告的人說道：『人民是愛受騙的啊。』於是他和那用廣告的醫藥公司，煙草公司不絕地欺騙人民而賺他們的錢。巴納恩廣告上說着奇怪的獸類，例如『兩角的兩棲大牛，』其實世界上並無這樣的野獸。醫藥商的廣告保證能治百病，其實這種醫藥差不多無病能治。在中國，最早的大廣告也是醫藥商。那些起頭的大廣告教導世界廣告可以增進商業。

現在廣告已成爲商業上的光榮部分了。現代商業反對虛偽的廣告。人民也拒絕和替他的貨品說謊話的店家交易。誠實才是最好的政策。雜誌和新聞紙沒有從廣告得來的收入就不能生存；所以他們慎重地注意那些廣告的性質。有些雜誌在他們的廣告版裏不刊不確實的記載，不登不合法，不道德東西的廣告。讀者要求真實和高尚的廣告。這樣出版家和讀者間的合作就是提高廣告標準的方法。這件事你很難做的。你能寫信給你所定的新聞紙和雜誌，叫他們注意虛偽，不道德，或不愛國的廣告。慢慢的這樣的信札會使其改良了。

在西洋，現在廣告是商業成功最大要素之一了。有人統計現在每年美國刊印廣告所費要六萬萬美金。據說在中國的一家外國煙草公司在開始發賣之前已費了一百萬元爲它的香煙做廣告。廣東有一家店鋪據說單是印刷費每年已花了三萬元。

爲什麼商業要在廣告上投下這樣多的消費呢？怎麼美國的一家汽車公司要付八千美金在一本週刊上登廣告呢？它的回答

* eight thousand dollars (gold) for one advertisement in one *issue*¹ of one *weekly paper*²? The answer is the well-known sentence "It pays to advertise." People will not buy if they do not know what you have to sell and why they should buy it.

If you want to help promote good things in China, you should know something about advertising. It is still a new thing in China. It is *scarcely*³ past the *early stages*⁴ of advertisements of patent medicines, tobaccos, and *shows*⁵. We must lift it to a higher *level*⁶.

Another *caution*⁷ is necessary. It does NOT always pay to advertise. If it is not necessary, it is a *waste*⁸. If it does not succeed, it is useless expense. If it is not properly done, it may only kill the business it ought to develop. It must be wisely and carefully done even when it is bold and *extensive*⁹. Advertising is not merely enterprise. It is giving out *information*¹⁰ of use to others. It must be true to fact. Then it is a good thing. Advertise your own school. Advertise the good qualities of your friends, of your city, of your country, of the world you live in.

5. Motion Pictures¹¹

A remarkable example of rapid development by enterprise is found in the motion-picture business. It began only about twenty years ago. At first it was only an interesting invention. Very few people realized how well it *suited*¹² the demands of the mass of the people. People who do not read much want to spend a great deal of time looking at things, especially *up-to-date things*,¹³ and they want stories. Some of those who saw the future of the motion picture were not rich, but they were enterprising. They went right to work and developed one of the biggest businesses in the world.

Some people claim that Charlie Chaplin is the most famous man in the world. Some declare that after the school the greatest educator is not the newspaper, but the motion picture. Some say that the Chinese people

1 發刊物。 2 週刊。 3 殆不。 4 初期。 5 戲劇。 6 水準。 7 當心。 8 浪費。 9 大規模。 10 消息。 11 電影。 12 滿意。 13 新奇事兒。

是人所共知的句子『所付的代價就是廣告。』如果人家不知道你有什麼東西出售和他們買這件東西的理由，他們就不會來購買了。

如果你要幫助好的東西在中國推銷，你必得知道一點廣告的關係。它在中國仍是件新鮮東西。它還沒有脫離醫藥，煙草，戲劇三種廣告的最初期。我們必得提高它的水準。

還有別的需要當心。廣告不一定可以收代價。如果不必需，就是浪費。如果登廣告而一無効力，這就是無謂的費用。如果登得不適當，也許反是有害於營業的發展。就算登廣告要有勇敢和大規模，却也必須聰明地謹慎地去做。廣告不單是企業。它還向別人報告有用的消息。它必要忠於事實。那末才是有益的事情。給你的學校做廣告。給你朋友的良好性質做廣告，給你所居的城市，國家，以及世界做廣告吧。

五 電影

一件以企業性而迅速發展的顯著例子可以在電影業中看出來。這件東西的開始只在二十年之前。最先它只是一件有趣的發明。很少有人明白它是怎樣美滿地合於大眾的需要。沒有多讀書的人民都願意花許多時間去看些什麼東西，尤其是新奇事兒，並且他們也愛故事。有幾個人看來電影的將來不能致富，但是他們是有企業性的。他們立即去經營而發展成爲世界最大商業之一。

有人宣稱却利·卓別麟是世界最最有名的人。有人宣告次於學校的最大教育者不是新聞紙却是電影。有人說中國人從電

are learning more about the West from the motion pictures than from any other source.

Unfortunately not all that comes from motion pictures is good. If they teach and influence so many people, we ought to try to keep out the bad pictures and ask only for those of high grade. Much of what is learned from them is false. Some people who go to the "movies"¹ think that all Americans are either wild riders and constant fighters or else only lazy people who answer telephones, write notes, smoke cigarettes, and dash away in motor cars, but do no real work of any kind. They think that Englishmen are always either doing something very *funny*² or else *haughty*³ standing about in *formal dress*⁴ or fine uniform. They come to think that Western women do nothing but dance and listen to love-making.

On the other hand, many Western motion pictures have also *misrepresented*⁵ Chinese life and the Chinese people. If a picture has a Chinese character, he appears with a *queue*⁶ and long finger *nails*,⁷ and usually plays the *role*⁸ of a *mysterious*,⁹ *treacherous*,¹⁰ *vicious murderer*.¹¹ Many Westerners have come to think that the Chinese are mysterious and dangerous people. This is a great *obstacle*¹² to *international understanding*¹³ and *good will*.¹⁴ We must fight against *films*¹⁵ that tend to misrepresent the Chinese, and we must guard against drawing wrong inferences about other peoples from bad motion pictures.

Motion pictures too often are stories about *robbery*,¹⁶ fights, and *indecent*¹⁷ people. Why can they not be pictures that tell some noble and interesting events, show the *scenery*¹⁸ and customs of foreign lands *reveal*¹⁹ the processes and conditions of industries, *relate*²⁰ historical *episodes*²¹ or important current events, or tell *humorous*²² but clean stories? People will get both *recreation*²³ and useful knowledge from such pictures.

Here is a great business spreading all over the world very rapidly. Will it benefit the world? It ought to be

1 電影。2 滑稽的。3 傲慢地。4 禮物。5 厚誣。6 髮辮。7 指甲。8 角色。9 神祕的。10 不忠實的。11 惡毒的殺人犯。12 障礙。13 國際互解。14 善意。15 影片。16 搶劫。17 猥褻的。18 風景。19 顯示。20 敘述。21 事實。22 幽默的。23 娛樂。

影上多多曉得關於西方的事情，比了任何別的來源爲多。

不幸從電影上來的東西不都是有益的。如果電影教導和影響到這麼多的人民，那末我們該試行擯斥壞片子，而只要有那些高尚的。有許多從電影上知道的東西是虛偽。有幾個人看了電影，以爲一切美國人不是野蠻的騎師和永遠跟人家打架的人就只有懶惰人，他們聽電話，寫信，吸香煙，開汽車，而不做任何一種的真正工作。他們又以爲英國人所做之事不是滑稽就是傲慢，老是穿着禮服或是精緻的制服。他們還以爲西洋婦女除了跳舞和講戀愛之外不做一點事。

在另一方面，許多西洋電影也厚誣了中國人民和中國生活。如果一張片子裏有中國脚色，他的出現老是拖着辮子，留着長指甲，所演的脚色也常是神祕的不忠實的，惡毒的殺人犯。許多西洋人就會想到中國人是神祕與危險的民族。這是國際互解和善意的大障礙。我們必要反抗有厚誣中國人的傾向的片子，我們也必得防止對於別種人民引起錯誤推論的壞片子。

電影又往往表演搶劫鬪爭，和猥褻的故事。爲什麼不能使之爲敘述一些高尚和有趣事件以及表現外國風景習俗的片子呢？爲什麼不能顯示工業的過程和情形敘述歷史上的事實或重要時事或是陳述幽默巧妙的故事呢？從這樣的片子裏人民既可以得到娛樂又可以得到有用的知識。

這兒是迅速地滿佈世界的大商業。它有利於世界麼？應當

made a benefit. Public opinion can control it. We must meet enterprise with enterprise. We must guide such growing enterprises in China for the good of the nation.

6. Developing China's Resources

Advertising and motion pictures are only examples of what marvelous things enterprise can do. The radio and the *aeroplane*¹ are other examples. You can think of many more. Notice that in each case there is something people need and are ready to pay for, then somebody enterprising and wise enough to put that thing before the people. Large industries are built up in this way.

China's natural resources offer just such chances for rapid development. Here are things needed. Who will bring them forth? The last generation lived and died and received no benefit from China's undeveloped resources. How many more generations of our men and women will pass away before these riches begin to be *enjoyed*²?

Think of the waterfalls and the rapids whose power could be turned into electricity! Here is light and heat and power that millions of people might be enjoying, but it is going to waste every minute, while the people suffer for lack of it.

Think of the *beds of coal*³ that have lain for thousands of years under our feet, while we like our ancestors, need it to cook our food, to warm our houses, to run our engines, to feed our power plants, and to make our new manufactures possible. Think of the precious forests that are being burned up for *fuel*⁴ every hour, while the coal lies untouched.

Think of the great quantities of *iron ore*⁵ that are waiting to be *mined*,⁶ while China buys iron goods from England and America. Iron is the foundation of modern industry. The manufacture of everything is dependent in some way upon iron. If China is about to begin her great industrial development she must have iron, and

1 飛機. 2 享受. 3 煤層. 4 燃料. 5 鐵礦. 6 開採.

使其有利才是。公衆意見能夠控制它。我們必需以企業精神應付企業。爲了國家的利益我們必要引導這種正在中國發展的企業。

六 開發中國的富源

廣告和電影只是企業可做的奇妙事情的例子罷了。無線電和飛機又是別的例子。你還能夠想起許多。我們要注意，每種情形總是有了人民需要和預備付給代價的東西，於是幾個有企業性的人足夠聰明地把那些東西放在人民的面前。大工業都是這樣舉辦起來的。

中國的天然富源正可供給迅速發展的機會。這兒有需要的東西。誰能把它拿出來呢？上一代的或生或死，却沒有得到中國的未開發富源的利益。在開始享受這宗財富之前我們男子和女子還要過多少年代呢？

想想瀑布和它的速力，其力量很可以變成電力！這兒有電燈，熱力，和電力，幾萬萬人都可享受着；但是每一秒鐘都正在浪費着，而人民却因爲缺乏它而受到損失。

想想幾千年埋在我們足下的煤層罷，我們也像我們的祖先般需要它來燒我們的食物，溫暖我們的屋子，轉動我們的引擎，養成我們的植物的原料，易於製造我們的新製造品。想想珍貴的森林，每個鐘點在當着燃料燒着，可是這些煤却無人動用。

想想大量的鐵礦正在等着開掘呢，而中國却向英國和美國購買鐵貨。鐵是近代工業的基礎。無論何物的製造多少總靠着鐵。如果中國準備創始她工業的偉大發展，那末她必得有鐵，

she must have large quantities of it. Shall she take gold from her pocket to buy iron when she has her own iron under her feet? It might be far better for her to take out a little of her gold and employ some experienced mining engineers to develop her iron mines.

'Iron and coal are needed together. The coal helps to dig the iron ore, and is necessary in turning the ore into iron. China has both in large quantities. Mr. V. K. Ting, *Director*² of the *Geological Survey of China*,² says that China's iron reserves are 677,000,000 tons, and that her coal reserves are between 40,000,000,000 and 50,000,000,000 tons. He adds that China is the only nation on the Pacific which has great coal reserves. She cannot advance her prosperity until she opens up this great source of wealth and means of development. Get out your geography, and copy some more figures to show China's undeveloped resources.

Think of the thousands of hills and mountains upon which *sheep*³ and cattle may be fed, or trees grown for fuel, *lumber*,⁴ *nuts*,⁵ oil, *spices*,⁶ etc. What could give an enterprising man more joy than to develop plains now covered only with grass?

Trees are a *splendid*⁷ *investment*⁸. Some people do not think so, because they wish to get rich quickly, and they have no thought for their children and grandchildren. There is an old saying, "Be always planting a tree, for it will be growing while you are sleeping." China's floods are due partly to the *bare*⁹ condition of the mountains. *Reafforestation*,¹⁰ or planting trees again upon the mountains, would not only prove a good investment but would do much to prevent floods.

Most of China's *agriculture*¹¹ has been on level land and much of it even on *water-soaked*¹² land; but if the people only learn the principles of upland agriculture, the hills can be used also, and that without the labor and expense of *terracing*.¹³

1 所長。 2 中國地質調查所。 3 羊。 4 木材。 5 果實。 6 香料。 7 絕好的。 8 投資。 9 禿禿。 10 重新造林。 11 農業。 12 水浸。 13 蓋土。

並且要有大量的鐵，她自己脚下有鐵，她還要從袋裏摸出金錢來買它麼？最好還是拿出一點金錢，雇用幾個有經驗的礦師開掘她的鐵礦罷。

鐵和煤需要用在一起。煤可以幫助鐵礦的開掘，並且把礦物變做鐵也需要煤。兩樣東西中國都有巨大的數量。中國地質調查所所長丁文江先生，說中國保有的鐵為六七七，〇〇〇，〇〇〇噸，保有的煤自四〇，〇〇〇，〇〇〇，〇〇〇噸至五〇，〇〇〇，〇〇〇，〇〇〇噸。他又說中國是太平洋諸國中唯一擁有大量的煤的國家。不開掘這宗大量富源和想法發展它中國就不能增進她的財富。翻開你的地理書，抄下幾張表示中國未開發富源的圖表罷。

想想幾千座大山小山，在這上面，羊和牛可以飼養，樹木生長起來可作燃料，木材，果實，油，香料，等等。還有什麼比開發成爲滿長青草的平原更可使一位企業家快樂呢？

種樹是一種絕好的投資。有些人不這樣想，因爲他們要立刻致富，並不爲他們的子孫着想。有句老古話說，『常常種株樹罷，因爲它在你睡着的時候也在生長起來。』中國的水災一部分的原因是由於山上的禿禿使然。重新造林，或是重新在山上種樹不但可以保證爲良好的投資，並且可以大有功於防止水災。

中國的農業大部分是在水平地上，有許多甚至在被水浸着的土地上；但是只要人民曉得高地農業的原理，小山地也可應用了，那是沒有建築臺地的人工和消費的。

Our forefathers did some wonderful work in irrigation, but with modern construction methods, engines, *pumps*,¹ *hydraulic rams*,² windmills, and *well-boring apparatus*³ the development in China's dry regions ought to be rapid and far beyond the dreams of our ancestors.

The same things are true of flood prevention, of diking the rivers and of *reclaiming*⁴ and protecting the *lowlands*.⁵ Pumps and windmills are needed to keep the land dry enough to cultivate even when the flood waters are kept out. Enough valuable land is waiting for this sort of development to pay off China's national debt many times over.

7. Transportation

Look at the railway map of China. You can easily see that China has already planned a great national transportation system. Find the length of the roads from the north to the south and of those from Shanghai to the Far West. It is a big thing. Shall you not want to have some small part in its development? Men take great pride and interest in working in such great modern enterprises as a national railway or a *transoceanic*⁶ steamship line. There is something *grand*⁷ and *inspiring*⁸ in it even to the humblest worker. Did you never notice how important a little train boy feels? So every man in the employ of the company feels uplifted and proud to be in it.

Look again at the map, and see how much of that great system of railroads is already built and how much still *awaits*⁹ the enterprise of men of your generation.

Look at it again. You have not seen a *tenth*.¹⁰ Compare the map with a railway map of America, especially of the central and Eastern states. This man is black with railways. The large *trunk*¹¹ lines are *utilized*¹² for traveling hundreds or even thousands of miles, but there is also a great network of railways which serve to transport⁴ passengers from town to town, to carry produce from the

1 抽水機。 2 自動揚水機。 3 穿孔機。 4 開墾。 5 低地。 6 橫過大洋的。
7 光榮。 8 興奮。 9 等候。 10 十分之一。 11 幹線。 12 利用。

我們的祖先做了許多可驚的灌溉工程，但是如果用了現代構成的方法，機器，抽水機，自動揚水機，風車和穿孔機，那末中國乾燥區域的開發應該大為迅速，而不是我們的祖先所能夢想得到的。

對於防止水災，開掘河流，開墾和保護低地這同樣的許多的東西也有用的。抽水機和風車是需用於使土地乾燥，可以即使在洪水泛濫之時也可耕種。有價值的土地正待着這樣去開發，其利數倍於中國外債之償還呢。

七 運輸

看看中國的鐵道圖。你就容易地看到中國已經計劃了個偉大的全國運輸系統了。試尋出從北到南，和從上海到遠遠的西部的路線長度。這真是件巨大的事情。在它的發展中你不願稍盡本分麼？人們都以在這樣偉大的現代企業如國有鐵道或橫過大洋的輪線中工作為大大的光榮和有趣味呢。就是最低級的工人也有些光榮和興奮的事情在內。你永不注意一個火車裏的小車僅覺得有怎樣的重要麼？所以公司裏的每個雇員都以置身其中為榮的。

再看一看地圖，鐵道大系統有多少已經築成，有多少尚待你一代人們的企業精神去做呢。

再看一看，你還沒有看見十分之一哩。試和美國的鐵道圖比較，尤其是中部和東部諸邦。這張圖是被鐵道擠得黑黑的。以大幹線通過幾百甚至幾千哩的路程，却也有偉大的鐵道網，從此鎮到彼鎮，用以運輸旅客，裝載農產，從農場到城市去，

farms to the cities, and also to carry goods from the centers to the small places.

All this requires enterprise like that of a Chinese who was working on a railway in the northwestern part of the United States. He did such good work, his *conduct*¹ was so good, and he showed so much good sense that he was made the *foreman*² of a section. After several years he came back to China. Fortunately he was an enterprising fellow. In his district in Kwangtung there was no railway to the sea; he went to work and built one. It is a good railroad. It serves the people well, is safe, and makes money. It is a successful enterprise.

Many a³ great city in china will double its size when its railways come. Many a coast port will fill its harbor with ships when its railways come. Many a *starving*⁴ region will never again find food too scarce and high when its railways come. Many a *backward*⁵ district will come into the new life of China when its people can *get in touch with*⁶ the busy modern world. Many a little valley which now has *surplus*⁷ food that the cities need is shut away from everything for which people like to exchange *excess*⁸ food. Every such place, when a railway passes near it, will become a real and valuable part of the nation. Such a process is almost like extending the boundaries of the country.

But trunk lines and all the little connections are not enough. There must be train lines (or *street-car*⁹ lines) inside and outside the cities. There must also be a great network of motor roads. Then the country can be fully developed, fully protected by police, and thoroughly enjoyed. We must not forget China's undeveloped resources of beauty. We must seek to make China not only a safe and *comfortable*¹⁰ home for a great people but also a place of beauty and enjoyment. There are mountains, waterfalls, temples, *groves*,¹¹ and lakes to enjoy. Only by good roads can we reach and enjoy the beautiful places in all parts of china. A good example of Chinese enterprise in the building of motor roads under great

1 品行。 2 工程表。 3 許多。 4 飢荒的。 5 開化遲的。 6 接觸。 7 過剩的。 8 過剩。 9 電車。 10 舒服的。 11 叢樹。

也從中心點裝載着貨物運到小地方去。

一切都需要企業精神，像一個中國人，他是在美國的西北部鐵道上服務的。他做着這樣好的工作，他的品行這樣的優良，他還有許多好的常識，所以就做了某段的工程長。幾年之後，他回到中國來。很幸氣的他是個有企業性的漢子。在他所居的廣東某縣中沒有鐵道通到海邊；他就去工作，築了一條。這是條好鐵道。使人民便利而安全，並且賺了錢。這就是成功的企業。

中國有許多大城市如果有了鐵路就會倍增其體積。許多的海口如果有了鐵路就會船兒滿埠。許多饑荒的區域如果有了鐵路就決不會找尋食物，稀少而又昂貴了。許多開化遲的區域，如果它的人民能夠和忙碌的現代世界接觸，就能過着新生活了。有許多小山谷裏現在有着城市所需的過剩食品，可是封鎖着，不能交換他們願以過剩食物相易的東西。每處有這樣情形的地方，如果有鐵道在近處經過，就將成爲國中殷實與有價值的一部。這樣的方法正好像擴充國家的邊界。

僅是幹線和一切支線還是不夠。在城市內外還要有小火車線（或是電車線）。還必定要有偉大的汽車路網。那末這個國家才有充分地發展，人民充分地受警察的保護，和完全享受着幸福。我們必定不可忘掉中國沒有開發的麗質。我們必定要設法使中國不但成爲一個衆民的安全和舒服的家庭，並要是一個美麗和可樂的地方。中國有山嶺，瀑布，寺廟，叢樹和湖沼之娛。只要有良好的道路我們就可到達和享受中國各地的美麗地方了。中國企業精神在巨大困難之下築成汽車路的好例子在

difficulties is found in Canton, where nine miles of wide streets were cut through the city in the year and a half between January 1, 1920, and July 1, 1921, and many more miles have been built since that time. In the *last few years*¹ Kwangsi Province has built over 1400 miles of motor roads *linking up a number of*² cities. There are now more than 500 *busses*³ running between cities and giving regular transportation service. Other parts of China are also making rapid progress along this line. In China as in Western countries *prosperity*⁴ will follow the development of a great transportation system.

China has not yet 8000 miles of railways, while the United States has 265,000 miles. The *latter*⁵ has, in addition, about the same *mileage*⁶ of good hard motor roads. China, however, has not nearly as many miles of motor roads as she has of railways. In the United States there is *on an average*,⁷ one mile of railway for every 473 people, while in China there is one for every 55,000 people. It is said that China should have at once 50,000 miles of railways to unite and develop the whole nation.

Do what you can to encourage thought about this great transportation problem. Money must be invested in railways. Nobody should *stand in the way*⁸ of good roads. Join the Good-Roads Movement.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell the story of a Chinese who undertook a difficult task and accomplished it successfully.
2. Think of any ways in which you can apply the same principle in the work you do at school.
3. Why are patent and copyright laws valuable?
4. Write three advertisements of Chinese *merchandise*.⁹ Make a *poster*¹⁰ advertising some event about to take place at your school.

1 最近幾年。 2 連結許多。 3 公共汽車。 4 繁榮。 5 後者。 6 哩數。 7 平均。 8 妨礙。 9 商品。 10 招貼。

廣東可以找到。廣東以一年半的工夫，自一九二〇年正月一日到一九二一年七月一日築成九哩長的橫穿城市的大街，在同時又築成了許多哩別的道路。在最近幾年廣西省築了一四〇〇哩的汽車路以連接許多城市。現在已有五百輛以上的公共汽車來往於各城市間，並經營着有規則的運輸事宜。中國其它各地關於汽車路也有迅速的進展。中國也像西洋各國般繁榮跟着偉大的運輸系統一同發展。

中國至今還沒有八千哩的鐵道，而美國有二十六萬五千哩長。後者還要加上哩數約略相等的良好堅實的汽車路。中國却無論如何還沒有和她鐵路長度差不多的汽車路。在美國平均每四百七十三個人中有一哩長的鐵路。而在中國呢，要每五萬五千個人中才有一哩。據說，中國要立刻有五萬哩長的鐵道以統一和開發整個的國家。

關於這個偉大的運輸問題你要盡力鼓起你的思考來。必定要把錢投資在鐵路上。沒有人會妨礙建築優良的道路。參加優良道路的運動罷。

問題和練習

1. 陳述一個中國人的故事，他擔任了困難的事業，但成功地完成了。
2. 想出任何一種方法，其原理可同樣應用於校內你所作的各事的。
3. 爲什麼專利權和版權的法律有價值？
4. 寫三張中國商品的廣告。製一張關於你校中發生的事情的招貼廣告。

5. Think out a few ways in which you can now prepare to be ready when Opportunity comes knocking at your door. Tell the class about them.

6. Explain how all honest work can be made a *stepping-stone*¹ to something better.

7. Describe a motion picture you have seen *recently*.² Do you think its influence good or not? Why?

8. Write a *scenario*³ for a motion picture that would give Western people a good idea of Chinese customs.

9. Give a few examples of what enterprise could accomplish for China.

10. Tell what you can about modern irrigation.

11. Can you mention some difficulties in building good roads in China and think of any ways of *overcoming*⁴ them?

1 踏步石。 2 新近。 3 電影劇本。 4 克服。

5. 想出幾種你能現時準備的方法以應付當命運打你的門時。把這些方法告訴全級。
6. 說明爲什麼一切誠實工作能做達到更好事件的踏石。
7. 描寫你在最近看過的一張影片。你以爲它的影響是好是壞？爲何？
8. 寫一篇電影劇本可使西洋人民對於中國習俗有好影響的。
9. 舉幾個可爲中國施行的企業的例子。
10. 陳述你所知的關於新式灌溉的方法。
11. 你能舉出在中國築優良道路的困難麼？想法克服這些困難。

CHAPTER VII

EFFICIENCY¹—ECONOMY² AND SUCCESS

1. Enterprise and Efficiency

Enterprise has a very important *mate*,³ whose name is Efficiency. The two ought always to go together. Enterprise dares *attempt*⁴; Efficiency pulls Enterprise through to a successful end. Enterprise is bold; Efficiency is *cautious*⁵. Enterprise sees the goal, and Efficiency finds the shortest and best road that leads to it.

Someone has said that an engineer, a really efficient engineer, is a man who can construct for one dollar what any *fool*⁶ can build for two. Anybody can build a strong bridge. The question is how much stone and iron and cement and time and labor he will require. A good engineer makes it strong enough, but not much stronger than the *greatest strain*⁷ it will ever have. That is of course efficiency; it is success with economy. China has many bridges to build and rivers to dike and roads to construct and schools to *organize*. Efficiency will make these possible, will do the work quickly, and will make further undertakings always easier and surer of success. Lack of efficiency will make every undertaking difficult and *uncertain*⁸ and, even if it succeeds, will make further efforts still more difficult and uncertain. Efficiency does not necessarily mean spending the least money, because if, by spending less, values are *decreased*,⁹ then it is *inefficiency*¹⁰.

2. Two Returned Students

Two young men returned from the United States, where for some years they had studied chemical engineering and had won university degrees. They were *cordially*¹¹ received by their families and old friends. *Banquets*¹² were

1 效率。 2 經濟。 3 同伴。 4 嘗試。 5 謹慎的。 6 愚人。 7 壓力。 8 不足特。 9 減少。 10 無效率。 11 熱烈地。 12 宴會。

第七章 效率——經濟與成功

一 企業和效率

企業有個很重要的同伴，他的名字叫效率。那兩個總是共同出進的。企業勇於嘗試，效率推着企業達到成功的結果。企業是勇敢的；效率是謹慎的。企業看準了目標，效率找尋達到這個目標的最短與最好的路。

有人說一個工程師，一個真正有效力的工程師，就能以一塊錢造成愚人用兩塊錢才能造成的東西。任何人能造一座堅固的橋樑。問題却在造這座橋該用多少石頭，鐵，水泥，多少時間和人工。一個好的工程師把它造得夠堅固，但是其堅固程度決不超過它所受的最大的壓力。那當然就有效率了；這在經濟上也是成功。中國有許多的橋樑要建築，許多的河流要開掘，許多的路要建造，許多的學校要組織。效率能促使其成功，使其工程迅速，更使將來的事業更其有更容易和更確實的成功。缺少效率，將使每件事業困難和不足恃，即使得以成功，也使將來的作品更爲困難和不足恃。效率不必定是費最少的錢的意義，如果因爲費得少而減輕其價值，那末這反而是失去效率了。

二 兩個回國的學生

兩個青年從美國回來，在那裏他們學了好幾年的化學工程，獲得了大學學位。他們受着他們家庭和朋友的熱烈歡迎。

given in their honor as if they had already really become chemical engineers. There was much discussion of their plans for industrial developments. Everybody admired their knowledge, *zeal*,¹ and *energy*². They started to work. Both were full of enterprise, but only one was efficient.

The first young man, Chang, decided to develop a big glass factory³. He saw that China was using a great deal of glass, a rapidly increasing amount of it. People were putting more windows in their houses. They are using more medicine in bottles and drinking more bottled soda water⁴. Lamp chimneys⁵ were being used more and more. Increasingly people were drinking from glasses instead of cups. There was no doubt that the demand for glass was great and would be greater. There was no difficulty in getting people interested in the proposed glass factory. There was, it is true, some difficulty in getting them to agree to *provide*⁶ the money needed, but finally it was secured—a large *sum*⁷. An organization was formed, Officers were elected and men were employed. Chang was chosen manager and given a high salary. He bought a good site and proceeded to build a large modern factory. He bought a great deal of *equipment*,⁸ some of which was not of just the right kind and had to be changed. *Step by step*⁹ he prepared to open his factory and begin work, but in the process he was spending money and producing nothing. So long a period of time was taken in this preparation that the capital was used up before the equipment was all ready or the raw materials bought. The company therefore failed and *went out of business*¹⁰ before it produced a single bottle or window *pane*¹¹.

The other young man, Wu, was interested in the increasing demand for *turpentine*,¹² *resin*¹³, alcohol, and *varnishes*¹⁴. He therefore started a little turpentine *still*¹⁵ in his own home. He learned by experience where to get the best raw materials; how to *distil*¹⁶ the turpentine from the resin with the least waste and the purest products; where to sell the turpentine in China and how best

1 熱誠。 2 精力。 3 玻璃廠。 4 蘇打水。 5 燈罩。 6 供給。 7 金額。 8 器具。 9 逐漸。 10 倒閉。 11 玻璃板。 12 松節油。 13 松香。 14 漆。 15 蒸餾所。 16 蒸餾。

尊重地爲他們設宴，好像他已經真的成爲化學工程師了。對於他們發展工業的計劃討論得很多。人人敬重他們的知識，熱誠和精力。他們開頭去工作了。兩個都充滿着企業精神，但是只有一人是有效率的。

第一個青年姓張，決定去開辦一家大玻璃廠。他見到中國要用到很多很多的玻璃，並且應用的數量迅速地加增着。人民在他們屋子裏多開着窗戶。他們更多用瓶裝的醫藥和飲着瓶裝的蘇打水。燈罩的用途也愈加愈多。人民用玻璃杯盛飲料以替代磁杯的正在增加。那是毫無疑義地玻璃的需要甚爲巨大，而且以後還要更大。創設玻璃工廠不難引起人民的興趣。真實的，但使他們同意於供給所需的錢倒有點困難，最後錢籌着了——大宗的錢。就形成了一個組織。職員選舉出了，還雇用着人。張被推爲經理，給他高額的薪水。他買了一塊好所在，並且進行建築巨大的新式廠屋。他買了許許多多的器具，有些並非是所需的一種而必須掉換。一步步地他準備開張他的工廠，和開始工作，但在這進行之中他費掉了錢，出品却一無所有。經過了這樣長的準備時期，在一切器具完備和購買原料之前所有資本都已用完了。這家公司就此倒閉，在它產生一只瓶或是一扇窗上的玻璃以前就停業了。

另外一個青年姓吳，對於松節油，松香，酒精和漆的需要增加甚感興趣。他於是就在他自己的家裏創設小規模松節油蒸溜所。他由於經驗曉得什麼地方去買最好的原料，怎樣從松香中蒸發松節油才能浪費最少而得最純淨的出品；在國中那裏去銷售松節油，用什麼最好的方法把松香運到新加坡去，那裏

to ship the resin to Singapore, where it was in greater demand; and finally how to construct a better still, exactly suited to the use of local fuel and native buildings. At the same time he was making money and *putting it by*¹. Soon he rented a house with a *narrow access*² to the river but with *plenty of*³ room for work and storage. Here he built a large still. This was profitable at once, and he was ready to begin making one for distilling alcohol, which would be used with his resin in making varnishes. Thus step by step Wu's undertaking was built up, while step by step Chang's was destroyed. One was an efficient manager, while the other was inefficient; and although both had started with the same university degrees, one was a success and the other a failure.

3. Economy or Waste?

There are two ways of *serving a meal*⁴ (either a Chinese or a Western meal). At an ordinary meal in one's own home the food is put into large bowls or dishes and placed upon the table or handed to each person *in turn*⁵. In this way each one may take what he wants. The result of this method is that at the end of the meal the bowl or *plate*⁶ of each person is usually empty, and whatever food has been left is still in the large bowls or dishes and may be eaten at another time. This is the economical way of serving a meal. The other way is wasteful. By this second method, which is common at banquets, almost all the food is served in individual bowls or plates, from which each person eats what he wants. The result is that frequently a great many servings are left half eaten and then thrown away. These two methods of serving a meal *illustrate*⁷ the difference between economy and waste.

China has not usually been considered a wasteful nation, but the fact is that her need for rapid and efficient development is so great that her patriotic sons and daughters will have to practice every economy and make every effort to *prevent*⁸ waste.

1 貯蓄起來。 2 近路。 3 充分的。 4 進食。 5 輪流。 6 盤。 7 說明。 8 防止。

才是更為需要的地方；最後怎樣建設一個較好的蒸溜所，恰恰適合於應用本地燃料和本鄉房屋。同時他賺了錢儲蓄起來。不久他租得一所房屋，有一條近路通到河邊，却有充分的地方可供工作與儲藏。這裏他造起一所大蒸溜所。不多幾時就有贏利了，於是他預備開始創辦一所酒精蒸溜所，酒精是可以和松香同用而製成漆的。這樣一步步地吳的事業建立起來了，而張却一步步地被毀了。一個是有效率的經理，另外一個却沒有效率；雖然兩個都以同樣的大學學位起業，一個成功而另一個却失敗了。

三 經濟或浪費？

進食有兩種方法（不論是中餐或西餐）。通常在家裏進食總是把食物放在大碗或大盆裏，放在桌子上，或是輪流傳給各人。用這種方法每個人可以取他所要的東西。這個方法的結果是吃到末了各人的碗或盤往往是空的，而所剩下的食品仍在大碗或大盆裏，也許在下次還可以吃。這是進食的經濟方法。另外一個方法是浪費了。第二個方法通常是用於宴會的，差不多一切食物都放在個人的碗或盤裏，每個人就在其中吃他所要的東西。其結果常常有許多的食物吃了一半就剩下而被拋棄了。這兩種進食的方法說明經濟和浪費的不同。

中國並不常當作一個浪費的國家，但是事實上她對於迅速有效之發展極為需要，所以她的愛國子女們要實行各事經濟和極力防止浪費。

4. Economy in Quality

A man planned to build a house for \$10,000. He found that he would be able to rent it for \$1000 a year. That seemed to him a good investment of money until he carefully counted the *annual costs*,¹ thus:

Interest ² on \$10,000	\$400 per year
Insurance ³ at 1 per cent of the cost.	100 per year
Repairs (average for the life of the house)	200 per year
Wear and tear ⁴ (the house useless after twenty years)	500 per year
Total annual cost	\$1200

Of course he must have interest on his money. After that, what was the large item? It was "*writing off*"⁵ the cost." The wear and tear which cannot be repaired, which finally brings the house down to the ground, any and all forms of *decay*⁶ and destruction against which you cannot insure—these required him to *charge*⁷ about one twentieth of the original cost against its value every year. As a result he decided that this was not a very good investment.

What was the trouble? He did not plan to use good material and to build in such a permanent way that the house would (except for an earthquake) stand forty or sixty years. By spending a little more money for *concrete*⁸ and other *durable*⁹ materials, he could increase the life of the house (that is, decrease the wear and tear) out of all proportion to the *extra cost*¹⁰.

It is just the same thing when you buy for fifty cents as *umbrella*¹¹ which will go to pieces in three months, instead of buying for two dollars one that will last for two or three years. It is not economy to buy articles of poor quality. The only person who should buy cheap things is the one who is too childish to take care of them. Most people find it advantageous to pay more and get durability.

1 每年耗費。 2 利息。 3 保險費。 4 破損。 5 扣還。 6 朽腐。 7 使。 8 三和土。 9 耐久的。 10 所加費用。 11 傘。

四 品質的經濟

有人計劃以一萬元造一所屋子。他覺得能夠以每年一千元出租。在他沒有詳細計算每年耗費之前，他總以為是一件很好的投資呢。其耗費如下：

一萬元的利息	每年四百元
價值的百分之一保險費	每年一百元
修理費（照房屋年齡平均）	每年兩百元
破損（這所房屋二十年後無用）	每年五百元
總計每年所費	一千二百元

當然他的錢要有利息的。除此之外，最大的項目是什麼？扣還所耗費的成本。不能修補的破損最後使這所屋子倒在地上，一切和任何一處的朽腐破爛你不能為之保險——這一類就要他每年耗費約值原值二十分之一。結果他決定這不是很好的投資。

困難在那裏呢？他沒有計劃用好的材料，用耐久的方法去建築，如果如此這所房屋可以（除開地震）豎立着四十年或六十年之久。由於費去稍多的錢去買三和土和別的耐久的材料，他可以把房屋的壽命延長（那就是，改少其破損程度）其比例遠超出所加費用之上。

這正是同樣的事情，你以五毛錢買一把傘，這把傘在三個月內就要碎裂，如果你以兩塊錢買一把，那就可用兩年和三年了。買品質不佳的物品並不是經濟。只有一種人該買廉價的東西，就是因為他太孩子氣了，不能當心它們。大多數的人民覺得代價高一點而得到耐久的物品是有利的。

5. Three Ways to use Things

Three men bought rice at a shop. One took his rice home and threw it at a *bride*¹ and *groom*²—one of the *silly ways*³ people have of *teasing*⁴ a *newly married couple*.⁵ The second cooked and ate his when he was hungry. The third planted his and received both pleasure in watching it grow and profit in reaping it when it was *ripe*.⁶

Three men bought fish at a market. The first, in *obedience to*⁷ the commands of a *monk*,⁸ put his fish back into the river, thinking that he was gaining *merit*⁹ for himself, but in reality he was just wasting the time and labor of the fishermen. The second cooked his fish for his family to eat. The third put his fish into a *pond*¹⁰ and raised many fish from them.

Three men bought motor cars. One used his for "joy riding" until one day he carelessly *drove it into a carriage*¹¹ and *ruined*¹² both his car and the carriage. The second used his to carry himself and his two sons *to and from*¹³ their business every day and to take his family out into the fresh air of the country. The third used his to carry passengers at thirty cents each until he made enough money to buy a home.

Three sons *inherited*¹⁴ wealth. One wasted his. One used his. One invested his in productive enterprise.

6. Waste of Materials and of Products

China is famous for her habits of economy in materials, in purchases, and in the use of most articles. When an American cooks a chicken he throws away a large part of it. He makes no use of the feet, of the brain, of the *wing tips*¹⁵ (usually), of the *entrails*,¹⁶ of the *marrow in the bones*,¹⁷ or of the *feathers*¹⁸. A good Chinese servant or housewife knows how to use all these in one way or another. One could name many large and small savings that the Chinese have learned to make in their use of various articles and materials. They utilize even the *skins of oranges*,¹⁹ which are generally thrown away.

1 新娘. 2 新郎. 3 愚弄方法. 4 戲弄. 5 新婚夫婦. 6 成熟. 7 服從. 8 和尚. 9 功德. 10 池. 11 撞在一輛貨車上. 12 毀壞. 13 往返. 14 繼承. 15 翅膀. 16 內臟. 17 骨髓. 18 羽毛. 19 橘皮.

五 使用東西的三種方法

三個人在一家舖子裏買米。一人把他的米帶回家去，拋在新娘新郎的身上——一種向新婚夫婦開玩笑的愚蠢方法。第二個人把米燒熟在他飢餓時吃掉了。第三個把米播種，守候它的生長，當他成熟時收穫起來得到了利益，兩件事都可以快樂的。

三個人在市場上買魚。第一個服從了一個和尚的命令，把他的魚再放在河中，以為他已獲得功德。但是實在他只是浪費這個漁人的時間和勞工罷了。第二個把魚燒熟給全家吃了。第三個把他的魚放在池中，使牠們生出許多的魚來。

三個人買汽車。一人用他的汽車來開着玩，後來有一天他很不小心地把車子撞在一輛貨車上，他的車子和貨車兩者都毀壞了。第二個用他的車子天天載他和他的兩個兒子往來於業務上，並帶着他的家庭到外面去呼吸鄉村的新鮮空氣。第三個用他的車子載客，每人三毛錢，直得後來他賺了錢買了房子。

三個兒子承繼財產。一人浪費了他的。一人應用他的。一人把他的財產投資於生產企業上。

六 材料和出品的浪費

中國是以她原料的經濟，購買物件的經濟，對於大多數物品應用的經濟，這幾種習慣著名的。當一個美國人煮一只雞的時候，他把雞大部分拋棄了。他對於腳，腦，翅膀，（常常如此）內臟，骨髓，羽毛不加利用。一個好的中國僕人或管家婦就知道如何以一種或其他方法利用一切這些東西。有人能夠舉出許多或大或小的東西，那種東西是中國人所曉得的以省下來的各種物品和材料的應用，拿來做成的。他們甚至於應用橘皮，這件東西普遍是拋去的。

There are, however, some kinds of economy that for the sake of China's progress need far greater attention than they have received in the past. One of these is the better use of certain articles and materials and of money—their use in such ways as to give larger returns to the country. An enormous amount of chemical material and paper is used each year in fireworks¹, to produce what? Noise. Still more valuable labor and material are consumed² each year in incense,³ to produce what? An odor.⁴ A large amount of wealth still goes into certain drugs,⁵ to produce what? Sleep. A still larger amount—the price of a province—goes into tobacco, to produce what? Smoke. An amount probably still greater goes to buy wine, to produce what? Nothing but weakness. These are some of the wastes that patriotic Chinese men and women are beginning to fight against. When expenditures⁶ bring returns equal to their costs they are not wasteful; but people now consider the total cost to the nation itself, as well as to themselves, of all the small items that make up such great expenditures. They ask questions like these:

Does the purchase mean production, or only consumption⁷?

Does the consumption bring either new strength or lasting satisfaction?

Does the purchase bring the greatest return that this amount of expense can secure? Is it the most for the money?

7. Is China Poor?

China is sometimes said to be poor—too poor to pay her debts or to build her railways or to dike her rivers, but the fact is that the land, labor, time, and money which go into tobacco in China would be sufficient for all these in a very short time. Cement and electrical machines and apparatus are of great value to China. In 1924 she imported⁸ 2,000,000 taels' worth of cement and 9,800,000 taels' worth of electrical machines and apparatus, but of foreign cigarettes and tobaccos she bought

1 烟火, 2 消耗, 3 佛香, 4 香氣, 5 藥品, 6 消費, 7 消費, 8 輸入

無論如何，有幾種要經濟的事物，那是爲了中國之故需要比受之於過去的東西還要大大的注意的。其中之一是對於某種物品，材料和金錢的要更好去用——要以使國家得到較大利益的方法用之。一宗巨額化學材料和紙張年年用以製造燄火，產生了什麼？吵鬧。還有更多的有價值的勞力和材料每年消耗在佛香上，產生什麼？一種香氣。大宗的財富消費於某種藥品上，產生什麼？睡眠。還有更大的款額——一省的價格——在煙草上消費，產生什麼？煙霧。顯然還有一宗更大的款額用以買酒，產生什麼？除了衰弱以外別無他物。這些都是一些浪費，那愛國的中國男子和女子要和這些東西奮鬥。當消費時，所得到的價值和所費的相等就不算浪費；但是人民現在想着，一切小項目的總代價造成這樣大的消費，對於國家和對於個人都是一樣的。他們詢問問題如下：

購買的意義是不是生產，或只是消費？

消費還是生出新力量，還是持久的滿足？

購買物品的這宗消費能保證給他以最大利益麼？

是否這是金錢的最大代價？

七 中國是貧窮麼？

時時聽說中國是窮的——窮到難以還她的債務，建築她的鐵道，開掘她的河流；但是在事實上中國所費於煙草的土地，勞力，時間，和金錢在最短期間就足夠把各事做到了。水泥，電機，機械對於中國有很大的用途。在一九二四年水泥進口價值二，〇〇〇，〇〇〇兩，電機，機械進口價值九，六〇〇，〇〇〇，但是進口的外國香煙和煙草價值却有五三，〇〇〇，

53,000,000 taels' worth. It is said that China now consumes over 20,000,000,000 cigarettes a year.

China has some very valuable oil which all the world needs, but some of these are handled in very wasteful ways. They ought always to be *purified*¹ properly. They ought to be of standard qualities, so that all doubt of their value would be *removed*². They ought to be handled in proper markets, so that each producer would get the *maximum*³ benefit from his sales. They ought to be prepared for market in the most salable forms so that the difficulty of getting what one wants would be reduced to a *minimum*⁴. It is now common for Chinese to buy in China a *sauce*⁵ made in Europe from *soy-bean oil*⁶ originally exported from China. In shops in China there are for sale many imported varnishes which were made from Chinese *wood oil*⁷ exported to some country where it was *refined*⁸, mixed, and put up in salable form to be sent back to China. Why can we not do the manufacturing ourselves? What is wrong when we have raw materials for manufacturing, labor to do the work, capital to build up our industries, and yet there is great *poverty*⁹ among our people?

8. National Economy in Business

There are now progressive companies doing just the kind of work which will make great savings in Chinese raw materials. Several companies are making *biscuits*¹⁰ and *candies*¹¹ just as good as most of those imported. Some companies are *canning*¹² meats, fruits, and vegetables to supply the great and growing demand for these things. Factories are working up Chinese *cotton*¹³ into Chinese goods for the Chinese market. Silk is now being handled by the same modern methods and machinery which are used in Western countries. *Leather*¹⁴ is being *tanned*¹⁵ in China and made up into shoes for the growing home trade.

A good example of utilizing a wasted material is found in the use of bamboo for making *baskets*¹⁶. In southern

1 提淨。2 除去。3 最高的。4 最小限度。5 醬油。6 豆油。7 桐油。8 提煉。9 貧窮。10 餅乾。11 糖果。12 裝罐。13 棉花。14 皮革。15 硝。16 籃。

〇〇〇，之多。據說中國現在每年銷耗的香煙在二百萬萬枝以上。

中國有幾種很有價值的油類，爲全世界所需要的，但是其中有幾種都用着很浪費的方法經營着。它們應該常常被合式地提淨。它們應該有標準的品質，那末關於它們價值的疑問就可除去了。它們應該在合式的市場裏經營，那末每一個生產者所售去他的貨物可以得到最高的利益。它們應該對於銷場用最多脫銷的方式準備着，那末對於人家所要的東西，其困難可以減至最小限度。現在這是很普通的，中國人在中國購買一種歐洲製造的醬油，原來却是用中國出口的豆油做的。中國店有出售許多進口的漆的，這些漆是以中國運往別國的桐油製成的，在外國提煉，攪和，用易於脫銷的樣子裝起來，然後再運回中國。爲什麼我們不能自己製造呢？我們既有製造的原料，工作的人工，建設工業的資本，可是至今人民還是很窮，這錯誤究在何處呢？

八 商業的國家經濟

現在有新的進步的公司正做着大大節省中國原料的各種工作。有幾家公司製造餅乾糖果，其優良一如大多數的外國貨。有些公司製造罐裝的肉，水果，蔬菜以供給這些東西的巨大而日增的需要。工廠把中國棉花製成中國物品以供給中國的市場。現在蠶絲也正以同於西洋各國所用的現代方法和機械經營着。皮革在中國稍就，製造皮靴以供正在生長的國內貿易。

廢物利用的好例子在用竹製籃上可以見到。中國南部有用

China there has been more bamboo than could be used. The finest long bamboo pole used to bring less than ten cents. Bamboo was made into baskets, but there were more baskets than the market could handle, more than people wanted even at the lowest prices. Then some shops began to make baskets for the foreign markets. They made them of fine *outside bamboo*,¹ colored them nicely, and made them so that they could be packed one inside another in "*nests*"² so as to be shipped economically. Then a five-cent basket became worth ten cents. A profitable trade was thus built up out of a wasteful one.

Such commercial economy is patriotic, for every item of it makes China richer and stronger. When a man saves, he saves the property of the nation of which he is a part; when he wastes, he wastes that property.

9. Getting Full Value out of Equipment

It is waste to allow things to *lie idle*³. If a man owns a horse and does not use it, he is wasting a horse, wasting the money he paid for it, and wasting the nation's animal-food supplies. The waste may be little, but this shows what we mean by waste through idleness.

If a railway buys so many cars that a number of them are unused much of the time, it is wasting cars and wasting the *tracks*⁴ they stand upon. If a railway buys so few cars that *freight*⁵ lies idle waiting for cars to carry it, and tracks built to hold the cars lie idle waiting for cars to be run upon them, again there is waste. Efficiency gets the most value possible out of the equipment.

In the United States there are miles of railway belonging to a great many different companies, each of which has its own "*rolling stock*."⁶ Now suppose a railroad in Georgia is sending its cars full of vegetables to Boston; a road there is sending its cars full of fish to St. Louis; a road there is sending its cars full of shoes to Alabama;

1 竹青。 2 巢形。 3 棄置不用。 4 軌道。 5 待運的貨物。 6 車輛。

不盡的竹子。買一根最精緻的長竹竿不消一毛錢。竹子是用來做籃的，但是籃子太多了，市場上無需這樣多的使用，即使價格極為低廉，人民也不須要了。於是有幾家店舖開始製造銷到外國去的籃子。他們把精緻的竹青製成，很好看地上了顏色，又把籃子做得能夠一只套一只的像個巢形，所以運出去很為經濟。後來五分錢的籃子值到了十分。一件獲利的貿易是以廢物建設起來的。

這種商業上的經濟才是愛國，因為它的每一件都使中國加增富強。一個人節省，就是節省他所有一部分的國家的財富，如果他浪費，也費掉那宗財富。

九 由設備上獲得充分的利益

讓東西擱着不用就是浪費。如果一個人有一匹馬而不去用它，就是浪費掉一匹馬，浪費掉他買進這匹馬的錢，和浪費掉國家的牲畜給養。這個浪費也許很小，但是就可表示有東西而不去用他，也是浪費的意義了。

如果一條鐵道買了這樣多的車輛，其中有許多好久不去用它，這就是浪費車輛和浪費設立的軌道。如果一條鐵道買進的車輛太少了，待運的貨物擱着等待車輛來運它，為行車而築的軌道也擱着等待車輛在上面行駛，這也是浪費。效率要使設備有獲得充分利益的可能。

在合衆國裏有好多哩的鐵道屬於很多很多的各家公司的，每家有它的車輛。現在假使在喬治埃的一條鐵道的車輛滿載着菜蔬開到波士頓去；波士頓鐵道的車輛滿載着魚開到聖路易去；聖路易鐵道的車輛滿載着皮鞋開到阿拉拔馬去；一條鐵道的車

and a road there is sending its cars full of cotton to a seaport in Georgia. Soon each road will have no cars of its own, and many cars of some other road will be lying idle or returning empty. This would mean great waste in idle cars and in the drawing of "empties." Therefore all the railroads in the country have *adopted*² tracks of exactly the same ("standard") width, so that any car may go anywhere; and they have agreed under certain conditions to use whatever cars are available, no matter whose they are, and to pay the owners rent for them. Thus there is little waste of equipment, and the Georgia cars finally return by some *roundabout*² route, such as Boston to St. Louis to Alabama to Georgia.

There is inefficiency if a boat is too big for its engine or the engine is too big for the boat. There is inefficiency if the engineer does not make the engine do full work. That is like letting your workman or manager sleep half of the day when he is fully able to do a day's work. An engineer has said that in the factories in Japan the machines are run at about 60 per cent of the speed they are meant to make. A big *wheel*³ *revolves*⁴ sixty times a minute when it might just as well revolve one hundred times a minute. A machine turns out sixty articles a minute when it might just as well turn out one hundred. This is waste through not getting full value out of equipment.

10. Efficiency and Public Service

The lessons of efficiency are not to be learned for *private*⁵ benefit only. They should make us better citizens. China is a republic, and in a republic it is very difficult to secure efficiency in government and public service. Let us do what we can to carry these ideas of efficiency into all forms of public service. It is easy to get officers *appointed*,⁶ but it is not easy to make sure they do their work well. It is easy to organize a *street-cleaning department*,⁷ but it is not easy to get the department to clean the streets properly. It is easy to get

1 採取。 2 迂迴的。 3 輪。 4 旋轉。 5 個人的。 6 委任。 7 清道處。

輛滿載着棉花開到喬治埃的海口去。不一會每條路上將沒有自己的車輛而別的幾條路上的許多車輛擱着不用或是空車回來。這就是擱着不用的車輛和空車回來的浪費。所以國中各鐵道都採取同樣闊度（就是標準式）的軌道，那末任何一輛車輛可以到無論那裏去了；他們又同意在某種情形之下可以使用無論那一輛可加利用的車子，不管是誰的車，只要把車輛的租費付給物主好了。如此一來設備的浪費就少了，而喬治埃的車輛可以來回打一個圓圈，譬如由波士頓至聖路易，至阿拉拔馬再至喬治埃。

如果大船用小機器，小船用大機器都是沒有效率。一個機師不使機器做着充分的工作也是沒有效率。那正像讓你的工人或經理睡上半天，其時他却有做全日工作的充足能力的。一個機師說在日本的工廠裏機械的速度僅為它能力所及的速度的百分之六十。一個巨輪每秒鐘轉六十次，其實同樣地它可以每秒鐘一百次。一架機械每秒鐘出貨六十件，其實同樣地它可以每秒鐘出貨一百件。這就是沒有從設備上獲得充分價值的浪費。

十 效率和公衆服務

效率的教訓不單是爲了個人利益而研究。這些教訓能使我們成爲較好的公民。中國是民主國，民主國是難以在政府和公衆服務裏獲得效率的。讓我們盡力把效率的觀念運輸到各式的公衆服務中去。委任官員是容易的，但是不容易確知他們能把工作辦得好。組織一個清道處是容易的，但是不容易使這個清道處能合式地清除街道。提倡滅蚊運動是容易的，但是不容易掃滅產生

up an *anti-mosquito campaign*,¹ but it is not easy to get rid of² all the *mosquito-breeding*³ places. Often the money is provided, but there is no good man to handle it; or the officer is appointed, but he has no money to work with. Often there are too many officers appointed and not enough money is left to carry on the work. Sometimes there are too many workers of one kind and not enough of another, so that some get in each other's way, and others have too much to do. If we can learn efficiency in our own affairs, we can help to make the public service efficient. If we can prevent waste of time, use of too many helpers, lack of equipment in our own business, we may know how to help to secure efficiency in government.

If we can be efficient in our school life and activities, we shall be taking the first important step toward that goal. Are the athletics of your school efficiently managed? Is every student *committee*⁴ an efficient body? Are the students in your school learning how to have efficiency in a republic by having it in every one of their organizations and activities?

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. What is waste? Can you think of any ways to prevent waste in your school? in your *community*⁵?
2. Tell the story of three sons who inherited wealth: how one wasted his, one used his, and one invested his in productive enterprise.
3. Can you think of another example of utilizing a waste material besides the one mentioned in the text?
4. Discuss the question Is China poor?
5. Try to make your school life more efficient; for example, make and bring to the class a list of your weak points in English. Do you use your school time to good advantage?

1 滅蚊運動。 2 掃滅。 3 產蚊。 4 委員會。 5 社會。

蚊蟲的地方。常常準備錢，但是沒有適當的人去經理；或是委任了官員，却沒有錢去工作。常常委任了太多的官員，却沒有足夠的錢以推行工作。有時在一件事上工人太多了而另一件却是不夠，所以有的空閒而有的又工作得太多。如果我們在自己的事務裏研究效率，我們就能幫助公衆服務，使其有效。如果我們能防止浪費時間，不用過多的助手，對於自己的業務不缺少效率，那我們也許可以知道怎樣幫助政府獲得效率了。

如果我們在學校生活和活動裏獲得效率，那末我們已取得向這個目標前進的重要的第一步了。你學校裏的體育管理有效率麼？每個學生委員會是個有效率的本體麼？如何使每個學生組織和活動有效率，進而使一個民主國中也獲得效率，你們校裏的學生會研究過麼？

問題和練習

1. 什麼是浪費？你能想出任何一種方法來防止你校裏的浪費和防止你社會的浪費麼？
2. 陳述三個兒子承繼財產的故事：怎樣一個浪費，一個應用，一個投資於生產企業上。
3. 除掉本書上所舉之外你能另想一個廢物利用的例子麼？
4. 討論『中國是否貧窮』的問題。
5. 試使你的學校生活更有效率；例如，用英文製一張你的弱點表，帶到課堂裏。你把你的學校時間用於有益的事情上麼？

CHAPTER VIII

CONSERVATION

1. Conservation of Resources

The word "conservation" is not so difficult as it looks, for it is closely related to the common word "preserve." It means the saving of our resources. The adjective "conservative" usually means "slow to let go our ideas," but the noun "conservation" usually means "being slow to let go our resources."

2. China has Great Resources to Conserve

There are few countries in the world with so rich and deep a soil as China has. Her soil was in most places rich and deep to begin with, and she has kept it rich by the use of natural *fertilizers*.¹ But, as we shall see later on, economy could be practiced in the greater use and the more efficient preservation of that soil.

Statements, both wild and *moderate*,² have been made about China's mineral resources. Without trying to estimate them we can say that as yet so little mining has been done in China that very little waste of these resources has resulted. They still await development. Very few mines have been opened. The waste in some countries comes, as we shall see in another chapter, from unscientific methods of mining; the waste in China is rather in the idleness of these mines. Riches are lying unused. They are like the lost ships loaded with gold that lie upon the *floor of the ocean*.³ Unable to bring them up, you would not give a *penny*⁴ for them. They will be of no value to the world until someone discovers and raises them. So it is with China's mineral resources.

1 肥料。 2 適度的。 3 海底。 4 小錢。

第八章 保守

一 保守富源

『保守』兩字看來並不怎樣難，因為它和普通的『保存』兩字有密切的關係。它的意義是我們富源的節省。形容詞『保守的』的意義通常從『保守我們的思想』解釋，但是名詞『保守』的意義却是『保守我們的富源』。

二 中國有偉大的富源要保守

世界上很少有國家能和中國一般的肥饒和深畊的土地。她的土壤有大多數的地方起頭就肥饒而深，而她用着自然肥料保存她的肥饒。但是等到我們看下去，經濟能夠使土壤的用處更大而保存的方法更有效力。

關於中國的礦產，不論過望的與適度的都有所陳述。不用估量它的多少，我們可以說在中國礦產開發的甚少，結果所浪費的富源也就不多。它們還待着開發呢。所開發的礦產真是稀少。有些國家的浪費（我們可以在另一章看到）是由於不用科學的方法去開採；中國的浪費却是由於闞着不去開掘。富力藏而不用。正像失蹤的船隻載着黃金，橫在海底。不把它起上來，這些黃金你一文也不能得到。除非有人去發見它和舉起它，對於世界是毫無價值的。中國的礦產也是這樣。這一代的中國人

This generation of Chinese may die just as poor as the last. The next generation may open the mines and *enrich*¹ themselves and their nation, or else they may leave these resources untouched and in their turn pass away just as poor as is this generation because of its neglect of great opportunities.

A word should be said here on both sides of the question of the conservation of mineral resources. It is wise to open the mines in such ways as to get the greatest *output*² for the money and labor expended; to lose no ore, coal, oil, etc., through wasteful handling; to market these to the best advantage; and to see that the benefits come to the public, to whom the mines really belong, rather than to a few enterprising companies or officials who secure mining rights at small cost. On the other hand, conservation may go so far as to leave the valuable ore unmined and so let it remain only as "*potential*"³ wealth.

3. Natural Objects to be Preserved

In America the conservation of resources has come to mean chiefly the preservation and right use of forests and streams. Some of the great trees of California are over two thousand years old, and a single one at its base is almost or quite as large as your classroom. The whole nation takes pride in such interesting things as these trees, and wants to have them preserved. Therefore the government has taken charge of many *sections*⁴ of the country containing such beautiful and interesting things as these big trees. Other natural beauties are the lovely waterfalls, deep gorges, *hot springs*⁵, high mountain *peaks*⁶, clear lakes, natural bridges, and large *caves*.⁷ These features are preserved in public parks. No one may use these parks for any business purposes except by permission. The government polices them and keeps the roads in good condition. If they were not so protected, it would not be long before the trees would be cut, the waterfalls would be used, and the land would be

1 使富。 2 產額。 3 潛伏的。 4 區域。 5 溫泉。 6 峯。 7 洞。

死去也許正像上一代一般的窮。下一代也許會開發這些礦，因以富身富國，也許他們放着不去動它，等到他們的時機過去，便也和這一代一樣的窮，因為它對於大機會忽視了。

關於保守礦產問題的兩方面這兒有一句話要說。開掘礦產要從金錢和勞力的消費裏獲得最大的產額；不要經過耗費的經營而喪失鐵，煤，油，等；向最有利益的市場上去賣；明白利益應給予大眾，礦產是確屬於大眾的，不要把利益給予少數的企業公司和官吏，因為他以很少的費用就能得到開採權的，這樣的方法是聰明的。在另一方面，『保守』也許漸至於放着鐵石不開發，讓它只是一種潛伏的財產。

三 保存天然的物品

在美國保守富源的意義最主要的趨於保存和善用這些森林和河流。加利福尼亞有幾株大樹已有二千年以上的年齡了，它的單單一條樹根就跟你的課堂差不多大。全國以有像大樹般的有趣的東西為榮，願意保存它們。於是政府管理着許多國內的區域，這些地方都包含着像這些大樹般的美麗和有趣的東西。別的自然美麗是可愛的瀑布，深密的山谷，溫泉，高峻的山峯，清澈的湖泊，天然的橋樑，和巨大的山洞。這些景象是保存在公園裏的。除了特許之外沒有一個人以任何商業目的應用這些公園。政府為之維持秩序，使道路也有良好的情狀。如果不是這樣保護它們，那末不久以前樹會被砍掉，瀑布也被利用

taken for ordinary use. But these things of interest and beauty are too good for common uses. They are for the enjoyment of the whole people.

4. The Forests must be Preserved

Conservation is the protection of such things as the forests and streams so that they can be put to ordinary uses. If they are not protected, they are wasted or even entirely ruined or destroyed. China's loss in forests and, as a *consequence*¹ of this loss, from floods and *droughts*² has been enormous, perhaps greater than anywhere else in the world. Probably the forests were first burned off because they gave protection to enemies and to dangerous wild animals. Then the constant cutting for fuel and *timber*³ kept them from growing up again and still further reduced the large forests which remained. *Bare hills*⁴ are cut into by the water that runs down them, especially where very heavy rains come after a long dry season. Trees have difficulty in getting started, even when people plant and protect them. The barer the hills become, the drier the seasons are; and the drier the seasons, the more the water cuts away the hills when the rain does come. The people suffer increasingly from droughts, from sudden floods, and from the loss of good soil washed away or covered up with sand. Therefore the preservation of the forests means the preservation of the plains and of *well-distributed rainfall*.⁵ Reafforestation (or the planting again of lost forests) will improve China's climate and soil, and will increase her streams and wood supply.

5. The Forests must be Properly Used

France and Germany have gone much further than America in the care of forests. In America the forest *rangers*⁶ give their attention chiefly to the prevention of fires. The forests are so big, so largely uninhabited, and at times so dry that once a fire is started it often does

1 結果。 2 旱災。 3 木材。 4 童山。 5 調節雨量。 6 山林監守人。

土地也取爲通常的用途了。但是這些有趣和美麗的東西却對於普遍的用途太有價值了。他們是用作全民的娛樂品呢。

四 森林必須保存

保守就是保存一些像樹林，河流般的東西，把它作爲通常的用途。如果不加保護，它們就浪費掉或甚至於全部廢去或破壞。中國森林的損失也許比較世界上無論何地爲大，其損失的結果就是水旱之災的增多。顯然森林最初是燒掉的，因爲森林給予敵人和可怕野獸以保障。後來就不斷的砍作燃料和木材，使它不能重行生長，因此就漸漸的減少剩下來的大森林了。童山是被水衝下來衝掉了樹木，尤其在長久的旱季之後大雨降落的地方。樹木是艱於生長的，即使人民去種植和保護。小山愈禿，季候愈乾燥，季候愈乾燥，下雨時水把小山上樹木衝掉的也愈多。由於旱災，突然的山洪，和良好土壤的洗掉，或被滿蓋黃沙，人民的損失也就加重。所以保存森林其意就是保存平地，和調節雨量。重造森林（或是把失去的森林重新種植起來）會改良中國的氣候及土壤，和加增她河流與樹木的供給。

五 森林必須要適當地用它

法德兩國對於當心森林遠過於美國。在美國森林監守人首先要注意的是防止火災。森林是這麼樣的巨大，又是稀少的居民，在乾燥的時候，一有火災發生在它停止它的破壞路徑之前

millions of dollars' worth of damage before it can be stopped on its destructive path.

When an American company decides to cut down its forests and to bring the lumber to market, the process is very interesting. It used to be done in winter, because the men worked better then and because the *melting*¹ of the snow in the spring would carry the logs down to the *sawmills*² on the rivers. Now railways are used more, and the sawmills are taken right into the forests. There the waste wood is used for fuel in the sawmills, and the good sawed lumber is shipped out ready for market. Now all this may be very efficiently done, but often there is one great waste that is not permitted by the more economical governments of France and Germany. When a forest is cut, it ought to lose only the big trees. The young trees ought not to be *injured*³. The branches that have been *trimmed*⁴ from the trees after they are cut down ought not to be left where they will easily catch fire or hinder the new growth. Where open places are left by the cutting, new trees should be planted, not just old *stumps*⁵ left to grow *brush*⁶. This kind of care results in forests which will last forever, conserve the soil and rainfall, and always be furnishing fuel and lumber and other forest products.

6. A Sad Story

One autumn a group of boys and teachers from a school in China *camped*⁷ out for several days in a certain forest upon a mountain side. The smell of the pines was sweet; the ground was like a clean *carpet*⁸; a stream of *delicious*⁹ water ran down where they had their camp *kitchen*¹⁰ and bathing places; and at night everybody slept soundly to the music of the *breeze*¹¹ in the pine trees. It was a delightful spot, although the trees were small—so small that beds, *strung*¹² between them, almost pulled some of the trees over. The campers thought, however, about the value of that young forest, and of the good camps the school would have there year after year as the trees grew

1 融化。 2 鋸木廠。 3 傷害。 4 修剪。 5 根。 6 蘆葦。 7 露營。 8 地毯。
9 清激的。 10 廚房。 11 微風。 12 吊懸。

已有價值數千萬元的損失了。

當一家美國的公司決定伐取森林，把木材運到市場的時候，其程序是頗為有興味的。這件事常在冬季做的，因為人們在那時工作起來較好，又因為春天雪消時能把木材衝到在河邊的鋸木廠。現在鐵路的應用更多，鋸木廠也可以直達樹林內了。那裏丟下來的木料是給鋸木廠裏用作燃料，好好地鋸開的木料是運到市場上去銷售。現在一切也許很有效率地做着了，但是常有一宗浪費，那是為更加經濟的法德兩國政府所不許的。當斫伐一叢樹林時，其所喪失者該只是大樹，年青的樹應該不加傷害。從他們斫下來的樹上修剪下來的細枝不應該留在地上，因為易於引起火災，或是妨礙新的生長。因為斫伐了大樹而留下的空地必要加以種植，不要把老根留着而生長着藤蔓。這樣的當心結果使樹林可以永遠存在，保守土壤和雨量，常常可以供給燃料，木材和別的森林產物。

六 一件悲慘的故事

一個秋天中國一所學校裏的一羣孩子和教師在山旁的樹林裏露營數日。松樹的香味是芬芳的；地面好像清潔的毯子；一條清潔的溪澗流下來，流到他們廚房和浴室那裏；在晚上人人睡得很熟，被微風飄着松樹的音樂裏睡熟了。這是個快樂的場所，雖然樹木還是幼小——小到那些床鋪差不多把一些樹木吊倒了，因為他們的床是吊在樹間的。這些露宿的人想到，無論如何，那些年青的樹的價值，想到如果樹木長大學校中可以年復一年到這適於露營的地點來露營。他們當心着火。他們不損

larger. They were careful about their fires. They did not injure the trees.

The next year that school camped there again. What do you think they found? Not one tree, not even the smallest, stood on that mountain side! The price of fuel having risen for some reason, the villagers could not resist the temptation to cut rather than wait; and when they cut, they cut all and failed to plant again. Thus we see that China needs much patriotic service in the matter of conservation of forests and reafforestation. Do you plant trees on *Arbor Day*? You have already learned much about China's plans for planting trees on mountains and along railways. Write to the proper officer of your province and ask him what he is doing in reafforestation this year.

7. Streams are Valuable

Although there are many ways in which streams are valuable, the value is great in every case in proportion to the *reliability*² or *constant character*³ of the stream. It should have about the same depth all the time to be perfect. It should neither go dry nor *overflow*.⁴ It should neither become too *shallow*⁵ for use nor so high as to be dangerous. The presence of forests is one of the most important factors in the preservation of good streams. However, as in the case of forests, the government and people must cooperate to protect and improve the streams. They must be properly diked. They must be kept deep and clear of *obstructions*⁶. They must be kept free from *poisons*⁷ that would destroy the fish, and free from anything that would *interfere*⁸ with *traffic*⁹. They must be properly guarded and marked for *navigation*.¹⁰ *Dams*¹¹ and *locks*¹² may be needed. Power sites must be properly *disposed of*.¹³ All this, again, demands true patriotic service. How can such things be accomplished if the government and people do not cooperate to these *ends*¹⁴? What will make them cooperate but a strong and

1 植樹節。 2 可靠性。 3 不變性 (冬不冰凍夏不氾濫)。 4 氾濫。 5 淺的。
6 妨礙物。 7 毒藥。 8 妨礙。 9 交通。 10 航行。 11 壩。 12 閘。 13 處
置。 14 目的。

害這些樹木。

下一年這所學校再在那裏露營。你以為他們看到了什麼？山旁已沒有一株樹，甚至最小的也沒有了！燃料的價格因為幾種理由而漲起來了，村民不能拒絕這個引誘，以為與其守候不如斫下來罷；當他們斫伐時，把全部都斫下，又不再種植新樹。所以我們見到中國需要許多愛國者服務於保守森林和重造森林的事務裏。在植樹節你種樹麼？你已曾學得許多在中國的山上，和鐵路旁邊種樹的計劃。寫信給你本省的該管官員問他今年關於森林重造正在做些什麼。

七 河流是有價值的

雖然河流在許多地方都有價值，而價值之大小却依河流的可靠性和不變性為比例。它必須在無論何時有差不多相同的深度。它既不可乾竭，也不可氾濫。它既不可太淺也不可太高，太淺不能使用，太高有危險。森林的存在，為保存優良河流的最重要因素之一。無論如何，政府和人民必需合作，以保護和改良河流，好像森林的情形一樣。它們必須要有合式的堤岸。它們必定要保持相當的深度和清除妨礙物。它們必定要清除毒素，因為會毒死魚類的，還要清除任何足以妨礙交通的東西。它們必須適當地保護和標明航行的標記。壩和閘也許需要的。水力的位置必須有適當的處置。一切之外還需要真實的愛國的工作。如果政府和人民不能合作到底怎麼能夠把這樣東西完呢？怎樣才能使他們合作呢？除了為贊助這樣的國家公共工程

*intelligent sentiment*¹ in favor of² such national public work? Each one of us can help develop this patriotic sentiment and can become more intelligent upon these important matters.

8. Keeping Rivers within Dikes

The diking of the streams is a kind of work that has been done in China for ages. There are good modern ways of diking which make permanent banks that neither give way in flood times nor are washed down gradually by the waves from *launches*³ or steamers. Dikes should be safeguarded by tree-planting and by secondary dikes behind. In all this work, which everybody agrees is for the good of all, the difficulty is merely in getting coöperation in work or *finance*⁴ and in getting *competent*⁵ official direction. The *determination*⁶ upon the part of leaders to continue to *insist*⁷ upon such work until it is done will in time bring it all about. Two cautions, however, are necessary. Coöperation in finance or work and efficient management must be upon a scale large enough to prevent the cost from falling upon one community while the benefit goes to another; and such work must be according to a large plan worked out by scientific men after surveys of whole river *basins*⁸. That is why the government of China has established the *National Conservancy and Irrigation Bureau*,⁹ which coöperates with and *assists*¹⁰ local and provincial organization. If you wish to learn of some of the wonderful plans and *operations*¹¹ of such organizations, read the *report*¹² of the Shanghai Conservancy Board, of the American Red Cross in China, the Kwangtung Conservancy Board, and of Sun Yat-Sen in his book on the development of rivers and harbors in China. If there is such a report for your own region, get it, study it, and discuss it, if possible, in the classroom. Closely connected with all this is our next subject.

1 有才智的感情。 2 贊助。 3 航船。 4 財政。 5 勝任的。 6 決心。 7 堅持。
8 流域。 9 全國水利局。 10 幫助。 11 效果。 12 報告。

而起的強固與有才智的感情以外？我們每個人能夠幫助發展這種愛國情緒，還能夠使這些重要事件成為更其聰明。

八 河流要在堤岸裏面

河流築堤是一種中國好幾代來已曾做過的工程。新的築堤方法能使堤岸堅固永久既不被洪水時候所衝倒，又不被航船和輪船沖起的波浪慢慢地沖倒。堤岸要以植樹來作安全的防衛，後面還要築一條內堤。一切工程爲了大衆的利益當然人人同意，其困難只在獲得工作與財政的合作，並要得到能勝任的官方指導。領袖方面須要有決心，對於這種工程繼續堅持，直到它全部完成爲止。有兩件事需要謹慎。文和工程的合作和有效率的管理必定要有宏大的規模，庶足以避免成本所出歸於一個團體而利益却歸於另一團體，這種工程必需先行測量整個流域由受過科學訓練的人依據大計劃去實行。那就是中國設立全國水利局與地方或省立各組織合作，或是幫助它們。如果你願意研究一點這種組織的可驚的計劃和效果，就請讀上海滬浦局，美國駐華紅十字會，和廣東疏濬局的報告，再讀孫逸仙博士所著書中的中國河道及港口的發展計劃。如果你的本鄉也有這樣的報告，把它帶到課堂中來，研究它和加以討論，如果能的話。和一切所說有密切關係的就是下面一課。

9. Transportation by Streams

The diking of a river helps transportation by keeping the *channel*¹ in the same place and keeping it deep. There are other important tasks in connection with keeping the streams open and safe for navigation. Maps must be made and frequently corrected, for the channels often change. *Pilots*² must be examined, in order that boats can be required to carry good pilots for the protection of passengers. Boats also must be *licensed*³, so that only safe ones may be permitted to use the streams. Marks by day and lights by night must always be maintained wherever it is necessary to show the channels. Landing places must be provided and cared for. Obstructions must be removed. *Pirates*⁴ must be *suppressed*.⁵

To preserve a good stream is equal to building a good railroad.

10. Streams give Food and Drink

A *paper-mill*⁶ company proposed to build a mill upon the bank of a small river. The people there knew that the mill wanted trees to make paper of and a stream into which to *pour*⁷ the waste from the mill. Knowing that this meant the loss of the forest and the *spoiling*⁸ of the river, they declined the *proffered*⁹ mill. A town not far away was more "*businesslike*."¹⁰ The people there said that this was a good opportunity for development. They *invited*¹¹ the paper-mill company to *locate*¹² there. At that place were forests and the *headwaters*¹³ of a beautiful and famous river. The mill was built. The trees were cut. The *poisonous wastes*¹⁴ from the mill were poured into the clear waters of that stream until the fish died and the river all across the state became black and *foul*.¹⁵

A river is a thing of beauty, a place of pleasure, a health resort, a water supply, and a source of food. For all these purposes it should be kept as clean as possible. Every ordinary stream is a home for fish, but without any protection some kinds of fish are easily destroyed.

1 河牀。 2 舵工。 3 領執照。 4 海盜。 5 掃滅。 6 造紙廠。 7 傾倒。 8 損害。 9 提議的。 10 歡喜營業的。 11 招致。 12 設廠。 13 水源。 14 有毒廢物。 15 污穢。

九 河流的運輸

河旁築堤有助於運輸，因為可以保持河床不致遷移，和保持其深度。還有其他重要的聯帶工程，關於保持河流的開放與安全，以供航行。必定要製河道圖，並且常常加以校正，因為河床常常要變遷的。舵工必須加以考試，當然船隻必須要有良好的舵工以保乘客的安全。船隻也必要領執照，如此則只有安全的船隻才准許使用這河道了。日間立標記，晚上放燈光，在必須表示這河道的地方要常常維持的。必要預備好登陸的地方和加以照料。障礙物必要清除。海盜必要掃滅。

保存一條良好的河流就等於建築一條良好的鐵道。

十 河流供給食物和飲料

一家造紙公司計劃在一條小河的岸上建築一所製造廠。那裏的人民都知道造紙廠需要木料來造紙，和需要一條河流以傾倒廠裏的廢物。知道那就是樹林的喪失和河流的損害，他們就拒絕了工廠的請求。離開不遠，一個歡喜營業的鎮市，那兒的人民說道這是發展的好機會。他們就招致這家造紙公司在那裏設廠。在那個地方有許多樹林和美麗著名的河道的水源。工廠造起來了。樹木也斫掉了。廠中有毒廢物都倒在那條清瑩的河水裏，魚都死掉了，經過那個區域的一段河流也成為黯黑而污穢。

河流是一件美麗的東西，愉快的場所，健康的地點，水源的供給，和食品的來源。爲了一切的這些目的應該盡力使它保持清潔。每條通常的河流就是魚類的家鄉，如果沒有一點保護，有幾種魚是易於燬滅的。有些西洋國家有嚴格的法律，只

In some Western countries there are *strict*¹ laws which permit the catching of certain fish only at certain times, and even then they must not be under size and may be caught only in limited numbers.

11. Water-Power Sites

If a stream is too rapid and perhaps too shallow for navigation, it may be just the place for a dam. A dam, by raising the level of the water above, may make navigation good where there was no navigation before, while the addition of locks would permit boats to go from one level to the other either way. The dam would also provide the source of power. A high waterfall provides power without a dam. The amount of water and the *height*² of the fall determine the amount of power.

Water power used to mean only a *mill*³ for *grinding*⁴ grain or a method of pumping water up to high levels. Water power now usually means electricity. Electricity means light, heat, and power carried in any direction and for long distances. If a railway passes near a good water-power site, through the development of electricity it may light, heat, and actually run its trains for hundreds of miles as many months in the year as the stream runs, and do this *forever*⁵.

Once a rapid or fall is fully taken up by a power *plant*,⁶ that source of power is no longer available. The rapid does not run; the fall no longer falls. Therefore the question must always be faced whether that power site should be used in that way. It belongs to the public.

Does the public want it used in that way? Does the public wish it thus to pass out of its hands? If the power plant is a *public utility*⁷ and remains under the control of the public, it is certainly a wise and good thing to develop the power site, for as long as it remains undeveloped all that value in power is running to waste. Of course, the waterfall is sometimes so beautiful that the people enjoy it more than they would enjoy what it

1 嚴格的。 2 高度。 3 磨子。 4 磨。 5 永遠地。 6 設備。 7 公用事業。

准某種魚類在某個時期內可以捕捉，甚至不能捕捉在小於規定形體的魚，也許捕捉的數目也有限止。

十一 水力的地位

如果一條河流對於航行流得太快或太慢，這就得恰在此地建築壩堰。一個壩可以提高水位，也許可使以前不能航行的河流通利，水閘的增加也使船隻有任意由此水面到那水面的可能了。壩堰也可供給水力。一個高高的瀑布不用壩就可供給水力。水量和沖落的高度決定水力的大小。

水力的意義從前只是一個碾米穀的磨子，或是一個吸水到高處的方法。現在水力的意義却常是電力。電力就是，光，熱，和達到任何方向與能行長路的力量。如果一條鐵道通過良好的水力所在地，經過電力的發展就可生出光熱，無疑地可使車輛行到幾百哩之遠，年年月月只要河道在流，就能永久如此。

急流和瀑布一經為水力設備所完全取用，那末水力的來源就不復能再加利用了。急流不再奔馳。瀑布不再沖下。所以其問題常在於這個水力所在地要不要作那個用途。因為它是屬於公衆的。

公衆要不要作那個用途。公衆願意它這樣地從手中失去麼？如果這種水力設備是種公用事業，其管理權也歸於公衆，這當然是一種聰明和良好的辦法，可以發展水力所在地，因為在攔着不去發展的時期內就是把水力的一切價值白白流過了。當然，瀑布有時是這樣的美麗，人民歡喜它甚於歡喜發展之後所

would produce if developed. In that case it ought to be preserved.

Here again public-spirited people are needed. Patriotic boys and girls must keep these things in mind and grow up to be the public-spirited men and women who will conserve and develop the resources of their country.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Make a list of China's great resources that should be conserved.
2. Discuss the question of the conservation of mineral resources.
3. How can the government and the people cooperate to preserve the forests?
4. Read about the national parks in America and report to the class.
5. Explain why the government of China has established the National Conservancy and Irrigation Bureau. Tell what you know about this bureau.
6. Describe a beautiful river of China. Why should rivers be kept as clean as possible?
7. Locate several water-power sites. Discuss whether any one of these should be taken up by a power plant.

產的東西。因此之故應該加以保存。

這裏也需要有公益心的人民。愛國的男女孩子定要把這些話記在腦子裏，長成作一個有公益心的男子和女子，保守和發展本國的富源。

問 題 與 練 習

1. 製一張中國大富源表，那些富源是應該保存的。
2. 討論保守礦產富源的問題。
3. 怎樣才能使政府與人民合作保存森林？
4. 讀關於美國國家公園的大概情形，並向課堂報告。
5. 解釋中國政府建立全國水利局的理由。陳述你所知的關於該局的情形。
6. 描寫一條中國美麗的河流。為何河流要盡力保持清潔？
7. 指出幾處水力所在地。討論其中那一處該取為水力設備之用。

CHAPTER IX

TIME AND LABOR

1. Saving¹ Time

The old saying "Time is money" contains a great deal of truth. To save time often means to save money or to make money, to save or to get wealth or success of some kind. History is full of stories of how the difference of a few minutes resulted in some great victory. If the Germans had been only a little later at the battle of Waterloo in 1815, the French might have won, and the whole history of Europe might have been different. We have already shown how one great invention that was for the world's good could not come until some other had preceded it. Time lost in developing one kept the world from benefiting by another, and so on. Thus, we see that many events of importance depend upon certain times as well as upon certain things.

Time is a highly important factor in many forms of business efficiency. All interest and other returns upon money lent or invested or held back in any way are calculated upon a time *basis*². For every minute you hold my money you should pay me interest, because in that time you have the use of it and may get returns from it, while I am prevented from doing so. Not to pay me interest is the same as stealing from me. The same principle holds in all loss of time, for some money or other wealth is always waiting, and so losing its interest and other returns.

A woman *engaged*³ a motor car at six dollars an hour; that is, at ten cents a minute. She lost ten minutes' time talking to a friend on the street; she lost five minutes more by giving the *chauffeur*⁴ the wrong *address*⁵; she waited five minutes at a shop for twenty cents' change;

1 節省. 2 根據. 3 租. 4 汽車夫. 5 地址.

第九章 時間和勞力

一 節省時間

古話說『時間就是金錢』含有極大的真理。節省時間的意義常是節省金錢，賺進金錢，節省或是獲得財產，一些事業的成功。歷史上充滿着好幾次的大勝仗，只爭幾秒鐘，其結果就大為不同的故事。在滑鐵盧大戰中如果德國人遲到一點，法國人就會打勝了，而歐洲的整個歷史亦將大為不同。我們已曾說明過，怎樣一個有益於世界福利的大發明，如果沒有人為之先導是不會成功的。發展一件東西的時間喪失使世界上少得到別一件東西的利益。所以我們見到許多重要的事件全仗一定的時間和一定的事物。

在商業效率的各種方式上時間是其中一個極為重要的因素。一切金錢出借，投資，各種方式的利息和收入都是以時間根據來計算的。你借我的錢每一秒鐘都得付我利息，因為在此時間內你已應用了它，也許由於它而得到利益，而我却不能照樣去做了。不付我利息和偷我的錢一樣。一切時間喪失也可下同樣的定義，因為有些金錢或別種財富正在等待使用，這樣一來就喪失了它的利息和別的收入了。

一個婦人租一輛汽車，每小時六元；那就是每分鐘一毛。她和一個朋友在街上談話喪失了十分鐘的時間；她對車夫說錯了地址喪失了五分鐘；她在一家店裏調換兩毛錢又等了五分鐘

and a *procession*¹ on the street held her up five minutes. Altogether she lost *considerable*² time, and much actual money. In that case time was clearly the same as money.

A man bought a motor car, for which he paid \$3000. He sold some *shares*³ of railway *stock*⁴ in order to get the money to buy it. His shares were paying him at the rate of 6 per cent. Immediately after buying the car he had to go away for six months. He put his car in his *garage*,⁵ where it remained until he returned. How much did that idle car cost him? Interest on his money for six months (\$90) besides the rent of space in his garage and the insurance on the car.

If a man is taking fruit to market, a *delay*⁶ on the road may cost him part or all of the value of his fruit in one or more of three ways: he may reach the market after prices have fallen; his fruit may spoil before he reaches the market; he may miss a train or steamship connection and never reach the market at all. If a ship full of silk for a market in Europe leaves Shanghai three days late, or loses three days on account of bad *seamanship*,⁷ or is *obliged*⁸ to run its engines so slowly as to arrive three days later than it should, that ship has held the value of the silk tied up for three days, which may mean, in interest on money, a very large sum. The interest on such a cargo, worth, say, \$1,000,000, at 6 per cent is about \$165 a day.

The values of many things depend upon the times they are available. Ice is valuable in the summer; *furs*,⁹ in the winter; medicine, when you are ill; a *ticket*,¹⁰ when you wish to travel. Delays may keep things out of season and destroy their value. A merchant once said, "I sell a *straw hat*"¹¹ at twice its cost in June, at cost in July, and at half cost (a quarter of the first price) in August." Therefore he made every effort to sell out his stock as early as possible. If he carried it over to the next year, he not only lost in interest and storage and *depreciation*¹² but he also ran the risk of losing all by changes in style.

1 遊行隊。 2 可觀的。 3 部分。 4 股票。 5 汽車間。 6 遲延。 7 航海術。
8 被迫。 9 皮貨。 10 車票。 11. 草帽。 12 跌價。

；一個街上的遊行隊阻住了她五分鐘。總計她喪失了一個可觀的時間，和許多真實的金錢。這種情形，時間清楚地和金錢相等。

一個人買一輛汽車，買價三千元。他賣掉一些鐵路股票，得到了錢買汽車。他的股票付給他的利率是六厘。在買到車子以後又立即出去了六個月。他把他的車子放在汽車間裏，擱着等他回來。這一輛不用的車子他費去多少？這筆錢六個月的利息（九十元）此外還有汽車間地位的租費和汽車的保險費。

如果有人把菓子運到市場上去，路上的遲延也許就耗費了他菓子的全部或一部分的價值，其道不出三種情狀之外：也許他在價格跌落之後才到達市場；也許他的菓子在到達市場之前壞了；也許他趕不上火車或輪船，連市場也不能到達。如果一只滿載絲品的船為應歐洲市場的需要，離開上海時却遲了三天，或是因為航海術的不精而誤了三天，或是不得已而使船隻緩緩開行，於是比理應到達之期遲了三天，這隻船就把絲價擱起了三天，這就金錢利息而言也許就是一筆很大的款子。照這種貨物的利息，譬如說價值一百萬元，六厘息，就要一百六十五元一天了。

許多東西的價值都靠着利用時機。冰是在夏天有價值的；皮貨却在冬天有價值；你生病時，就要醫藥；你高興旅行時就要車船票。遲延也許使東西不合時宜，因而損害其價值。一個商人有一次說，『我出售一頂草帽，在六月裏的售價是成本的兩倍，五月裏照本賣，八月裏照成本減半（就是第一個價格的四份之一）』。所以他盡力使他的存貨早日脫銷。如果這些貨物存到下一年，他不但喪失了利息，棧費，和跌價的損失，並且冒着因改變式樣而全部損失的危險。

2. The Importance of the Time Element

Time is an important element also in all kinds of scientific and industrial work. The ship's captain locates his position on the sea by the sun (or stars), whose position he knows because he knows the exact time. He carries very accurate *timepieces*¹ for this purpose. The *conductor*² of a train carries a good watch in order that he may follow his *schedule*³ exactly. If his train arrives late, his passengers may suffer both *inconvenience*⁴ and some of the many losses which arise from delays. If his train leaves late, it may cause delays to many other trains whose schedules are connected with his own. If he leaves or arrives early, he may not only cause inconvenience and loss to passengers and others but he may even *endanger*⁵ lives by running on a track at the time it has been *reserved*⁶ for another train.

The exact length of time that the steel is melting in the *furnace*⁷ is very important. So it is with the *soap*⁸ in the factory, the *sugar*⁹ in the *refinery*,¹⁰ the porcelain in the *kiln*,¹¹ the food in the cannery, the wood in the furniture shop, the *brine*¹² in the *salt flats*,¹³ as also the seed in the soil and the chicken in the egg. A few years ago there was suddenly a great demand for *bricks*¹⁴ in Canton. To meet this demand the kilns were opened three or four days sooner than usual. The bricks were not properly *baked*¹⁵. The result was that the quality of the bricks was far below the good standard of bricks previously used. Houses built of these bricks were unsafe. It all came from neglecting the time element in brick-burning.

*Reinforced concrete*¹⁶ is a modern type of construction. A *beam*¹⁷ with an inside *framework*¹⁸ of *steel rods*¹⁹ properly placed is made of a mixture of cement, sharp sand, and broken stone in about the proportion of one to three to five. After this has "set," it is like a solid piece of stone. Then the supports may be taken away and the beam or floor put to use. Now, great difficulty was experienced at first in this and other uses of cement, because the

1 鐘錶。 2 司機。 3 時間表。 4 不舒服。 5 危及。 6 留備。 7 鑄鐵爐。
8 肥皂。 9 糖。 10 精煉所。 11 窯。 12 鹽水。 13 鹽田。 14 磚。 15 燒
煉。 16 鋼骨水泥。 17 棟樑。 18 骨架。 19 鋼柱。

二 時間要素的重要

時間在種種的科學和工業工作裏也是重要的因素。船長看着太陽（或是星光）而尋出船隻在海中的所在地，太陽和星光的位置他是知道的，因為他曉得準確的時間。爲了這個緣故他帶着極準確的鐘錶。火車的司機帶着優良的錶，使他能夠準確地跟着他的時間表辦事。如果他的車輛到得慢了，旅客們在不舒服和因遲到而引起的許多損失兩件事上都受到損失。如果他的車輛遲開，可以引起許多別的車子的遲延，因為它們的時間表和他的時間表相聯繫的。如果他開出和到達都太早，他非但使旅客感到不舒服和受損失，並且他的車子因為在其時留作別的車子之用的軌道上行駛，甚至會危及生命呢。

溶鐵爐裏鍊鋼，時間之準確極爲重要。廠裏製肥皂，煉糖廠的煉糖，窯裏的燒磁，罐頭公司的食品，木器公司的木料，鹽田裏的鹽水，還有泥中的種籽，蛋裏的小雞都是一樣的。幾年以前廣東突然大大的需要磚瓦爲應付這個需要，磚窯就比平時提早三四天出貨。磚塊沒有合式地燒煉。結果是磚塊的品質遠在以前所用磚塊的優良標準之下。用這些磚塊來造屋子是不安全的。其故全在於忽視燒磚的時間因素。

鋼骨水泥是一種新式建築原料。一架內部骨架用鋼柱合式地裝置着的棟樑該是以水泥，細沙，和碎石照一，三，五，的比例互相混合的混合物造成的。在這些東西凝結之後，正像一塊堅固的石頭。於是把支持物拿開，而樑或地板就可使用了。現在，最大的困難是往往在初次使用水泥時，因為工人們慣於使

workmen were accustomed to dealing with *lime*¹, the setting of which is entirely different from that of cement. Lime, to harden into stone, takes *carbon dioxide*² from the air to make its *crystals*³. It therefore requires a long time to set, and may be handled slowly without doing it any harm. Cement, on the other hand, hardens by taking up water. It does not need air. It will set in the bottom of a river. As soon as you add water to it, it begins to form its crystals. If you handle it for any length of time afterward, you spoil it. The sooner you leave it, the better it sets. This shows how workmen who do not regard the time element may be inefficient and even dangerous.

3. Be Prompt

A certain official once said: "I never plan to attend a meeting on time. I always arrive late. I let the others do the early work and then wait in expectation for my arrival." He did not realize that he was stealing the time of other people, *hindering*⁴ the progress of scheduled work, *shirking*⁵ his duty, losing opportunities, and setting an example that did great harm wherever it was observed. He failed in his work and lost his position. The people should never elect an official who *disregards*⁶ courtesy, justice, and *punctuality*.

The history of commerce is full of examples of success coming from promptness, and of failure arising from *tardiness*⁸. Modern men often *transact*⁹ a dozen important pieces of business in one morning. If you have an *appointment*¹⁰ at eleven o'clock, appear at the place of appointment exactly at eleven. To be late places you at a disadvantage and may cause people to give far less attention to your business. It is safer to allow yourself a little *margin*¹¹ of time and provide a way to use that margin if you have to wait.

The modern railway and steamship schedules are compelling people to be on time. They even make people so *nervous*¹² about being left that passengers are often at

1 石灰。 2 二氧化碳。 3 結晶。 4 妨礙。 5 規避。 6 不注意。 7 嚴守時刻。
8 遲延。 9 辦理。 10 約會。 11 餘裕。 12 神經過敏的。

用石灰，石灰的凝結是完全和水泥不同的。石灰，要他硬化成爲石頭必須在空氣中吸收二養化炭使其結晶。所以它必須長時期才能凝結並且可以慢慢地拿起來，不使它受一點損傷。在別一方面，水泥的凝結，却是用水。它不需要空氣。它可以在河底下凝結。一等你加進了水，它就開始形成結晶體了。如果你結晶以後把它拿起一會兒，你就把它弄壞了。你離開它愈早，它的凝結也愈佳。這件事說明怎樣工人們不注意時間因素也許會沒有效率甚至受到危險。

三 要敏捷

某官員曾說過：『我從不打算準時赴會。我總是到得遲。我讓別人把起先的事情做了，等待着盼望我的到會。』他沒有明白他偷竊了別人的時間，妨礙工作程序表的進行，規避他的責任，喪失機會，並且養成遇事即作大害的榜樣。他的工作是失敗了，並且喪失了他的地位。人民決不可選舉一個不注意禮貌，公正和不守時刻的人作官吏。

商業歷史上充滿着因敏捷而得到成功，和因遲延而失敗的例子。現代人常在一個早晨做一打的要事。如果你在十一句鐘有一個約會，就得在十一點正在約會的地方看見你。遲到置你於不利的地位，並且也許使人民對於你的業務大爲漠視。妥當一點是讓你自己有一點準備時間，如果要你等待須預備一個利用這個準備時間的方法。

現代鐵道和輪船的時間表強迫人民遵守時間。甚至使神經過敏的人民，因爲恐怕誤了行程，常在火車開出之前數點鐘就到

the station hours before the train leaves. Promptness should not cause people to waste time. That is going from one extreme to the other.

Schools also are helping to form habits of promptness. Modern schools, like modern business and modern transportation, are running on exact schedules. The students who cooperate to maintain the schedules are both public-spirited and patriotic, for they are making the life of the community easier and building up an important national *virtue*¹.

4. China is "Speeding Up"

A *witty man*², who was well known in China some years ago, called China "the *Drag-on*⁴ Nation." He meant that China was dragging on, doing things in a slow way. China has now begun to "speed up," as the whole world so well knows.

A foreigner, deeply interested in the progress of China, once asked a Chinese, "Why do you not move faster?" The Chinese replied, "We have not started yet, but when we start we shall move too fast to suit you."

Many think now that China is going too fast. They say she changes so rapidly that she cannot change wisely. They fear that in the changes she will lose the good things of the past. They complain that changing too fast is sure to mean going too far—going so far that she cannot return and make good her losses. China must guard against this. Such speed would not be efficiency. Progress must be safe, though it may seem slow *at times*⁵.

There are, however, many ways in which China is now saving time. Official orders are telegraphed where they used to be sent by messengers. Soldiers are sent by train where they used to go on foot. China's relations with foreign countries are carried on by *cable*⁶ instead of in the slow ways of earlier days. News is received at big centers and sent out in newspapers. We know today what

1 道德。 2 趕上去。 3 諷刺家。 4 龍之英文字爲 dragon, 與遲滯前進的 drag on 爲諧音。 5 有時。 6 海底電線。

了站上。敏捷不是教人浪費時間。那是從一個極端又到了另一極端。

學校也幫助形成敏捷的習慣。現代學校，像現代商業和現代運輸般，也依照準確的時間表而運行的。學生和學校合作維持這張時間表是既有公益精神又是愛國，因為他們使社會生活更爲舒適，並且建立了一種重要的民族道德。

四 中國正在趕上去

幾年以前一個著名的中國諷刺家，稱中國爲龍國，他的意思是中國正在一步拖一步地上去，做些什麼事總是很遲緩的。但是現在中國開始趕上去了，全世界都知道的。

一個外國人對於中國的進步極感興趣，有一次詢問一個中國人，『爲什麼你們不快一點行動呢？』這個中國人回答『現在我們還沒有開頭呢，但等到一開了頭我們就要行動得比你合意的速度還要快。』

許多人以爲現在中國跑得太快了。他們說她變換得那末快，可是不能聰明地變換。他們怕她在這變換的時期內失掉了她過去的好東西。他們控訴變換得太快確就是跑得太快——跑到那末快是不能回來和補好她的損失的。中國對於這件事必須避免。這種樣子的快決不會有效率的。進步必須要安全，雖然有時看來遲緩。

無論如何，中國現在有許多節省時間的方法。官家命令是發電了，在以前是派人專送的。運兵用火車了，以前是用兩隻腳跑的。中國和外國的關係是用海底電線傳達以代替早期的遲緩方法。新聞由中心區接受，再傳送到各報紙。我們今天知道世

happened yesterday in many parts of the country and of the world. People and goods go from place to place at twenty or thirty or forty miles an hour where they used to travel at three or four miles an hour.

5. The Hurry¹ Call

In this matter of speed China is merely taking her place in the modern world. There is a call to her to hurry in order to keep pace with the world, and she is *responding*² to that call. An American, who wrote a book about how China is changing, said one evening to a group of Chinese students: "You must now master the learning of the West; but you must remember that in the thirty years that you will take to learn it all, the West will not be standing still. The West is still moving forward and at an increasing speed. You must HURRY to catch up."³

Every boy or girl who learns how to do things efficiently, who forms habits of promptness, who works rapidly as well as carefully, and who does not waste time is helping China to speed up. Perhaps your teacher, through politeness, does not tell you to hurry when you are wasting time. Ask your teacher to help you to value time more *fully*⁴. Study your *daily life*⁵ to see if any of your time is wasted in idleness. What do you do at *recess time*⁶? Do you use all your recreation time in real *outdoor exercise*⁷? Do you use your other free time in good reading? How much time do you spend in useless talk or aimless *loafing*⁸ about? Be careful, also, of the time of others. If you go to see anyone, do not waste his time. Have your business clearly in mind and finish it promptly. Then if your *host*⁹ wishes to talk longer and *entertain*⁹ you, you may remain. If he does not, you should leave at once. If you take his time, be sure you are free to do so. A busy man usually wants you to transact business and leave. Never idle in anyone's office.

1 催促。 2 回答。 3 充分地。 4 日常生活。 5 休息時間。 6 戶外運動。 7 滿意。 8 主人。 9 款待。

界和國內各地昨天發生了什麼意外事。人民與貨物由此地到彼地一點鐘可行二十哩，或三十哩或四十哩，而以前旅行一點鐘只能行三四哩。

五 急促的呼聲

關於速度中國僅能在現代世界上占得她的位置。那裏有種呼聲叫她急促地與世界保持齊整的步伐，並且她對於這個呼聲也有回答了。一個美國人著一本講中國怎樣變換的書，一天晚上他對一羣中國學生說：『你現在必須專心研究西洋的東西，但是你們必得記牢，在三十年中你們就能一切都學到了，西洋却不是靜靜地站着的。西洋仍是向前進行，並且正在增加其速度，你們必得急促地追上去。』

每個男孩和女孩知道怎樣作事才有效率，形成了敏捷的習慣，工作迅速而細心，不浪費時間，就是幫助中國趕上前去。也許你的教師，因為禮貌，在你浪費時間時不教你趕快追上去。請你的教師幫助你更充分重視光陰。研究你的日常生活，看你的時間有無因懶惰而浪費掉的？在休息的時候你做些什麼事呢？你把你的遊戲時間全用於真正的戶外運動麼？你把你別的空閒時間用於讀有益的書麼？你所費於無用的談話和無目的游蕩的時間有多少？還要當心別人的時間。如果你去看一個人，不要浪費他的時間。你的事業清楚地記在你的心中與敏捷地作成它麼？那末如果你的主人願意和你多談一會和願意款待你，你可以留着。如果，他不願意，你必得立刻離開。如果你佔了他的時間，你要確信你有佔他時間的自由麼？一個勞碌的人要你做了事情就離開。決不可賴在人家的辦公室裏。

The principal of a school said recently: "I like to *deal with*¹ that boy Wu. He comes to me, for example, to get permission to go to the city. I decide that I cannot let him go. He accepts my *decision*² cheerfully and goes out to play. He does not hang around my desk for an unpleasant hour or so, as some boys do. He has regard for my time and pleasure. He is a good citizen."

A school is a good place to learn good citizenship. Regard for the time and *convenience*³ of others makes one public-spirited.

6. Labor-saving Devices

Saving labor is closely connected with saving time. When a man uses a *cart*⁴ instead of a *carrying-pole*,⁵ you may say he is saving time or saving labor. He is saving both of these, together with food, clothes, money, etc.

Strange to say, however, there are some *queer*⁶ ideas about saving time and labor. One man has the idea that he does well to save himself labor, but not necessarily to save himself time. He will try to *avoid*⁷ work, but will quite willingly sit down and spend a great deal of time for nothing. Such people are foolish and of no benefit to the nation.

Another person works faithfully but in a time-wasting and labor-wasting way, and yet does not want to see labor-saving devices introduced into the country. He says that if a machine using only one man does the work of five men, it is clear that four men have lost their *jobs*⁸. Is he right? Do labor-saving machines and methods improve the condition of the working people or make it worse?

One of the greatest labor-savers ever invented in the West was Cyrus McCormick's *reaper*⁹. It made bread cheaper. Was that good for the laborer? It raised the grade of *harvester*¹⁰ from that of a *knife-swinging*¹¹ to that of a mechanic and paid him much higher wages. Was that an advantage to farm labor or not?

1 來往。 2 決定。 3 安適。 4 車子。 5 扁担。 6 奇怪的。 7 避免。 8 職業。 9 收穫機。 10 收穫人。 11 鐮刀。

最近一所學校的校長說道：『我喜歡和那個姓吳的孩子來往。例如，他跑到我這兒來，要得到赴市的許可。我決定不能讓他去。他愉快地接受了我的決定，出去遊戲了。他不像別個孩子般不快活地賴在我的書桌邊至於一句鐘之久。他注意我的時間和快樂。他是個好公民。』

一所學校是學習好公民資格的良好處所。注意別人的時間和安適能使一個人有公益心。

六 省工計劃

節省工力與節省時間有密切的關係。當一個人用車子來代替一根扁擔時，你可以說他是節省時間或節省工力。他節省了這兩樣，還節省了食物，衣服，金錢等等。

說也奇怪，關於省時省工還有一些奇怪的觀念。有人思想他要好好地節省他自己的工力，却不需要節省他自己的時間。他嘗試去避免工作，但是很願意坐着耗費許多的時間不做什麼。這樣的人是愚蠢，並且無益於國家。

另有一種人很忠於職務，却是用着浪費時間，和浪費工力的方法，至今還不要看見省工的計劃在國內產生。他說如果一架機器只用一個人就能作五個人的工作，顯然就有四個人失業了，他對的麼？省工的機械和方法是改進工人的情狀呢，還是使他們的情狀更不好？

西方發明的最偉大的省工機器就是西拉斯·麥克柯密克的收穫機。它使麵包的價格低廉。這於工人有利麼？它提高收穫人的階級，從用鐮刀升到用機械，並且付給他較高的工資。那不是對於一個農工有利麼？

A labor-saving machine makes things cheaper for everybody and as a rule raises the grade and standard of the laborer. It also does something else. It increases *capita*¹ and employs more people. A machine that is run by one man and that does five men's work not only cheapens the product and pays that one man far more than any of the five used to receive, but it also earns more money for the employer, who thus can and usually does invest in more machines to employ more men, and so on. When the launches were first started on the rivers and canals, the junks and *houseboats*² complained that the sailors would starve for lack of work; but as a matter of fact the economy of labor, time, and money so increased business that the sailors soon had better positions, at higher wages than ever before, and more of them were employed. It was the same way with the railways and the carriers; with the *shoemakers*³ and the *tailors*⁴ when *stitching-machines*⁵ came in; and with many other *occupations*⁶ that you could name yourself. The *sawyers*⁷ have a strong *guild*⁸ and are so *convinced*⁹ that sawmills will take the food out of their mouths that few mills have as yet been started in China. What can you say to these men about labor-saving machinery and their own and their country's good?

7. China's Great Labor Supply

Some people, however, say that China has so great a supply of labor that there is no need to save it. What difference, they say, does it make if we use twice as many men to grow each *bushel*¹⁰ of wheat and to make each pair of shoes? We have plenty of men. Why should we use a machine instead of four men? The answer is that a machine does not eat that wheat and wear out those shoes. It produces more for the people and eats up less. Without machines the laborers, no matter how many there are, often consume all that they can produce. Is the country, then, better off after their labor? How can the nation develop if the laborers cannot turn out excess

1 資本。 2 有棚船。 3 鞋匠。 4 裁縫。 5 縫衣機。 6 職業。 7 鋸木工人。
8 工會。 9 深信。 10 約合我國三斗餘。

一件省工機器爲人人謀貨物之低廉，並且照例提高工人的階級和待遇標準。它還做着別的事哩。它增加資本和雇用更多的人。一架機器用一個人去轉動，做着五個人的工作不但使出器的價格低廉，和把遠超過五人中從前任用一個所受的工資付給這一個人，它還使雇主應得更多的金錢，那末他能夠並且常常的，投資於更多機械中。而雇用更多的人，於是以此類推下去。當輪船首次在河與運河裏行駛時，沙船和有棚船口出怨言說水手要因爲缺乏生意而沒有飯吃了；但是根據事實工力，時間和金錢的經濟增加了事業，因此水手們立即得到比從前較好的地位，和較高的工資，並且有許多就被雇用了。鐵路和脚夫是同樣的；縫衣機進來時對於鞋匠和裁縫也是同樣的；並且還有許多別的職業你自己能夠舉出來的也是同樣的。鋸木工人有一個很堅固的工會，他們深信鋸木廠將從他們的口裏奪食吃，所以在中國至今還只有很少的鋸木廠。關於省工機器和他們自己的和國家的利益你將對這輩人說些什麼呢？

七 中國的大宗人工供應

有些人們會說中國有這末多的人工供應，所以不需要節省它。他們說，如果我們用兩倍之多的人去養成每一蒲式耳麥子和製成每一雙鞋子會造成什麼不同呢？我們有很多很多人。我們爲什麼要用機器來代替四個人呢？這個問題的回答是一架機器不會吃那些麥和穿敝這雙鞋的。它爲人民生產得較多，却吃得較少。沒有機器這些工人，不管有多少，常常消費他一切所能生產的。那末他們的工力於國家有利麼？如果工人不能製出

products? Add machinery to labor, and by the saving made you have greatly increased the product. Thus the country becomes richer; everybody has a larger share.

Think of the amount of labor which is wasted in carrying things. Mr. R. D. Wolcott says that twenty million men, one fifth of China's *male laborers*¹, are only carrying instead of producing. In the United States, where also there are great distances to carry, only one twentieth of the male laborers are engaged in transportation.

8. Strikes² and Lockouts³

Another and quite different sort of waste of labor is found when laborers refuse to work, in order to force employers to treat them better or pay them more. This may (or may not) have good results, but while it lasts it is a waste of labor.

To refuse to work until certain things are done is called a strike. To strike means to stop work. The opposite of a strike is a lockout. In this case the employer locks the workmen out, so to speak, and refuses to let them work. Perhaps he cannot afford to pay what they demand; perhaps his factory has failed and closed down; perhaps he only wants to force them to do more or stand more or receive less. In any case there is loss of capital, of time, of *profits*⁴, of labor, and of benefit to the nation. Strikes and lockouts are becoming more and more common in China. Citizens ought to know what causes them and what harm or good they do. Even if there is no *violence*⁵ or other *lawbreaking*,⁶ there is great loss to laborers, to employers, and always to the general public also. Therefore it is the duty of laborers, employers, public officials, and ordinary citizens too, to understand these matters and to do all they can to prevent such difficulties and losses. China's national train is already a little behind time; it must not be hindered and further delayed by useless troubles. Rich and poor, high and low, all must work together to help China to advance.

1 男工。 2 罷工。 3 停業。 4 利潤。 5 暴動。 6 犯法。

量的出品國家怎能發達呢？勞工再加上機器因為節省之故使你的出品大大地增加。於是國家成為更富了；每人都分着大大的利益了。

想想浪費於挑負東西的人工有多少呢。吳爾柯脫先生說中國五分之一的男工，兩千萬人只是挑負而不能生產。在合衆國那裏也有很遠的距離要挑負的，但是只有二十分之一的男工做着運輸的工作。

八 罷工和停業

另一件種類大為不同的人工浪費就是工人拒絕工作，以此逼迫雇主改善待遇和提高工資。這也許（或不曾）有好結果，但是在停頓時却是人工的浪費。

拒絕工作，直到某種目的達到為止，是稱為罷工。罷工的意義是停止工作。罷工的反面是停業。停業就是雇主把工人關在門外，這樣說起來，就是拒絕工人工作。也許他不能支持工人所要求的工資；也許他的工廠失敗和倒閉了；也許他只是要壓迫他們做得更多，或是要加增工作時間，或是減低工資。在任何一種情形下總是資本，時間，利潤，勞力，和國家利益的損失。罷工和停業在中國愈趨愈普通了。公民該知道其原因和他們所做的有什麼好處或壞處。即使沒有什麼暴動和非法行為，對於工人，對於雇主，都有極大的損失，而對於普遍公眾也有損失的。所以這是工人，雇主，官員，以及普通公民的責任，要明瞭這些事情，並要盡力防止這種困難和損失。中國的『國家之車』已經稍為後時了，必不可為無用的紛擾所障礙和更使其遲延了。不論貧，富，高，低都要一起工作以幫助中國

The important thing is not for each to get as much as he can, but for each to act for the best progress of the whole nation.

9. Wasted People

There is another kind of waste—by idleness. Idle men and women are a terrible waste to a nation. There are idle poor people, idle rich people, and idle people who are neither rich nor poor. Why should some people work while others eat up the fruits of their labor? Some people do not *raise*¹ or make or carry or sell anything for the other people of the country. They do not educate or *amuse*² or in any other way serve the people. No matter how much money a man has, he should not be idle. He should serve his people.

A large number of students who have had higher education in China or abroad are wasting their time in Shanghai, Nanking, and other large cities. They are idle, because they cannot find easy and well-paid jobs and refuse to *take on work*³ that is a really useful service but pays a small salary. Is this patriotic, when you consider how few people have the opportunity of higher education and how much useful work needs to be accomplished in China?

Workers must often seek work. Men are wasting themselves and keeping their town or city poor if they stay where there is no work for them. In cities there is a terrible waste of people. Strong, eager men and women *come in from the country*⁴. Many of them *wander*⁵ to the *crowded section*⁶ of the cities where there is little work. They do not know that work waits for them in the country. They live in a few rooms; they have little food. Their strong bodies and their great courage are wasted in an *overcrowded*⁷ city. The towns and villages are greatly in need of them. There is work to be done if only they are enterprising enough to undertake it. There are roads to repair, bridges to build, dikes to strengthen, streets to clean, schoolhouses to put up,

1 耕種。 2 使娛樂。 3 做工作。 4 從鄉間來。 5 流浪。 6 熱鬧區域。 7 擁擠不堪的。

的前進。重要的事情是不要盡力爲個人謀所得之加多，却要每人要使整個的國家有最好的進步。

九 廢人

還有一種浪費——懶惰。懶惰的男女是國家可怕的浪費。有懶惰的窮人，懶惰的富人，和既不富又不窮的懶惰人。爲什麼有些人要工作，而別人食他們的工作之果呢？有些人不耕種，不製造，不負挑，不出售任何物件，以利國內人民。他們不教育人家，不使人家娛樂，不用任何方法爲人民服務。不管這個人有多少錢總不能懶惰。他也得爲人民服務。

有很大數目的學生，他們在中國或外國曾受過高等教育，却在上海，南京，以及別的大城市裏浪費他的時間，他們沒有事做，因爲他們不能找到容易而報酬豐厚的職業，而拒絕接受一種真是有益的服務而薪俸較小的工作。這是愛國麼？當你想道能有機會受高等教育的人怎樣地稀少，和中國需要完成的有益工作又是怎樣地多時。

工人必須時常找尋工作。如果他們所居的市鎮裏沒有他們的工作機會那就是浪費了他們自身，和使所居的市或鎮貧窮。在許多城市裏有可怕的人民的浪費。強壯，熱心的男人和女人從鄉間出來。其中有許多人在城市的熱鬧區域裏流浪，而在那裏的工作却是很少的。他們不知道鄉間有工作等着呢。他們住在很狹窄的屋子裏；吃着很少的食物。他們強壯的身體和偉大的勇氣在這擁擠不堪的城市裏浪費掉了。鄉鎮和村落却大大的需要他們。那裏有工作可做只要他們有足夠的企業精神去擔任它好了。那裏有道路要修理，有橋樑要建築，有堤岸要加堅固，有街道要清潔，有學校要成立，有樹木要種植，和許多別

trees to plant, and good work of many other kinds to do. They say that the village is too poor to raise the money, but why is it poor? Because it lacks young men and women of energy and faith to develop it and improve it and put life and courage into it. Usually the public work can be done with little or no money. Villages can be cleaned and roads can be built by village labor with village tools¹. Those who *escape*² this duty and *drift*³ into the cities, only to be idle there, are national labor wasters.

Make up your mind, while you are reading this chapter in school, that you will not be found eating up your country's wealth in idleness. Keep busy. Think what China can do in the world if her great supply of *human labor*⁴ is really put to efficient use. Remember that the happy people are the busy ones. The idler is missing the best *fun*⁵ in life; that is, really doing things.

10. Partly Wasted People

A young man who might be teaching school is partly wasted if he is *keeping accounts*⁶. A man who carries goods is partly wasted if he has the ability to manage a store. Every bit of ability that a person has should be used for the good of himself and his neighbors. If Dr. Sun Yat-Sen had not made use of his ability in politics and government but had followed the profession of medicine, for which he was prepared, he might have been only an ordinary medical doctor and China might still be a monarchy. Every ability that one has may be very valuable to him and to society if he uses it. Many a young man is keeping a shop which could be kept by many others, when he ought to be teaching a school which is waiting year after year for someone with his ability. A certain young man went to *Peiyang University*⁷ and studied *engineering*⁸; when he could not find a position in an engineering company, he accepted a position in a shop, although at that time many schools were without teachers of science and *mathematics*, both of which subjects he was *capable*¹⁰ of teaching.

1 傢伙. 2 逃避. 3 漂泊. 4 人工. 5 遊戲. 6 記帳. 7 北洋大學.
8 機械術. 9 數學. 10 有能力的.

種有益工作要做。他們說村上太窮了，籌款不容易，但是它爲什麼會窮呢？就因爲它缺乏有精力的與忠實的青年男子和女子開發它，改進它，和把生命與勇氣注入它裏面。通常公益事業能夠以很少的錢或是不用錢做成的。鄉村可用本村的勞力和本村的傢伙清潔全村和建築道路。那些逃避責任，漂泊到城市裏去的人，却在城市裏閒着，那就是國家的人工浪費。

當你在學校裏讀到這一章時，要決意不要吃了你國家的財富而不做一些事。要保持勞苦。想想看如果她的大宗人工供應真正用於有效率的用途上，中國對於世界能做什麼事業呢？記憶着，快活的人民是勞碌的。懶惰的人失了生活上最好的遊戲；那就是，真實的工作。

十 半廢的人

一個青年能夠在學校裏教書，如果他做個記賬員就是一部分的浪費。有人有經理一家店鋪的能力，却在搬運貨物，是一部分的浪費。各人所有能力的每一微點應該爲了自身與他人的利益而加以使用。如果孫逸仙博士不在政治上用他的能力，却老做着醫師職業，因爲這是他預備着的，他也許只是個通常的醫師，而中國也許仍是帝國呢。每人所有的能力應用起來也許對於自己和社會都是很有價值的。許多年青的人經營着一所店鋪，這是別的人都能經營的。其實他應該在學校裏教書，那裏正年年等待着有這樣能力的人呢。某青年在北洋大學研究機械術；當他在機廠裏找不到位置時，他接受一家店鋪裏的位置，雖然在當時有許多學校沒有科學和數學教師，這兩個科目他是有能力教的。

It is of great importance to your country as well as to yourself that you find your proper place in life and *occupy it fully*¹. One of the features of modern education is *vocational guidance*². Teachers try to help students to discover and enter the *vocations*³ in which they will be most successful and of the greatest service to their community. As you read further in this book, keep this matter in mind. What are you going to do with your *life's labor*⁴? Shall you be like one of those hundreds of middle-school *graduates*⁵ who were found by the *Vocational Association*⁶ to be living in Shanghai in idleness? They had never entered upon any vocation. Everyone must choose; must seize his opportunities; must avoid letting small opportunities pass while waiting for a big one; must do something; must make a beginning; must learn by experience, not by waiting and talking; must remember that it is the busy man who is given the higher work to do, and the idle man who is *overlooked*⁷ and forgotten or considered lacking in ability. Be up and doing!

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell a story to illustrate the saying "Time is money."
2. In what forms of business efficiency is time an important factor?
3. Look back over the last few weeks and see if you have always been prompt.
4. Many people think that China is going too fast. Why?
5. Can you think of any other ways besides those mentioned in the text in which China is now saving time? Can you suggest other means by which time could be saved?
6. Find out what you can about strikes. What causes them? What harm do they do? Do they do any good?
7. Is idleness waste? Explain.
8. Make a list of *desirable*⁸ vocations.
9. Discuss the advantages of education.

1 用全力去做它。 2 職業指導。 3 職業。 4 終身工作。 5 畢業生。 6 職業教育社。 7 忽視。 8 希望的。

你要在一生中找到適當的位置與用全力去做它，這對於你自身和國家都是極關重要的。現代教育的特點之一是職業指導。教師實行幫助學生去找尋和進入他們能夠得到最大成功的與對於社會可以盡最大義務的職業。等到你把這本書再讀下去時，把這件事記牢。你的終生工作將作些什麼呢？你將像幾百個中學畢業生般，據職業教育社的調查，住在上海空閒着麼？他們從未進入任何一個職業。人人要選擇和抓住他們的機會；必須避免爲了等待大機會而讓小機會溜過；必定要做些事情；必定要從頭做起；必定要在經驗裏學習；不要等待與空話；必須記牢做較高工作的人必是勞碌的人。懶惰的人被人忽視遺忘，或以爲缺乏能力。起來工作罷！

問題與練習

1. 陳述一件故事，說明『時間就是金錢』的話。
2. 什麼一種商業效率時間爲一種重要的因素？
3. 檢討最近數星期你作事常能敏捷麼？
4. 許多人以爲中國跑得太快了。何故？
5. 除了本書所舉之外，你能想出在中國的任何一種別的節省時間的方法麼？你能夠提議別的可使時間節省的方法麼？
6. 盡量舉出關於罷工的事。他們爲什麼要罷工？他們所做的事有何損害？他們所做的事有利益麼？
7. 懶惰是不是浪費？加以解釋。
8. 製一張表，列舉你所希望的職業。
9. 討論教育的利益。

CHAPTER X

THRIFT,¹ INVESTMENT, AND SECURITY²

1. Idle Money is Wasted

Idleness means waste. Unused money is wasted. To keep coins in an old box, to have *bureaus*³ full of clothes that are not needed, to let good land lie idle, to have equipment that does no useful work—this is to be wasteful. If a farmer who has a hundred acres of land that would *yield*⁴ good *crops*⁵ does not cultivate his land, he is wasting it. He should either use the land or sell it to someone who would use it. So also money laid away is wasted.

Money ought always to be kept at work. We can and should make money our servant. Day or night it should never be idle. Did you know that the wealthiest men, those whose fortunes are counted in millions, have not an idle penny? Except for what it necessary to pay their living expenses, all their millions are scattered over the country, working as only money can. The harder money works, the faster it grows.

A rich man's small son one day wanted a small motion-picture machine for family use. The father refused, saying that he did not have the money. "I thought you had over \$100,000; and a small motion-picture machine would cost only a few hundred dollars," the boy insisted. The father said that *sensible*⁶ men never *hoarded*⁷ their money, but kept it hard at work. He explained that he had invested his money in the following ways:

\$10,000 was working on a railroad in Kwangtung, and brought him \$600 a year.

1 節儉. 2 安全. 3 衣櫃. 4 生產. 5 農作物. 6 有識見的. 7 儲存.

第十章 節儉，投資，和安全

一 金錢不用就是浪費

懶惰的意義是浪費。不用的金錢是浪費。把錢放在一只陳舊的箱子裏，衣櫃裏充滿着不需要的衣服，讓良好的土地擱着不用，有設備而不去做有用的工作——這是浪費。如果一個農夫有一百畝的土地，可以收成得很好，但是不去耕種，他就是浪費了這塊地。他該應用這塊地；或是把它賣給一個能應用它的人。同樣的，把錢擱着是浪費。

金錢應該常常在工作着。我們能夠而且必得使金錢做我們的僕人。不論日間和夜間應該永無不用之時。你知道那些最有錢的人，他們的財產以百萬計，有一個錢空擱着的麼？除掉他們生活上必需的費用以外，所有百萬的財富都分散在全國，盡一個錢的能力工作着。金錢的用途愈多，其增加也愈快。

一個富翁的小兒子要一架供家庭用的小型電影機。父親拒絕他的要求，說他沒有這一筆錢，這個孩子堅持地說：『我想你的財產已在十萬以上；而一架小電影機只要你費去幾百塊錢就好了。』這個父親說有識見的人決不把錢藏起來的，却要叫錢作勞苦的工作。他說明已經把他的錢投資在下面各種方式中了：

一萬元投資於廣東的鐵道上，每年獲利六百元。

\$20,000 was working in a publishing company in Shanghai, and *earned*¹ \$1500 a year.

\$50,000 was working on a *rubber plantation*² in the Straits Settlements, and earned \$4000 a year.

\$10,000 was helping to develop a coal mine near Hankow, and earned \$550 a year.

\$10,000 was helping to build a farm in Manchuria, and earned \$600 a year.

The boy did not tell his father, but he had always supposed that men kept their money in the *vault*³ of a bank, piled up in silver dollars and five-dollar *bills*⁴.

2. Making the Dollar Work

Even a single dollar need not lie unused. Many savings banks accept a *deposit*⁵ of as small an amount as this, and pay four cents a year interest. This dollar will then be helping to build a house or run a railroad or do some other piece of useful work. The savings bank always keeps enough money in its vaults to supply the *depositors*⁶ who may want to *draw out*⁷ part or all of their money. The rest it puts to work. If the savings bank will not accept the dollar, then in many countries its owner can take it to the post office and lend it to the government. The government will set it to work at once and pay for its use. The Chinese post office has a postal savings system.

A nation would soon become very poor if all the people hoarded the money they did not need to live on. Money saved and wisely invested by the people makes any nation prosperous.

3. What is Extravagance?

Money may be wasted through idleness or by wrong use. Wrong use we sometimes call extravagance. Families which buy more food than they need and spend too much for clothes are extravagant. A town which has *high-power arc lights*⁹ for its streets when small lights would do is extravagant. But the mere spending of

1 獲得。 2 橡皮園。 3 保管庫。 4 鈔票。 5 存款。 6 存戶。 7 支取。 8 匯費。 9 強力的弧光燈。

二萬元投資上海的一家印刷公司，每年獲利一千五百元。

五萬元投資於海峽殖民地的橡膠園，每年獲利四千元。

一萬元幫助一家近於漢口的煤礦發展，每年獲利五百五十元。

一萬元幫助建立在滿洲的農場，獲利六百元。

那孩子沒有對他父親說，但是他以前總是以為人們把他的錢放在銀行的保管庫裏，庫中堆積着銀幣和五元鈔票的。

二 使錢幣運行

即使是一塊錢也不可攔着不用。許多儲蓄銀行答應這樣的小額存款，每年付息四分。這塊錢就將幫助一所房屋的建築，一條鐵道的建設，或做着其他的有用的工作。儲蓄銀行常常保持足夠的金錢在它的保管庫裏以供應要支取一部分或全部存款的存戶們。餘剩下來的就去運行。如果儲蓄銀行不接受一塊錢的存款，那末有許多國家，一塊錢的主人都可送到郵政局去，把它借給政府。政府就立即加以運用，並且付給利息。中國的郵政局有郵政儲金的組織。

如果全部人民藏起他們生活上不必需的錢，一個國家會不久成爲很貧窮。人民把金錢儲蓄起來和聰明地投資可使一個國家富裕。

三 浪費是什麼？

金錢爲了攔着不用和用得錯誤而浪費掉。用得錯誤我們有時稱之爲浪費。家庭裏買了不必需的食物和耗費太多的衣服就是浪費。一個鎮集的街道上用了強力的孤光燈，其實只要用小燈光好了，這是浪費。但只是費去大宗款額的金錢不一定就是

large sums of money does not necessarily mean extravagance. Perhaps one town spends \$40,000 for a public library, and another town of the same size \$15,000. Is the first town extravagant and the other thrifty? It is more likely that the second town is *short-sighted*¹. The town which spends \$40,000, if the spending is well done, is not in the least extravagant. The more books and the more beauty that a library has, the more helpful it can be and the more pleasure it can give.

If a company spends \$1000 for a *motor-boat*² engine, it is not more extravagant than the company which buys one for \$200, provided the thousand-dollar one is five times as well made and will do more work than the cheaper one.

4. Thrift in China

The Chinese people are thrifty, but this is a time when they must be even more thrifty than ever before. They must also be careful *spenders*³ and good investors.

Many a man is a good saver but also a foolish spender or a poor investor. Many a woman saves food only to let it spoil. Many a man saves time only to waste it. Many a man keeps his pennies only to lose them as dollars. He is "penny wise and pound foolish." There is an old saying, "Take care of the pennies, and the dollars will take care of themselves." This is not a true saying. One may pile pennies up into dollars and pile dollars up into hundreds and thousands, and then lose all by some sort of foolish *venture*⁴. He is like a child who gives his penny to a beggar who promises to bring him a gold watch in return the very next time he comes that way.

Thrifty people in all lands save, but they do not always invest. Sometimes they spend foolishly. They eat their savings up in a single banquet, or they spend all on a *wedding*⁵ or a *funeral*⁶, or, worse still, they borrow money against future *saving*⁷ and spend it carelessly.

1 短視的。 2 汽艇。 3 消費者。 4 投機。 5 婚事。 6 喪事。 7 儲蓄。

浪費。假使一個鎮集費掉四萬元建設一座公共圖書館，另外一個同樣面積的鎮集却費了一萬五千元。是不是第一個鎮集是浪費而別一個節儉呢？還不如說第二個鎮集是短視罷。這個費掉四萬元的鎮集如果所費得當就一點也不算浪費。圖書館愈美麗，書愈多，它的幫助也愈多，給予人民的娛樂也愈大。

如果一家公司費掉一千元買一架汽船機，這比了以二百元購一架的公司並沒有較為浪費，如果這架一千元的比了二百元的貨色高了五倍，並且可以做更多的工作。

四 中國之節儉

中國人民是節儉的，但是現在却正是必得較之從前無論何時更要節儉的時候。他們還必要是一個謹慎的消費者，和良好的投資者。

許多人是個很好的儲蓄者，但也是個愚蠢的浪費者和劣等的投資者。許多婦人省下了食物，只是讓它壞掉。許多人省下了時間只是浪費掉它。許多人守着一文錢，失掉的却是銀元。他是個『小處聰明而大處糊塗』。古話說，『節省一文錢，銀元就能聚集起來了。』這句話是不確實的。一個人會積起銅元而成銀元，積起銀元而至於幾百幾千，可是在幾種愚蠢投機裏把全部都喪失了。他正像個小孩子把銅元給予一個乞丐，乞丐答應他在下回來到那裏時帶一只金銀報答他。

各處節儉的人都儲蓄，但是他們却不常投資。有時他們花得很愚蠢。他們在一次宴會裏吃掉了他們的儲蓄，或是在一個婚事與一個喪事裏把全部花掉，還有更壞的，以將來的儲蓄抵補借款，而不慎地用掉它。如果習慣要求一個家庭在各種上面

If a custom demands that a family waste its money in any way, that family should *rebel*¹ against that custom. If your friends ask you to put your money into an unnecessary *celebration*², say to them that China needs capital and will never have it unless her people save money and do not spend it foolishly. It is your duty to refuse to waste money even if others dislike your decision.

Of what use to China are the great *gaudy*³ processions of *hired priests*⁴ and *decorated*⁵ girls and beggars carrying *banners*⁶ that stretch for a mile along the streets of Shanghai at either the marriage or the death of some rich man? If money is invested, it makes work and wealth for many; but if it is spent thus, it is thrown away and benefits nobody for more than a day or so.

If one wishes to help poor *ragged*⁷ beggars, that is a bad way to do it.

5. Thrift in Enjoyment⁸

Thrift does not mean the *abstinence*⁹ from all enjoyments. Wise people learn what is good and exactly how much is necessary for the best enjoyment, and then they consider carefully whether they can *afford*¹⁰ to spend.

When should anyone spend for a thing that is not really necessary? When he and his family have by good investment properly provided for the future. Even then it is doubtful if his country can afford to lose the capital he throws away. It is said that China is a poor country. Is it true? Do the people make money? Is there enough capital to build railroads and motor roads all over every province? Is there enough capital to buy all the ships on the Pacific which have Chinese sailors on them? Where does capital come from?

6. Investment

One of the safest ways to invest money in the West is to buy the *bonds*¹¹ of a stable government. People in

1 反叛. 2 慶祝. 3 好看的. 4 被雇的和尙. 5 化妝的. 6 旗子. 7 褴褛的. 8 娛樂. 9 戒絕. 10 供應. 11 債券.

浪費金錢，那個家庭就該對於那種習慣反叛起來。如果你的朋友請求你把你的錢用於無謂的慶祝上，告訴他中國正需要資本，並且除非她的人民儲蓄金錢，不把它愚蠢地用掉，將永遠不能得到它。拒絕浪費金錢是你的責任，即使別人不歡喜你的決定。

不論是富人家的婚禮與喪禮，總有被雇的和尚，化妝的女孩，和擲着旗的乞丐，舉行一種大而好看的遊行，在街上延伸到一哩之長，這於中國有什麼用呢？如果金錢用於投資，它可使許多人得到工作和財富。但是如果如此把它花掉，這是拋棄它，並且無人能得到一天以上的利益。

如果一個人歡喜佈施窮苦襤褸的乞丐，那是種不好的方法。

五 娛樂的節儉

節儉的意思並不要戒絕一切娛樂。聰明的人們知道什麼是有益的，並且正確地知道對於這最好的娛樂需費多少，於是他們謹慎地考慮能否供應這個消費。

一個人在什麼時候才能花費在不必需的事物上呢？要在他和他的家庭因為優渥的投資而對於將來有適當的準備的時候。然而在這個時候還有疑問哩。他的國家能堪失掉這筆他所拋棄的資本麼？據說中國是一個貧窮的國家。這是真實的麼？人民賺錢麼？有足夠的資本在各省建築鐵路和汽車路麼？有足夠的資本購買有中國水手在內的太平洋上的一切船隻麼？資本從那裏來呢？

六 投資

西洋的一個最安全的投資方法就是買進穩固政府的債券。美國人民願意接受國家最好的按年三四厘的公債券。因為這些

America are willing to accept as little as 3 per cent or 4 per cent per year on the best national government bonds because they are so safe and so sure of price and *payment*¹. If they buy railroad bonds they feel almost but not quite so sure of these, and so they demand about 5 per cent interest. City and business bonds and the stocks of large companies whose reputation is good pay 6 per cent or 7 per cent. The stocks and bonds of those companies which are a little less secure must pay more interest, because as the risk increases it becomes more difficult to find people to buy them. You can judge *fairly well*² of the *soundness*³ of an old company or of a government by the price and interest of its stocks or bonds, if these are in the stock markets.

7. Gambling⁴

Do you know what a "*gold brick*⁵" is? What is a "*wildcat scheme*⁶"? They are slang expressions for some of the ways dishonest persons have of getting ignorant people to invest good money in bad stocks. They offer large returns and so persuade people to take risks.

That kind of investment is gambling, and all gambling is both foolish and bad. Gambling is foolish, because by it there is loss but never real gain. Two men go to a gambling place: one loses and the other gains; thus there is a *balance*⁷ of loss and gain. But account must be taken of the service and light and rent and everything else which is paid for and lost, and of the time wasted by each—all of that is loss to the country, which has gained nothing, as it would have done from production and honest business. Moreover, there is a great loss in the spirit of industry and thrift. This is a terrible loss. Gambling destroys the spirit of honest labor. We say a man gets "*the gambling fever*⁸," for it is like a disease that heats the man as with a false warmth and leaves him cold and weak when his strength is gone. Every nation should fight gambling as it would fight a *bitter*⁹ and cruel enemy till it has been entirely destroyed.

1 付息。 2 很清楚。 3 穩固。 4 賭博。 5 金磚。 6 俗語。 7 平均。 8 熱病。 9 刻毒的。

債券既是安全，而價格與付息又是穩固。如果他們購買鐵路股票，他們覺得不十分可靠，所以要求五厘給息。城市的與商業的債券和信譽好的大公司的股票是六厘或七厘給息。信用削減的公司股票或債券就得付較多的利息。因為冒險性愈增加就更難於找人買它。依據股票或是債券的價格與利息你就能判定得很清楚，那些國家的，或是老公司的股票或是債券的穩固程度如何，如果這是在股票市場上有交易的。

七 賭博

你知道什麼是『金磚』麼？什麼是『欺人之術』麼？這兩個名詞是一種俗語，表明不誠實的人使愚民把錢投資於不可靠股票上的幾種方法。他們出着很多的利息，這樣地引誘人民冒險。

那種投資是賭博，一切的賭博是愚蠢而卑劣。賭博是愚蠢的，因為其間只有喪失，却永沒有真實的獲得。兩個人到賭場上去：一個人輸一個人贏；這樣算是輸贏平均。但是必定要以該支付的和喪失的場中服務，電燈，房租和別的一切東西來計算——一切這些都是國家的損失，它一點也沒有獲得，不像生產事業和可靠的商業般。還有實業精神與節儉精神的喪失。這是可怕的損失。賭博破壞誠實工作的精神。我們說一個人得到了『賭博熱病，』因為它正像一種疾病般以一種虛偽的熱度溫暖這個病人，等到他的體力喪失之後却只剩給他寒冷和衰弱。每個國家要如與刻毒殘忍的仇敵作戰般和賭博作戩，直到它完全摧滅為止。

Thrift and wise spending and sound investment of capital, therefore, are not merely personal virtues: they are also national virtues. They are patriotic virtues. *Builders*¹ of a nation must be thrifty, wise, careful, in money matters. Spending money is a *test*² of character.

8. Banks gather³ Capital

China has some of the oldest banking houses in the world and was one of the first nations to coin money, to *issue*⁴ paper money, and to establish banks. Coins issued a thousand years ago are in *circulation*⁵ still. The *abacus*⁶ of those ancient bankers is in use in the largest Oriental banks today, side by side with the *latest calculating machines*⁷ and printed tables of exchange and interest.

The Chinese were such good bankers that other Oriental countries employed them until their own bankers could be trained. Far more Chinese than foreigners are employed in the foreign banks in China.

There is in China today a great and rapidly growing number of banks. What do banks do, and why are they increasing in number so rapidly?

We have said that China needs capital, an enormous amount of it. The banks are gathering this capital. Many people put small amounts into the banks for short or long *periods*⁸. Most of it is available for investment. Sometimes the depositor takes out his money and invests it. Sometimes the bank invests it. Sometimes it lends to an investor. Sometimes it lends to another bank, which in turn gets it invested. The banks, therefore, are the chief channel through which the savings of the people become invested capital.

It is unfortunately true that banks in China *prosper*⁹ and grow rich from the exchange business. Exchanging one kind of money for another is not producing anything. All unnecessary exchange is a loss to business and to the country. If there were one *standard currency*¹⁰ for

1 建設份子。2 試驗。3 聚集。4 發行。5 流通。6 算盤。7 最新式的計算器。8 時期。9 興盛。10 標準錢幣。

資本的節儉與聰明的消費，與穩妥的投資所以不但是個人的道德；它們也是國家的道德。它們是愛國的道德。一個國家的建設份子一定要在錢財上節儉，聰明，謹慎。用錢是品格的試驗。

八 銀行聚集資本

中國在世界上有最老的銀號，並且是鑄造錢幣發行紙幣，成立銀行的第一個國家。一千年前發行的錢幣至今仍在流通。古代銀行裏的算盤今日仍在最大東方銀行裏使用，並和最新式的計算器，印好的匯兌和利息單並列在一起。

中國人是這樣好的銀行家，別的東方國家在他們沒有訓練自己的銀行家以前都要雇用他們。中國的外國銀行裏雇用的中國人數遠過於外國人。

今日在中國有許多大銀行，並且增加得很快。銀行做些什麼呢？爲什麼它們的數目增加得這樣快呢？

我們已曾說過中國需要資本，並要鉅額的資本。銀行可以聚集這種資本。許多人民把少數的款額放在銀行裏，或是短期，或是長期。大部分的錢是用於投資的。有時存戶提出他的款子，用以投資，有時銀行把它來投資，有時把它借給一個投資者。有時把它借給另一家銀行，這樣輪次地把它投資。所以銀行是貫通人民儲蓄至於投資資本的河流。

這是很不幸的真實，中國銀行的興盛和發財却是在於兌換事業。把一種錢幣掉換爲別一種錢幣是不生產任何東西的。一切不必需的兌換是一種對於事業和對於國家的損失。如果中國

all China, and quick and safe means of transporting it from place to place when needed, there would be little exchanging for the banks to do and a great gain to all business *throughout*¹ the country. This shows us one of the great tasks that lie before the government.

9. Banks supply Working Capital

A company which has land, buildings, equipment, and working *st'uff*² may lack only "working capital"—*ready money*³ with which to buy raw materials, pay wages, and get the goods on the market. If the company's business is sound, it is sure to be able to pay the money back as soon as the goods are sold. Without this working capital to make the wheels go round the company can do nothing. The banks stand ready to supply such money when needed.

Likewise the farmer often calls upon the bank for money with which to get his grain cut and marketed. The shipowner in the same way gets his ship to sea; the merchant gets his store *stocked*⁴ with goods; the *inn-keeper*⁵ gets his building built for him; the *broker*⁶ gets his *order*⁷ filled and shipped.

The supply of working capital to the right kinds of business *stimulates*⁸ productive activities and should be one of the proper ways for a bank to make money...

10. China is handicapped⁹ by High Rates of Interest.

In Western countries, for all money deposited for any length of time the bank pays interest—2 per cent, 3 per cent, 4 per cent; rarely more than that. For all money supplied to borrowers the bank charges interest—6 per cent, 7 per cent, 8 per cent; rarely more. That gives the bank good profit. In China, however, a borrower may be charged 10 per cent, 20 per cent, even 30 per cent or more. This means that business in China is greatly handicapped. How can China *compete*¹⁰ with other

1 編。 2 職員。 3 現金。 4 採辦。 5 旅店主人。 6 經紀人。 7 定貨單。 8 刺激。 9 受妨礙。 10 競爭。

有一種標準錢幣，並且能在必要時能夠以迅速和安全的方法從一地運輸到另一地，那末銀行所做的兌換就要減少了，而全國的一切商業也將大有所獲了。我們知道這是一件中國政府的當前重要任務呢。

九 銀行供給營業資本

一家公司有土地，建築，設備，和職員，也許會只少營業資本——就是用以購買原料，付給工資，和運貨到市場上去的各種現金。如果公司的營業可靠，等到貨物脫銷後當然可以立即付還這筆錢。沒有這筆營業資本來周轉，這家公司就一點也不好做了。銀行就在必要時準備去供給這一筆錢。

同樣的，農夫也常常到銀行裏去借款，以之作割稻和運往市場之用。船主人用同樣的方法得以行駛他的船到海外去；商人得以爲他的商店採辦貨物；旅店主人得以造起屋子來；經紀人將定貨單上之貨物辦齊和運出。

對於正當營業供給營業資本可以刺激生產的活力，並且爲銀行賺錢的一種正當方法。

十 中國因爲高利貸而受着妨礙

在西洋各國一切長短期限的存款銀行都付給利息——二厘，三厘，四厘；再多是很少的了。銀行供給出借的錢收利六厘，七厘，八厘，也很少有再多的。那種方法使銀行獲利甚優。在中國，無論如何，一個借錢的人要付到一分，二分，三分以上。這種方法使中國的營業大受妨礙。如果中國負擔着這

nations in the world's business if she has to carry such heavy burdens of interest? Although some foreign governments *tax*¹ business heavily,—far more heavily than the Chinese government does,—the foreign business gets the benefit of the services paid for by the taxes; but Chinese business gets no service in return for its extra burden of heavy interest on *loans*². Such high rates are called *usury*³, and in many countries are considered unjust or even unlawful.

11. The Greater the Risk, the Higher the Rate

High rates of interest are due to two things: risks are so great that the banker often loses his money, and capital is so scarce that borrowers compete with one another until they push the rates far too high. A man often comes to the banker and says: "I must have money. I know you are afraid to lend to me, but I must have it, and I will pay you a high rate of interest." Rates of interest can be reduced to the world standard by two means: by making the risk less and by increasing capital. It is easy to see that a business which is good, or a *landowner*⁴ who is honest and efficient, or an enterprise which is sound may get money without trouble. The difficulty in China is that so many borrowers are *risky*⁵. They do not carry insurance, or they have too many employees, or they are not sure of *sales*⁶, or they do not have proper deeds to their *property*⁷, or their buildings are not in good repair, or their reputation has not been perfect. Perhaps the risk lies in the weakness of police protection or in the uncertainty of justice in the *courts*⁸. Not until risks are reduced will rates come down. Some men are able to save up their own money and use that instead of borrowing. That is a slower way, but it is better.

12. There is too much Borrowing

The greater the demand, the higher the price—this is the *tendency*⁹ in all things. If people would borrow

1 征稅. 2 貸金. 3 盤剝. 4 地主. 5 危險的. 6 銷路. 7 財產. 8 法庭. 9 趨向.

末重的利率，她怎樣能和世界各國的商業競爭呢？雖然有些外國政府營業稅收得很重——比中國政府所收的要重得多呢，——而外國的商業也得了納稅的利益；但是中國的商業對於它的踰度的高利貸負擔却並無應得的報酬。這種高利貸稱為盤剝，有許多國家是認為不公平，或甚至於不合法的。

十一 危險愈大，利率愈高

高利貸由於兩件事：危險性既是這麼大，常使銀行家喪失金錢。資本稀少，借錢者互相競爭，而增高其利率。人家往往跑到銀行家那邊說道：『我必要借到錢。我知道你不敢借給我，但是我却一定要，我可以付給你很高的利率。』有兩種方法可使利率減到世界標準：就是減少危險性和增加資本。這是容易看出來的，一種良好的營業，或是一個誠實和有效率的地主，或是一種穩固的企業，借起錢來就沒有困難了。在中國，其困難在乎有這樣多的含有危險性的借款人。他們沒有保險，或是工人太多，或是不能確知銷路，或是他們的財產沒有合式的契據，或是他們的建築沒有好好的修理，或是他們的聲譽不夠。也許其危險性在於警察的保護力太弱，或是法庭的公平不可靠。危險性不縮減，利率也不會降低。有些人善於儲蓄錢，却自己使用它，不向人借，那是個緩慢的方法，但也是個較好的方法。

十二 借錢太多

需要愈大，價格愈高——這是一切事物的趨向。如果人民

less, they would find rates of interest less. To borrow working capital against sure returns is good business for a man, a company, a nation. It is best for a nation, which is always so large that it can easily *stand*¹ a possible loss. It is next best for a company, which is usually "*limited*"², or "*incorporated*"³ (which means that the possible loss will not fall upon the individuals themselves), or a group of "*partners*"⁴, who will share the loss among them. It is least good for an individual or a family to borrow money, because all losses will fall entirely upon them. The result is that many and many a good family has been brought down to the lowest condition by failure to collect money enough to repay loans.

Governments do not hesitate to borrow large sums for constructive purposes. One reason is that once a profitable enterprise, such as a railway, is built, it will itself repay the loan and the interest. Another reason is that a good investment for the people such as a motor road or a river dike or a public bridge or an open *park*⁵ will benefit the people permanently, so that they will be willing and glad to pay the interest forever if necessary. But governments try not to borrow for *current expenses*⁶. That is bad borrowing, because it is making future generations pay the bills of this generation. Where would such a course lead us?

A wise *corporation*⁷, or "*limited*" company, tries to build up a *sinking fund or surplus*⁸ so that it will not need to borrow. It can supply its own working capital. It not only saves on interest but it also puts itself in a safer position and gains a reputation for soundness.

A wise man draws up a family *budget*⁹ and *regulates*¹⁰ carefully his expenditures *in accordance with*¹¹ his *income*.¹² He has to plan for *shelter*,¹³ food, clothing, and education. After arranging for all these things, he sets aside each month a certain amount for a savings fund. At the end of a series of years he has a good deposit which will take care of him and his family in case of need. What is your family budget?

1 負担。 2 有限的。 3 合組的。 4 股東。 5 公園。 6 日常費用。 7 公司。 8 公積金。 9 預算表。 10 計算。 11 依據。 12 收入。 13 居住。

能減少借貸，他們就能找到較低的利率。一個人借了營業資本以求確定的報酬是一種爲人，爲公司，爲國家的好事業。借錢對於國家最爲有利，因爲它是那末大，易於負擔一種可能的損失。其次是公司得益最大，因爲通常總是『有限』的或是合組的（就是這種可能的損失不會落在個人身上，）或是一羣的股東分擔其間的損失。個人或是家庭的借款獲益最少，因爲一切的損失將完全落在他們的身上。其結果就是許許多多的良好家庭爲了不能籌一宗足夠還債的錢而降到最低落的情形。

政府決不遲疑於借大宗款額以作建設之用。一個理由是只要這個有能力的企業，好像鐵路；建築之後，它的本身就能本利並還了。另一個理由是一種對於人民有益的投資，例如汽車路，堤岸，公共橋樑，公園是可以永久地有益於人民的，所以如果必要他們都願意和歡喜付給這筆利息。但是政府不可借貸爲日常費用，那是個不良借貸，因爲要使下一代的人償還這一代的債務。這樣個途徑將領導我們到那裏去呢？

一種聰明的公司，或是有限公司，實行建立一種公積金，那末它可以不需要借錢了。它能夠自己供給營業資本了。這不但節省利息，也是置自身於穩固的地位，和得到一種卓著的信譽。

一個聰明人立一張家庭預算表，並且小心地計算他的費用，依據他的收入。他對於居住，食物，衣服，和教育有一個計劃，在一切整列好了之後，他每月劃出一筆款項爲儲蓄金。過了幾年之後，他就有一筆可觀的存款了，這筆錢在必需時可以供給他和他的家庭使用的。你的家庭預算怎樣呢？

13 Borrowing is often Wrong

A man who needs to borrow is often only one who has failed to save. If he has not saved in the past, he will probably not save in the future. When he borrows, therefore, he is putting himself on a dangerous road. He is *slipping*¹ downward. As long as a man is honest and *owes*² nobody, he can fearlessly look the world in the face; but as soon as he finds himself struggling against a debt, he begins to lose courage as well as to lose the *confidence*³ of others. If a nation has any large proportion of citizens discouraged and hindered by debt, it is in need of a lesson in thrift and progress.

Unbusinesslike borrowing ought to be stopped, and fortunately can be stopped if people wish to *reform*⁴ and stand upon a more solid *financial base*⁵. This sort of borrowing is both foolish and useless. It is said that many a poor farmer in the West has *mortgaged*⁶ his home and lands in order to buy an automobile. The car will soon be *worn out*⁷; but the mortgage remains and must be paid or the farmer will lose his farm.

Do you know of such cases? Do you know of anybody who has borrowed money in order to spend it on a wedding, and thus started his home life with a debt hanging over him? Was he not wrong to spend what he had not saved and handicap his family from the *very start*⁸? How much wiser it would be to have a simple and *inexpensive*⁹ wedding! Do you know of any case where money was put into so big a funeral that the family was in financial difficulties for a long time afterward? It was not only foolish: it was wrong. What right has one to spend and to make others save or suffer?

A personal or family loan is almost never a wise one. Make it your rule never to borrow except for working capital in an enterprise whose productivity is *assured*.¹⁰ Don't spend money until you have saved it. If someone lends you money with which to get an education, it is

1 滑。 2 負債。 3 信任。 4 改良。 5 財政基礎。 6 抵押。 7 破舊。 8 剛才開始。 9 不耗費的。 10 担保。

十三 借貸常是錯誤的

一個需要借錢的人，一定是不能積蓄之人。如果他在過去沒有積蓄，他在將來顯然不會積蓄的。當他借貸時，他是把自己置於危險之道了。他正在滑下去呢。如果一個人誠實而不欠人家的錢，他就能無畏地面對世界；但是一等他覺得自己正在跟債務掙扎，他的勇氣和信用就一齊損失了。如果一個國家有很大比例的公民意氣不振，並且爲債務所累，這是需要一種節儉和進步的教訓的。

非營業性的借貸應該制止，如果人民願意加以改良，和站在較堅固的財政基礎上，那末有幸地可以制止了。這一種的借貸是愚蠢與無益。據說西方有許多窮苦的農夫抵押了他的屋子和土地以買一輛汽車。這一輛車子很快地會破舊的；但是這筆抵押還留着並且一定要付還的，或至這個農夫喪失了他的田呢。

這種情形你知道麼？你知道有人借錢在婚禮上用掉，而他的家庭生活就以債務滿身爲起始麼？他消費這筆他沒有積蓄的錢，和剛才起始就妨礙他的家庭是不錯的麼？如果他舉行一個簡單不耗費的婚禮是怎樣的較聰明呢！還有把錢用在大出喪上，而家庭以後很長的時期陷於財政窘迫之中，你知道這種情形麼？這不但是愚蠢；這是錯誤。有什麼權利一個人耗費而使別人節省或受損失呢？

個人或家庭的債務大抵決不是聰明的。製就你的規則，除了一種企業上的營業資本，而這種企業有生產可作擔保以外決不借貸。在你沒有積蓄之前，不要耗費錢。如果有人借錢給你作教育金，這是一種大冒險，你該稱之爲一半是愛情的禮物。

such a great risk that you should call it half a gift of love. If you live, pay it back with both interest and gratitude.

Try not to lend, either. Discourage your friends from borrowing anything. It is said that once a *fountain pen*¹ is borrowed and used by another it is never the same again. That may not be true, but it is true that a really good friend tries not to borrow. If you borrow your friend's *bicycle*², you should stand ready to buy him a new one if when you return it he thinks it not as good as before. Remember the old saying that he who lends money to a friend is in danger of losing both the money and the friend.

14. The Nation's Borrowing

Like an individual, a nation may borrow money, and it too may borrow wisely or foolishly. If it borrows money (at proper rates) for productive investment and then makes sure that the money is properly invested, its borrowing is right and good. The citizens will gladly buy the government's bonds if they are sure that the loan they make to it will be rightly invested. Such governmental borrowing and investing is but putting the people's *idle money*³ to work on a national scale and for the national good. Cities do the same thing on a smaller scale.

China's national debt in 1924 was said to be about \$1,783,000,000 (silver). That seems to be a large debt, but *in reality*⁴ it is not large *in comparison with*⁵ her resources.

As a matter of fact, if she invested the money properly, China could borrow many times as much as she has borrowed and not be in any difficulty. China has wealth. Her citizens have money enough saved up to pay her debts *several times over*.⁶ A newspaper editor wrote recently about China's "*headlong*"⁷ rush to *bankruptcy*.⁸ That is a *startling*⁹ expression, but it is not true that the

1 自來水筆。 2 腳踏車。 3 游資。 4 實在。 5 和... 相比。 6 幾倍以上。 7 魯莽地。 8 破產。 9 可驚的。

如果你活着的話，把本利和感謝一起付還他吧。

同樣也不要借出。不贊成你的朋友借任何東西。據說一枝自來水筆借出與被別一個人用了一次，就不會一樣了。那句話也許是不確實的，但是對一個真正好朋友不要借東西却是確實的。如果你借你的朋友一輛腳踏車，你必要有買一輛新的給他的準備，如果當你還他時，他以為不如借前那末優良了。記牢那句老古語借錢給朋友的人有既失金錢，又失朋友的危險。

十四 國家的借貸

像個人般，一個國家也許要借錢的，而它也有聰明的借貸和愚蠢的借貸。如果它借錢（利息相當）作為生產的投資，並且確知這筆錢是用於合宜的投資上的，它的借貸是對的，也是有益的。公民們將樂意地購買這種公債券，如果他們確知他們所借出的款項是投資得很對的。這種的政府借貸和投資只是把人民的遊資為了國家的利益，照着國家的規模去使用。城市也做着同樣的事，而規模却小一點。

中國的國債在一九二四年說大約有一，七八三，〇〇〇，〇〇〇元（銀幣）。看來那是筆很大的債務了。可是和她的富源比較却實在不算大。

在事實上，如果她把這筆錢用於正當的投資，中國可以借比已借的數目再加上幾倍的錢，並且毫無一點困難。中國有財富。她的公民所儲蓄的錢足夠付她的債務幾倍以上。一個新聞主筆最近寫一篇關於中國的文章，說中國「魯莽地衝到破產的地步了」。那是種可驚的筆調，但是說人民沒有錢和國家無

people are without money or that the country has no way to pay its debts. It is only a question of investing national borrowings in national enterprises and of making proper payments promptly. Banks, both Chinese and foreign, will gladly lend to the government money to be used in building railroads or in developing mines, but they are unwilling to lend money to be put into salaries or other current expenses of the government.

15. Ought China to borrow Foreign Money

This question has been discussed by students all over China. China ought not to borrow any kind of money except for rightful purposes and under conditions that do not violate China's national *sovereignty*¹. The question is whether money borrowed for such good purposes as the development of China's great transportation system, the diking of her rivers, the opening up of her mines and *oil fields*², the planting of forests, and similar constructive and profitable ventures should be foreign money or not. Now it goes without saying that money should be borrowed at home if it can be secured there on as good *terms*³ as abroad. If it cannot, may it then be borrowed abroad? What are the proper conditions of a foreign loan? This makes us ask, "What is foreign money?" If a foreigner lends me Chinese money, is it a foreign loan or a Chinese loan? It is a foreigner's loan, but he has to get the money in China. Then is it foreign or Chinese? Money looks like a very national thing. It carries the *marks*⁴ of the nation on it. It may even be provincial. But when a Mexican dollar passes into the hands of a Chinese man, it is no longer Mexican. When a Kwangtung twenty-cent piece belongs to a man in Shanghai, it is no longer Kwangtung money. A Sun Yat-Sen dollar does not belong to Sun Yat-Sen, nor a Bank of England note to the Bank of England. Money is really not national. It flows freely all over the world, like the air. It goes wherever it is needed. If there is more money in the banks in China than business needs,

1 主權。 2 油田。 3 條件。 4 記號。

法還債是不確的。其問題祇在是否把國債投資於國家企業上，和是否能敏捷地按期償還。銀行，不論中國的或是外國的，將樂意地借錢給政府用以建築鐵道或開發礦產，但是不願意借錢給它作付政府的薪俸或別的日常費用。

十五 中國該借外債麼？

這個問題全國的學生都已討論過了。中國不該借任何種類的錢，除非作為正當的用途和在不損害中國主權的情形之下。其問題却在如果把借來的錢用於有益的目的上，像發展中國的偉大運輸系統，給河流築壩，開發礦產和油田，種植森林，和類似的建設的有益的企業，是否可以用外國的錢。如果在國內借錢其條件和借外債一樣的優惠，那末該在國內借錢也不用說了。如果不能一樣，那末可以借外債麼？借外債的合宜條件該如何？這使我們詢問，『什麼叫外國錢？』如果一個外國人借給我中國錢，這是外國債還是中國債？這是外國債，但是他在中國賺得這筆錢的。那末這是外國的還是中國的呢？錢幣看來似乎是一種頗有國家性的東西。它上面載着它國家的記號。甚至也許可以是省屬的東西。但是當一塊墨西哥銀元流到一個中國人的手中時，這塊錢便不是墨西哥的了。當一個廣東銀元流到一個上海人時，便不是廣東的錢了。一個孫逸仙銀元不是屬於孫逸仙的，一張英倫銀行的紙幣也不是屬於英倫銀行的。錢確乎沒有國家性質的。它自由地流通全世界，像空氣一般。什麼地方需要它就到那兒去。如果中國銀行有超出營業需要的錢，而

and less in the banks in Japan, into Japan it flows. So all over the world. *Exchange*¹ makes the flow slower, but does not stop it. Only fear and uncertainty will stop the flow. If the government of France wants to borrow more money than the banks in France have ready to lend, the money flows in from other countries to those banks. France may borrow from the French banks, but has she borrowed French money? It makes no difference whether you call it French money or not. The only question there is whether France wants to let the French bankers get money from the foreign *bankers*² or to get it herself directly. It is French money when France has it in her hands, but she may owe it to anybody.

The great railways of America were in large part built with money from Europe. America did not have enough money saved up, *whereas*³ Europe had it ready. No one ever thought of asking whether America ought to use European money. American development would have been long delayed if it had not been for that foreign capital.

The problems in China are whether the government should borrow any money at all, whether money borrowed should be used for anything but good investments, what sort of *guaranties*⁴ should be given, and what sort of *supervision*⁵ there should be over the handling of *principals*⁶ and interest. These are difficult questions that will need all the careful thought and patriotic interest that your generation and the next can give.

16. Business Security

In this chapter we have referred many times to matters of risk or *uncertainty*⁷. We said, for example, that investors are willing to accept lower and lower returns in proportion as the investment is safer from loss and surer of income. In proportion as the *element of chance*⁸ is removed, there is security. When a man wishes to borrow money, he is asked, "What security have you?" One

1 兌換。2 銀行家。3 然而。4 担保。5 管理。6 本金。7 不穩固。8 投資之因素。

日本銀行却不夠，它就流到日本去了。照這樣流行於世界。兌換使流通遲緩，但却不是停止它。只有恐慌和不穩定會阻止它的流通。如果法國政府要借較多的錢，超出於法國銀行所準備出借的，錢就從別的國家流到那些銀行中去了。法國可以向法國銀行借錢，但是她借的都是法國錢幣麼？這使你稱它為法國錢與否並無不同。唯一的問題却在法國是否讓法國銀行家向外國銀行家那裏籌款，或是直接地由政府出面借貸。這是法國的錢，當法國把它拿在手中時，但是她却是向別人借來的。

美國的大鐵路大部分是以歐洲的錢築成的。美國所有積蓄的錢不夠，而其時歐洲却有餘。沒有人曾經想過要詢問美國是否該用歐洲的錢。如果沒有外國的資本，美國的發展要延遲得很久哩。

中國的問題是政府可否借債，借來的錢是否用於一切有益的投資上，可以用什麼作擔保，用怎樣一種管理去經營本利。這些都是困難的問題，需要你們這一代的人和下一代的當心思考和熱心注意的。

十六 營業的穩固性

在這一章裏我們已好幾次陳說關於冒險或是不穩固的事情了。例如我們說投資者願意接受很低很低的報酬，因為在此比例上這種投資較為安全而收入也較為確定。和投機因素疎遠就是穩固。有人要向人借錢時，人家就問他，『你有什麼擔保？』有一個理由，中國的地租是那麼賤，而貸錢的利息和商業投資

reason that land rents in China are so low, while interest on money lent and profits on commercial investments are so high, is that land is a safe investment. It is not easy to injure, destroy, *burn up*,¹ or carry away. All sensible people attempt to make their property as safe and their future welfare as secure as possible.

17. Insuring² against Loss

One way of doing this is to insure against loss by fire. The wise owner of a house, especially if it might be *subject*³ to great danger, insures it. If it is built of brick and has concrete floors, if it is far removed from other houses, and if it does not contain any *kerosene*⁴, *gasoline*⁵, alcohol, etc., or if the owner has many houses scattered far and wide, he may *take the chances*⁶ and feel *pretty safe*.⁷ But most houses should be insured. The owner goes to the agent of a fire-insurance company and buys a "policy"—a paper promising to pay him a certain amount if the house is burned through no fault of his, or a *proportionate*⁸ sum if it is not entirely destroyed. A house burned is a house lost to the country whether it is insured or not. Insurance merely distributes the loss among a large number of people.

At regular times the owner of an insured house must pay his "*premium*"⁹—half of 1 per cent, 1 per cent, or some such rate for his protection against loss. All the premiums received by a good company are enough to pay the few losses which occur and to leave some profit over for the *stockholders*¹⁰ of the insurance company.

Every ship and its *cargo*¹¹ ought to be insured against loss by fire and against loss by water. If a ship is so old that no good company will insure it, passengers and merchants are foolish to use it, and its owners do wrong to send it out. You can also insure *valuables*¹² against being stolen. You can insure against loss from almost any source.

1 燒掉。 2 保險。 3 遭受。 4 煤油。 5 汽油。 6 碰機會。 7 大為安全。 8 成比例的。 9 保險費。 10 股東。 11 貨物。 12 有價值的東西。

的利益是那末高，因為土地是安全的投資。它是不容易受損，被毀壞，燒掉，或是搬走。一切有意識的人都打算使他們的財產安全，而他們的未來幸福盡量地可保。

十七 以保險抵償損失

一個保障營業安全的法子就是保火險。一所房屋的聰明主人，特別是這所房屋有極大危險的，就該給它保險。如果它是用磚建築的，水泥的地板，如果它和別的房屋很疎遠，如果裏面不藏着煤油，汽油，酒精，等等，或是這位主人有許多房屋分佈在各處遠而且廣，那末他可以碰機會，而覺得大為安全。但是大多數的房屋應該保險。這位主人跑到火險公司的代理人那裏去，買一張保險單——就是一張答應在房屋燒掉而不由自己的過失時付給他一筆款額，如果沒有全部損失就依比例償還。不論已否保險，燒掉一所房屋就是國家損失一所。保險只是把損失分配在大多數的人民身上。

在規定的時間，已保險房屋的主人必定要付他的保險費——半厘，一厘——或是對於他的損失保障的利息。一家良好公司接收了一切保險費就足以償付少數的損失，還留着一些利益給保險公司的股東。

每一隻船和它的貨物應該保水火險。如果一隻船陳舊到沒有一家良好的公司肯保，乘客和商人還去使用它，就是愚蠢，它的主人把它行駛出去就是做錯事。你也可以替有價值的東西保盜竊險。無論什麼來源的損失你都可保險的。

18. Life Insurance

One of the commonest forms of insurance is that against loss by death. If the insured person dies (except by *suicide*¹), a certain sum of money is given to his children or to whoever he has previously decided should receive it. This method of saving money by taking out a life-insurance policy is economically sound, and should be encouraged in China. If a man is dependent upon his salary, a life-insurance policy will give his family some thing to live upon in the event of his death. In general, the older he is, the greater are the chances that no insurance company will sell him a policy, and the higher the premium will be.

As a rule the best kind of insurance to buy is the simplest kind, called straight life insurance. You pay a fixed or even decreasing premium once a year until you are about fifty or sixty years old. Some policies require you to pay more, but allow you to stop paying after twenty years. Unfortunately life-insurance rates in China are still so high that it pays far better to invest savings than to buy insurance, if you can invest without too much risk to those dependent upon you. In America a \$1000 straight life policy for a man thirty years old costs about \$25 per year; in China it costs about *twice*² that much.

19. Who will watch the Watchman?

A house is only as safe as the guard who guards it; the guard is only as safe as the man who watches him; *and so on*³. You protect your property by fire insurance, but how do you know the insurance company is SURE? You put your money in a bank, but how do you know the bank is sound? You insure your life, but how can you feel certain that when you die the company will be able to pay?

A life-insurance company must be very honest, very carefully managed, and very firmly founded. It must

1 自殺。 2 兩倍。 3 依此類推。

十八 人壽保險

一種最普通的保險方式就是對於死亡損失的保險。如果這個已保險的人死掉（除掉自殺以外），就有一筆錢給予他的孩子，或是給予他在生前指定的人。這一種以人壽保險作儲蓄的方法是經濟而又可靠，在中國應該大加提倡。如果有專靠薪俸的人，保壽險使他的家庭在他死了之後有一宗維持生活的款子。大概年齡愈大，保險公司不給他保險的機會愈多，而保險費也愈高。

依例而論，購買最好的一種保險是最簡單的一種，喚作直接人壽保險。你付一筆指定的或是每年逐漸減少的保險費，直至你五六十歲為止。有些保險單要你付得多一點，却答應你二十年後停止繳費。很不幸的，在中國人壽保險費仍是那末不高，所以與其買保險寧可投資在儲蓄上比較好一點，如果你投資的營業沒有過分的冒險性的話。在美國一個三十歲人的一千元的直接保險單大約只須每年二十五元；在中國却要費到兩倍以上呢。

十九 誰監察這監察人？

房屋的安全僅視看管房屋的看管人，看管人的可靠又要視那個監察他的人；以此類推下去。你以保火險保障你的財產，但是你怎麼知道保險公司是可靠的呢？你把錢放在銀行裏，你怎麼知道銀行是穩固的呢？你保了壽險，但你怎麼能夠確定在你死時這家公司有力償付呢？

人壽保險公司一定要很誠實，很小心地管理，基礎要堅固。

have every applicant carefully examined by a skillful doctor to make sure that he is not likely to die soon. It must handle all its business in a very *exact*¹ manner over a long period, because its business must run on from generation to generation. It should be a business that continues forever. The premiums furnish the working capital; therefore most of the profits should go to the *policyholders*², not to the stockholders or managers. The capital must be large enough to meet all needs, even if there should be some sudden *epidemic*³ that killed a large part of the policyholders. Finally, the capital of the company must be safely invested; for in such a company a failure would injure not only the stockholders, as in an ordinary company, but also the many men, women, and children dependent upon that company for *protection*⁴.

All this means that such companies, including banks and stock exchanges, ought to be strictly *inspected*⁵ by the best-trained and most dependable public officials, and that they ought to be regulated by strict laws that would prevent them from deceiving the public. Here is need for good government and a strong sentiment to guide it. Make *inquiries*⁶ to find out if insurance companies in your region are surely sound and do not *cheat*⁷ the policyholders. Make a study of the existing *regulations*⁸ for such business and suggest any improvement you can.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. In what other way besides spending it foolishly can you waste money?
2. Explain how savings banks help the individual and the nation.
3. Suppose you had a thousand dollars. How could you make it work for you?

1 小心的。 2 保險單持有人。 3 流行病。 4 作保障。 5 監察。 6 調查。 7 欺騙。 8 規則。

每個請求保險的人一定要由技術高明的醫師檢查確定他一時不會死掉。它必定要以很小心的態度在長時期中經營它的一切事業，因為它的事業一定要一代代傳下去的。它該是種永遠繼續的事業。保險費供給着營業資本；所以大部分的利益應該歸之於保險單持有人，而不是股票持有人或是經理。資本必須要大，足以應付一切需要，即使有突生的流行病殺死了大部分的保險單持有人。最後，公司的資本必要安全地去投資；因為像這種公司一有失敗不但損害了股票持有人，像通常的公司一樣，並且損害許多的男子，女子，孩子靠着那一家公司作保障的。

一切這一類的公司，包括銀行，和證券交易所，應該由受過最好訓練的和最可靠的公家官吏嚴密地監察，它們該受嚴格法律的節制，以防止其欺騙公衆。這裏就需要良好的政府和有力的意見以指導它。調查你本鄉的保險公司是否確實可靠，並且不欺騙保險單持有人。研究這種事業的現有規則，並提供任何改良的方法。

問題和練習

1. 除了愚蠢的用去以外還有別種方法浪費金錢麼？
2. 說明儲蓄銀行怎樣會幫助個人及國家？
3. 假使你有一千塊錢。你怎樣使它爲你服務？

4. What is there which you want very much now that you might have had if you had not spent your money foolishly in small amounts as you received it?

5. Is saving always thrift? No; for certain expenditures are necessary for both social and personal progress. What are some of these?

6. Write a short story under the *title*¹ "The Man who Saved Money only to Waste it."

7. Why is gambling an enemy to the nation?

8. Explain how high rates of interest handicap China.

9. Draw up a family budget.

10. *Debate*² the question Ought China to borrow foreign money? .

11. Discuss the advantages of life insurance.

4. 如果你沒有愚蠢地消費你所得的小額款項，那末現在這筆錢你要作什麼用途你所最歡喜的？

5. 儲蓄就是節儉麼？不是的；因為某種費用是對於社會與個人的進步所必需的。舉出幾種這一類的費用？

6. 以『一個人省下了錢却只是浪費了錢』為題，寫一簡短的故事。

7. 為什麼賭博是國家的仇敵？

8. 說明高利貸怎樣阻礙中國。

9. 寫一張家庭預算表。

10. 辯論中國應否借外債？

11. 討論人壽保險的利益。

CHAPTER XI

BUSINESS AND SERVICE

1. An Ancient Classification¹ of People

In India people are divided by birth into "*castes*²," or completely separated classes, each of which is considered far more honorable than the one below it. Fortunately China has no such caste system. *On the contrary*³ it has always been possible in China for an able man from a poor and uneducated family to rise to almost any position in the nation.

There was, however, in ancient China an attempt to name several grades of society. The *scholar-official*⁴ was *ranked*⁵ first, next was the farmer, then the workman, then the merchant, and lastly the soldier. Soldiers, servants, and the like were put near the *bottom*⁶, because they produced nothing—they only did things for other people, served them in one way or another. Below them were, of course, the really *harmful*⁷ and destructive groups. Above them came the merchants and *tradesmen*⁸ and carriers, because, although they did not produce, they brought the goods forth to the public—they handled the goods for the producers. Above them were the *craftsmen*⁹, *artisans*¹⁰, and other workmen, because they turned raw materials into goods ready for use. Above them, in a very honorable position, were placed the farmers, because they really produced the wealth of the country. Finally, the scholar-officials were placed at the top, chiefly because the people had great respect for learning.

2. Service is the Thing to Measure

This classification of people is no longer accepted as right. We do not mark people off in high and low classes

1 分類。 2 階級。 3 反之。 4 士。 5 排列。 6 底層。 7 有害的。 8 小販。
9 手藝人。 10 工匠。

第十一章 營業與服務

一 古代的人民分類

在印度，人民生下來就分着階級，或是完全分開的階級，每一階級都以爲比下一層要高貴一些。有幸地中國並無這樣的階級制度。反之，常有能幹的人，起自貧窮和未受教育的家庭，升到任何的地位，在中國是很可能的。

無論如何，在古代的中國曾試把社會分爲數級。士爲第一級，其次是農夫，再次是工人，再次是商人，最後是兵。兵卒，僕人，和相類的人們是放在近於底層的，因爲他們一點也不生產——他們只是爲別人作事，在一種或別種方法中爲人家服務。更下於他們的當然是真真有害的和破壞的一羣了。他們之上就是商人，小販，挑夫，因爲雖然他們不生產，却把貨物運到大衆的面前——他們爲了生產者經營這些貨物。商人之上是手藝人，工匠，和別的工人，因爲他們把原料製爲貨物以備應用。他們的上面很高貴的地位是農人的位置，因爲他們真正生產出國家的財富。最後士的位置是在頂上，主要的原因是因爲這些人民對於學問有大大的尊敬。

二 服務是待估量的東西

這種分類法是不復認爲正確的了。今日我們不再標明階級

today. This is a *democratic age*¹. That means that we recognize the *interdependence*² of occupations and that each man should stand high or low in our *estimation*³ according to his own value, not according to who he is or who his father was or what kind of work he does.

☞ In the Grecian city of Thebes, about as long ago as the time of Confucius, there lived a wise and good and patriotic citizen whose name was Epaminondas. Certain of his enemies, who found it very difficult to *attack*⁴ so good a man, decided to *nominate*⁵ him for some very low-grade position. If he should be defeated, they would say that he could not win even the lowest office; if he should be elected, he would be dishonored either by his *refusal*⁶ to serve or by the character of the office. He was nominated for the position of *garbage collector*⁷ for the city, and elected. He surprised his enemies by saying: "I will accept the position and serve the people. If the office does not give honor to me, I will give honor to it." And so he did by rendering in it great service to the people who had elected him.

It is service rendered that must be measured to determine how high a position a man holds. The garbage collector may be one of the most important of a city's workers. The head of a government is sometimes the most useless official in it. A certain merchant may be doing more than any farmer or official to develop his district. A certain policeman may be the most important and helpful man on a street. A certain doctor may do more for his city than any learned scholar or high officer. A certain school-teacher may render more service to his province than all the military leaders put together; or, on the contrary, a certain general may do more for his province than a leader in education. High-grade men and women are found in all occupations. It is not a question of whether the work is clean or *dirty*⁸, hot or cool, easy or hard, *mental*⁹ or *physical*¹⁰: it is a question of service.

1 民主時代。 2 互相依賴。 3 評價。 4 攻擊。 5 指定。 6 拒絕。 7 掃垃圾人。 8 污穢的。 9 用腦的。 10 用力的。

的高低。現在是民主時代了。意思是說，我們要認識職業的相互依賴，我們評價一個人可敬或可鄙要根據他自己的價值，不以他是誰，他的父親是誰，他做着什麼一種工作為根據的。

約在孔子同時，希臘的蒂勃斯城裏住着一個聰明，良善，和愛國的市民，他的名字叫阿本密農達。他的敵人覺得難以攻擊這樣個好人，決定指定他做幾種很低級地位的職務。如果他失敗了，他們就可說他連最低級的職務都不能勝任；如果他選舉着了，不管他或是拒絕服務，或是為這種職務的品格，他總得受到侮辱。他被指定為城裏的掃垃圾人。而選舉出了。他的說話使他的敵人驚愕，他說：『我願意接受這個地位，為人民服務。如果這個職務不以光榮給我，我將以光榮給它。』於是他盡力做事為選舉他的人民服務。

決定一個人的職務高低，是以服務去衡量的。掃垃圾人也許是城裏最重要工人中的一個。政府的首領也許有時是城市裏最無用的官員。一個商人對於發展本地的事業也許所做的事要比農人或官吏重要多呢。一個警察也許是街上最重要與最有用的人。一個醫生為本市所做的事也許要比任何一個學者或高級官吏為多。一個教師也許對於本省效勞的服務比一切軍事領袖合起來還要多；或是，在反面，一個軍官為了本省的事比一個教育領袖為多。高級男女在各職業裏都可找得到。這件工作污穢或清潔，冷或熱，容易或是艱難，用腦的或是用力的都不成問題：問題祇在於如何服務。

3. Money is not Dirty

The old English expression "*filthy lucre*"¹ has lost its force. It suggested that money was a low-grade thing, that a gentleman did not handle it or care about it. There has been a somewhat similar idea in China. Gentlemen have avoided discussing personal money matters. Even when a man was paid for his services the money was called "*shoe money*"² or "*firewood money*"³ rather than his "pay." This is a good idea in so far as it applies to people who wish to consider service itself and personal relations as more worthy of consideration than the getting of something for themselves. No gentleman is *selfish*⁴ and *grasping*⁵. The best things in life are not to be bought.

However, the idea that money is a *debasing thing*⁶ is all wrong. A gentleman should not have the least hesitation in dealing with another in a *businesslike way*⁷. If a principal wishes to employ a teacher, he should state the work to be done and the payment that he considers right for that work. If the teacher really considers the amount less than just, he does honor to himself and to the principal by saying so and by explaining the reasons. Their *opinions*⁸ may not agree, but there should be *frankness*⁹ in *adjusting*¹⁰ any differences.

They may not be able to *come to terms*¹¹, or they may be able to do so in spite of a difference of mere opinions. In any case, frank discussion between honest gentlemen leaves them both in equally honorable positions and better friends than ever. If the *arrangement*¹² is not a just one, the future is sure to reveal that fact, and gentlemen have no *hesitation or embarrassment*¹³ in discussing such ~~matters.~~

4. The Old-fashioned Middleman

The modern idea is to do away with the middleman. He has been a great waster. Modern business is fighting against him *vigorously*¹⁴. He gets too much of what

1 臭銅錢。 2 脚步錢。 3 薪金。 4 自私的。 5 貪婪的。 6 卑鄙之物。 7 認真辦事的方法。 8 意見。 9 坦白。 10 調和。 11 成立妥協。 12 協議。 13 困難。 14 有力地。

三 金錢並不污穢

英國老古話『臭銅錢』已經失掉它的力量了。它說金錢是低級的東西，一個君子人不會拿起它和看重它的。在中國也有相類的觀念。君子人避免討論個人的金錢事情。就是一個人因他的工作而得的報酬也稱爲『脚步錢』或是『薪金』，而不稱爲他的報酬。這個觀念用以使人民想到職務本身和人的關係比之獲得什麼東西，其價值要大得多。沒有一位君子人是自私和貪婪的。生活上最好的東西是不能買的。

無論如何，金錢爲卑鄙之物的觀念是全盤錯誤的。一個君子人應該毫不猶豫地以認真辦事的方法和人家來往。如果一個校長要請一僱教師，他該說明應做的工作和所定工作的報酬。如果這個教師真的以爲報酬太少，他到校長那兒去這樣說，並說明他的理由，這對於他自己做得很光榮的。他們的意見也許不一致，但總要在調和事件上胸懷坦白。

也許他們不能成立妥協，或者不管這意見的僅僅不同，還能夠合作。無論那一種情形，兩個誠實人之間的坦白討論所遺留給他們的只是相等的可尊敬地位和比了從前更好的友誼。如果這個協議是不公平的，在將來終可顯露事實的，而君子人要毫不遲疑地和毫無困難地討論這種事情。

四 老式中人

現代的觀念是取消中間人。他是個大浪費人。現代商業正有力地和他奮鬥。對於屬於生產者和消費者的什麼東西他獲得

belongs to the producer and the *consumer*¹. Less and less is he being used to arrange *engagements*² and *marriages*³. The middleman has been employed largely because of the feeling that it is not honorable to discuss personal matters frankly. We ought to be glad that this idea is changing rapidly. How much more honorable, sensible, and *satisfactory*⁴ it is to deal with a friend, or even an enemy, *face to face*⁵, than to discuss personal matters with a middleman! Let us do our part to help bring in the day of *direct dealing*⁶. Away with the old middleman!

5. What is Money?

Wrong ideas about money, *bargaining*⁷, and business in general are partly due to a misunderstanding of the character of money. Is money the same as gold and silver? Can it be brass? Can it be paper? It used to be *shells*⁸, rice, cloth,—*lots of*⁹ things. Coins and paper representing coins have come to be considered the most convenient forms of money. But what is money really? It is something that makes it easy for one person to exchange his goods or services for another person's goods or services. An innkeeper gives a *barber*¹⁰ twenty cents for cutting his hair; the barber gives a *ricksha man*¹¹ twenty cents for carrying him across the city; the ricksha man gives the innkeeper twenty cents for letting him sleep at his inn. They have merely exchanged services. If there had been only two in the *cycle*¹², the coin would not have been needed—the use of the money was only a convenient way of making the exchange.

6. Goods and Services

It is the same way in the exchange of goods for goods, or goods for services, or services for goods. The money only makes the exchanges easy and helps in the discussion of relative values. Money has also the character of *durability*¹³. My *cabbage*¹⁴ may be good to exchange for

1 消費者。 2 婚約。 3 結婚。 4 滿意的。 5 面對面。 6 直接交涉。 7 訂立契約。 8 貝殼。 9 許多的。 10 理髮匠。 11 人力車夫。 12 周期。 13 耐久性。 14 捲心菜。

太多了。用他們來訂立婚約和做結婚時的媒人已漸見減少了。中人曾被大量的雇用着，因為覺得坦白地討論私人的事件是不光榮的。這種觀念迅速地改變了，我們應該快活。和你的朋友，或甚至是仇敵，面對面的互談，比了用中人來討論私人事件，其光榮，其見識，其滿意該高出多少呢！讓我們該盡着本分提倡直接交涉。取消這些老式中人！

五 金錢是什麼？

關於金錢，訂立契約，商業的錯誤觀念大概一部分由於對於金錢性質的誤解。金錢和金子，銀子是同樣的麼？它可以是銅的麼？它可以是紙的麼？從前它是些貝殼，米，布，——許多的東西。錢幣和代表錢幣的紙幣已被認為金錢中最適宜的形式了。但是真正的錢是什麼呢？它是一些使人易於把他的貨物或服務和別人交換貨物或服務的東西。一個旅店主人給一個理髮匠兩毛錢作剪髮費；這個理髮匠給一個人力車夫兩毛錢，因為拖他穿過這城市；這個人力車夫給旅店主人兩毛錢，因為要讓他住在他的旅館裏。他們不過是交換着服務。如果這個商業周期裏只限於兩個人，錢幣就不需要了，——錢的使用只是為交易的一種便利方法。

六 貨物和服務

以貨易貨，以貨物易服務，或是以服務易貨物，都是一樣的。金錢只使這種交易便利，與幫助相對價值的討論。金錢也有耐久的性質。我的捲心菜可以換一雙鞋，但是如果我要多等

shoes, but not so good as money if I wish to wait a while. If I have money I can buy goods or services almost any time I like.

Is there any great difference between goods and services? Is the farmer who produces the rice more honorable than the merchant who does you and him the service of bringing the rice to you? Are goods more honorable than services? Is a servant in your home a person of low honor? Is a man who carries your baggage a low fellow because he serves you? Then so is the *clerk*¹ who works in a shop, and the merchant who handles goods for you, and the doctor who *cures*² you, and the banker who handles your money for you, and the teacher who helps you to learn, and the official who protects you, and the judge who *decides a case*³ for you, and your father, who gives you a home. In the first place, service is like goods: you buy and sell it in the market, just as you do goods, and you ought to be just as honest and honorable and *self-respecting*⁴ in buying or selling service as in buying and selling goods. In the second place, goods represent services. Rice has a price because people have rendered service in producing and *delivering*⁵ it. This is not true of air, which is valuable but not *salable*⁶. All goods represent just so much service rendered; thus goods and services are on a level, and money is only a means of getting service rendered to you.

7. What is Business?

Business, therefore, is the exchanging of services, past, present, and future. Any kind of business—production, transportation, *professional work*⁷, *amusement*⁸ enterprises, or anything which is really good service given—is honorable. Money received honestly in such ways is honorable, for it means that service is due because service has been rendered. Money stolen or won in gambling is not honorable, for it means services to be demanded when no service has been rendered.

1 店員。 2 醫病。 3 判決案件。 4 自尊。 5 輸送。 6 可賣的。 7 專門工作。 8 娛樂。

一會兒那末就沒有金錢好了。如果我有錢，就能夠在無論何時購買貨物或服務。

貨物和服務其間有大差異麼？生產米穀的農夫比之爲你服務，把米運來賣給你的商人更高貴麼？貨物比服務要高貴些麼？你家裏的僕人是不是卑賤呢？給你搬行李的人是否因爲他爲你服務而就是個卑賤的人了麼？那末在店裏工作的店員，把貨物帶給你的商人，給你醫病的醫師，爲你管理你的金錢的銀行家，助你讀書的教師，保護你的官吏，爲你判決案件的法官，和爲你成家的父親，也是一樣的呢。第一，服務正如貨物：你在市場上賣出買進，正和你賣買貨物一樣，並且你應該像賣買貨物般一樣的誠實，光榮，自尊以買賣服務。第二，貨物代表服務。糧食之所以有價格因爲人民曾以勞力去生產它和輸送它。這對於空氣便不確實了，它是有價值的，但是不能出賣。所有貨物都代表着所效力的服務之多少；所以貨物和勞力站在水平線上，金錢只是獲得服務的一種方法而已。

七 什麼是營業？

因此，營業是過去，現在，未來的服務的交換。一切種類的營業——生產，運輸，專門工作，娛樂事業，或是任何一種以真正的以服務給予人家的事情——是高貴的。用這種方法誠實地接受金錢是高貴的，因爲就是既已爲人服務，就該得別人的服務。偷來的和賭贏的錢是不高貴的，因爲就其時他沒有爲人服務，却要求別人的服務。

Let us, then, look upon the honest business man who renders us service as just as honorable as the farmer, the manufacturer, or the scholar, if he renders us just as much service. Let us look upon the honest ricksha man as an honorable business man, selling us his services in return for money, which is a demand upon us for service *likewise*¹. Let us deal with money as a clean thing and with business as honorable and good for the country. Let us fight against the idea that business is a kind of gamble or robbery. Let us *despise*² the man who wants to get rich quick—that is not usually honest business—and *support*³ the idea that business is the rendering of service in exchange for service, the relative values of which are expressed in money.

8. The Dignity of Labor

No labor, then, is dishonorable when it is the giving of service to the community. It is only dishonorable when it is poorly done or when it is harmful or useless. We have just seen that the household servant, the ricksha man, the *coolie*⁴, the *boatman*⁵, the barber, the day laborer, are producers of services like the farmer or doctor or teacher, a merchant dealing in services like the merchant who sells gramophones or gold *watches*⁶ or rice. If we look down upon the workman or servant, we are only acknowledging that we still have some of the cruel injustice of those who despised *manual work*⁷, because they did not have to do it.

Modern nations are trying hard to get away from the idea that brain-work is more honorable than hand-work. People who did brain-work used to *dominate over*⁸ those who did manual work. The idea that a servant or employee may be ill treated—scolded or beaten or neglected or *underpaid*⁹—comes down from this injustice, and it dishonors not the one employed but the employer. The keeping of slave girls to do the manual work in the household is another example of this vicious idea. Here is a battle for justice and for a right stand before the

1 同樣。 2 輕視。 3 扶持。 4 苦力。 5 船夫。 6 錶。 7 手工。 8 統治。
9 低付(工資)。

那末讓我們看那誠實的商人，他爲我們服務，其可尊敬是和農夫，製造家，學者一樣的，如果他給予我們的也正如這許多服務一般。讓我們看誠實的人力車夫也和一個誠實的商人般，他把他的服務賣給我們而我們以金錢回報他，這金錢就可再要求我們的服務。讓我們看待金錢是一種純潔的東西，而看待商業爲於國有益的一種高貴事情。讓我們反對以商業爲一種賭博和盜竊的觀念吧。讓我們藐視要想急於致富的人——那往往是不誠實的商業——並且要扶助商業爲人服務以交易服務的觀念，其相對的價值是在金錢上表示出來。

八 勞工神聖

因此，當勞工，爲社會服務時，它不是卑鄙的。只是在他工作不良的時候，和所做的東西是有害或是無用的時候他是卑鄙的。我們只要看管家的僕人，人力車夫，苦力，船夫，理髮匠，散工，都是服務的生產者，正像農夫，教師，醫師，一個經營事業的商人，像售賣留聲機的商人，賣金錶的，賣米的一般。如果我們看輕工人或僕人，只好自己承認我們有些殘忍的不公平，這是那些瞧不起手工所有的觀念，因爲他們並沒有做過這種工作。

現代的國家正竭力掃除用腦工作比用手工作高貴的觀念。用腦工作的人民往往統治着那些用手工作的人。僕人和工人可以待遇很壞的觀念——可以加以罵詈，毆打，漠視或低付——是從這種不公道上來的，這不是對於工人的侮辱，却是對於雇主的侮辱。收留婢女在家裏操作是另一種不道德的觀念。這兒是一種爲公平爲正義的戰爭站在世界的面前，這個戰爭現代的

world, a battle which the young men and women of this modern age must fight. Begin at once. Do our coats and long finger nails mean "no work"? Then let us *get rid of*¹ them and show that we do not *subscribe*² to that *doctrine*³. China has enough hard tasks to do to keep us all working. Let us join the workers. Let us do all we can to *dignify*⁴ labor. Old and young, let us take our coats off, roll up our sleeves, show no fear of the good soil of China, and do some hard manual labor to prove that we honor the workman. Let us raise more rice and wheat, plant more shade trees and fruit orchards, build better roads, cultivate more beautiful flowers, and raise better *hens*⁵ and *chickens*⁶. It is not uncommon in these days to see a wealthy man in old clothes hard at work on a farm or driving a wagon or painting his house or oiling an engine. An employer goes among his men and "*lends a hand*."⁷ A *contractor*⁸ for a big bridge is right on the bridge with the laborers; he respects them and they respect him, and they drive every *rivet*⁹ honestly because they are respected. Only *mutual*¹⁰ respect will lead to mutual cooperation among various economic classes and to the promotion of the general welfare of the country.

9. "Service" the Watchword Today

We can easily see, therefore, why the watchword of modern civilization is "service." We have seen how every bit of honest business is increasing wealth or enjoyment, and every *stroke*¹¹ of honest work is rendering service. All good work and business are for society as well as for the individual. The nation prospers by the increase of sound business and honest labor. It is all a part of the patriotic duty of every citizen.

How much better, however, is the service that is rendered without thought of pay! A mother pours her life out in service for her children, only because she loves them. A good physician works for his patient far beyond what might be demanded. A good teacher does not

1 排除。 2 同意。 3 主義。 4 尊重。 5 母雞。 6 小雞。 7 援助。 8 承造者。 9 釘。 10 相互的。 11 動作。

青年男女必定要爲之奮鬥的。立即開始罷。我們的長袍和長指甲是不工作的意思麼？那末讓我們排除這種惡癖，表示我們不贊同那個主義。中國有許多勞苦的工作要我們全體工作呢。讓我們和工人聯合。讓我們盡力尊重勞工。老的和少的，讓我們脫掉長袍，捲起袖子，表示並不畏怕中國的良好土壤，並且做些勞苦的操作，以證明我們尊敬工人。讓我們栽培更多的米麥，種植更多的綠蔭樹，和菓樹，建築更好的道路，栽培更美麗的花卉，飼養更好的母鷄和小鷄。現在看見一個穿舊衣服的富人在田裏勞苦地工作，或是驅車，漆屋子，給機器抹油是很普通的。一個雇主要加入他的工人裏面，並且加以援助。一個大橋樑的承造者也要和工人們在橋上一起工作；他尊重他們，他們也尊敬他，並且他們誠實地釘着每一只的釘子，因爲他們是被尊敬着。只有相互的尊敬可致各種不同經濟狀況的階級之間相互合作，並且增進國家的一般福利。

九 服務是現代的口號

因此我們能夠很容易明白爲什麼現代文化的口號是服務。我們已曾見到如何每種誠實的商業人曾增加財富，或是快樂，並且誠實工作的每一動作是爲人服務的。一切良好的工作和商業是爲了自己，同時也爲了社會。因爲可靠的商業和誠實的勞工增加國家就富裕了。這都是每個市民的愛國責任的一部分。

可是，爲人服務而不想到報酬是多麼好呢！一個母親傾其一生爲她的孩子服務，只是因爲她愛他們，一個好的醫師爲了他的病人服務，遠過於病人所要求的。一個好的教師不只是想

think only of how much work his pay demands. A good student does more than his teacher expects, not less. A true patriot never asks what his country pays him or even how much it expects of him. The world will never forget how Sun Yat-Sen *generously*¹ gave up his position as president because he at that time thought it was the way to render further service to his beloved country of China.

10. The Golden Rule

Confucius, China's famous teacher, said, "Do not do to others as you would not wish done to yourself." There is a very similar saying in *Christianity*², called the Golden Rule: "Act toward others as you would like to have them act toward you." It is indeed the golden rule. In fact, the secret of human progress and happiness is found in love, *sympathy*³, generosity, sacrifice, and service for mankind.

11. The Red Cross

Many organizations have grown up from this spirit of sympathy and service. One of them is the Red Cross, which carries help to the sick or *wounded*⁴ or *starving*⁵, without regard to who they are, where they are, or why they are suffering. Countries all over the world have Red Cross organizations. Patriotic and generous boys and girls, men and women everywhere, support the Red Cross and other such organizations for service.

12. How students helped the Nation

The story of what American boys and girls did during the World War illustrates how students in Western countries helped their own nations. In one year the *Boy Scouts*⁶ raised over \$100,000,000 for the government by selling *Liberty Bonds*⁷. In New York State, when the Department of Agriculture began to plan how the state could furnish its share of food for the army and the *Allies*⁸,

1 大量地。 2 基督教。 3 同情。 4 受傷者。 5 饑乏。 6 童子軍。 7 自由公債。 8 協約軍。

着他的報酬要求他做多少工作。一個好的學生做着出於教師希望之外的更多的工作，而不會減少。一個真正的愛國者不問他的國家給與他的酬報多少，甚至也不問它希望他的工作多少。世界將永不忘掉孫逸仙博士怎樣大量地放棄他的總統地位，因為他在那時以為這是為他可愛的中國服務的方法。

十 金科玉律

孔夫子，中國的有名教師，說道，『己所不欲，勿施於人。』在基督教裏也有很相類的一句話，稱為金科玉律：『以其所欲施之於人。』這真是一條金科玉律。在事實上，人類進步和幸福的祕密是以愛情，大量，犧牲，為人類服務作基礎的。

十一 紅十字會

許多的組織由於同情，服務的精神而生長起來。其中之一是紅十字會，這個組織負着幫助病人，受傷者，餓夫的使命，不管他們是誰，住在那裏，和為什麼受了損害。世界各國都有紅十字會的組織。各地的愛國和好義的男女孩子，男子與婦人，扶助紅十字會和別的為社會服務的相類的組織。

十二 學生如何幫助國家

在歐洲大戰時美國的男女孩子所做的故事可以說明西方學生怎樣幫助他們自己的國家了。有一年童子軍為政府售賣自由公債的款額，就有一萬萬元以上。在紐約，當農業局正在計劃如何使本州能夠供給它的一分食品給自己的軍隊和協約軍的時

it had to know, first of all, how much grain, fruit, and vegetables were on hand, how much more land could be cultivated, how many workers would be needed. To get all this information meant taking an agricultural census¹. But a census costs time and money. Time was short, and there was no money available. Where could the state find workers who would ask no pay? In the schools, of course. Within five days every farmer in fifty-six counties² of the state had been "investigated"³ by school children. And within ten days the state had the information that it needed.

When summer came and the states did not have men workers enough to plow and sow and cultivate, who came to the rescue? The schools, of course. On hillsides and in valleys all over the country tents⁴ were pitched⁵, huts were built, and the boys of America went into summer quarters to fight with hoes⁶ and rakes⁷. In some states there were flying squadrons⁸, which were called on in emergencies⁹. If a farmer found that his tomatoes¹⁰ would spoil if not picked at once, he telephoned to the flying squadron. If another farmer found that the potato-bug¹¹ army was too much for him, he summoned¹² the flying squadron. And the squadron never failed.

Girls as well as boys were busy in the fields and in the schoolhouses. The schools of one town vied¹³ with the schools of a neighboring town. One class vied with another.

In 1925 the municipal government¹⁴ of Canton wanted to take a census of the population of the city. There had never been an accurate¹⁵ census taken in China, and a knowledge of the size and character of the population was most essential to the many new tasks that the government was going to undertake. The taking of a census of such a large city as Canton would require many workers and an elaborate procedure¹⁶. The policemen were too few and not prepared for the task. Where could the government find an army of intelligent workers? In the schools, of course. The students of all the middle

1 戶口調查。 2 郡。 3 調查。 4 帳幕。 5 紮好。 6 鋤。 7 耙。 8 飛行隊。
9 緊急時。 10 番茄。 11 馬鈴薯害蟲。 12 召喚。 13 比賽。 14 市政府。
15 準確的。 16 精密的程序。

候，首先要知道自己手頭究有多少米穀，菓蔬，還有多少土地可以墾植，還需要多少人工。要得到這種報告，必要調查農民的戶口。但是調查戶口既費錢又費時間。時間已是短促，並且沒有可加使用的金錢。在那裏能夠找到不要報酬的工人呢？當然在學校裏了。在五天以內本州五十六郡的農民就個個都被學生調查過了。在十天以內本州就有所需要的報告了。

夏天來了，州裏缺少足夠的人工去耕地，播種和栽培，誰來救助呢？當然又是學校了。全國的山地上，溪谷中都紮好帳幕，造起草舍，美國的男孩在暑期裏拿起鋤和耙奮鬥。有幾個州裏還有『飛行隊』，這是在緊急的事情發生時召集的。如果一個農夫着到他的番茄不立即採下就要壞了，他就可打電話給飛行隊。如果另一個農夫着到馬鈴薯的害蟲太多，他就可召喚飛行隊。並且飛行隊從不失約的。

女孩子也像男孩子一樣，在田地上和學校裏忙碌着。有時學校和鄰鎮的學校比賽，有時一級和別級比賽。

在一九二五年廣州的市政府要調查本市的人口。在中國從沒有準確的人口調查，人口的數目和品質是政府舉辦的許多新事業所必需的知識，像廣州之大，舉行調查定須要用許多的職員和精密的程序。警察太少了，並且也沒有做這個工作的預備，政府從那裏去找一隊伶俐的職員呢？當然在學校裏。市裏

schools, colleges, and professional schools in the city *volunteered*¹ their service. They divided the city into a number of *wards*² and the student body into *teams*³. Each team, *accompanied*⁴ by a policeman, went to the ward assigned to it and talked to the people about the importance and advantages of census-taking. They went from house to house, from shop to shop, to distribute *blanks*⁵, explained to the people how to fill them out at a specified time, and collected the blanks after they had been filled out. Within eight days, the census of Canton was taken.

Many students in various provinces of China open *free schools*⁶ to teach workmen. They travel from one place to another during *vacations*⁷, talking to people on patriotic subjects and arranging entertaining and *informing programs*⁸. These are all good ways to serve the nation.

13. A Chinese should serve his Country Every Day

To "serve" means to help or to work for. Most people are kept busy working for themselves. But no person should let a day go by without doing something that is for the good of his country. This is not so hard as it seems. China has more than four hundred *million*⁹ people, who live in small groups. You will never even see most of these millions, but you will always be a part of some group. You must serve your group, however large or small it is. The smallest groups of people are families; the next larger are neighborhoods, groups of families; and then come villages, towns, and cities. You spend part of your time at home with the rest of your family, part of it at school, and some of it on the *play-ground*¹⁰. You are *seldom*¹¹ alone.

Even when school days are over, young people will live and work and play in groups. Whether you work in an office, in a factory, in a hospital, in the army, you will be one worker among many. You will have to serve your country by serving the different groups of people with whom you study and work and play.

1 自願。 2 區。 3 隊。 4 陪伴。 5 調查表。 6 義務學校。 7 假期。 8 富於教誨的節目。 9 百萬。 10 運動場。 11 少有地。

中學，大學，職業學校的學生都自動去服務，他們把全市分爲若干區，學生分爲若干隊。每一隊伴着一個警察，到指定的區域去，告訴人民關於舉行調查人口的重要和利益。他們一家又一家，一店又一店的跑去，分發調查表，向人民說明要在一定的時期內填出，就在他們填出之後再去收集。只在八天之內，廣州的人口調查已完成了。

中國各省有許多學生都開了義務學校以教育工人。他們在假期從一地到另一地，告訴人民愛國的事情，並安排有趣和富於教誨的節目。這些都是服務國家的好方法。

十三 中國人應該天天爲國家服務

服務的意義就是扶助人家或是爲人家工作。許多人只是爲了自己而工作。但是每個人都不可讓一天溜過而一點也沒有做爲了本國利益而作的事情。這也並不怎樣難的。中國有四萬萬以上的人民，他們在小羣中生活着。你甚至四萬萬的大部分連看也沒有看見過，但是你却常是一些小羣中的一份子。你必定要爲你的一羣服務，無論它是大是小。人民的最小的一羣就是家庭；稍大是鄰里，（家族的組合），進而爲村落，鎮集，和城市。你費掉你一部分的時間在家裏和你的家族同居，一部分在學校裏，有些時間在運動場上。你很少單獨着的。

即使學校時期過去了以後，青年也得在人羣中生活，工作，遊戲。不論你在一個辦公處，一家工廠，一所醫院，一隊軍隊裏工作，你總是許多工作者中的一個。你就可由於爲人民的各種小羣服務——這些人民是和你一起讀書，工作和遊戲的——而已爲你的國家服務了。

It is natural for people to live in groups. So natural is it that when a person chooses to live entirely alone, it seems very queer. Such a person is called a *hermit*¹. Hermits make poor citizens, for living means getting and giving, helping and being helped.

14. Some Special Ways of Serving

We have already seen that serving is helping. This means that now, while you are in school, you must in some way help

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Your family. | 4. Your <i>club</i> ² . |
| 2. Your class. | 5. Your neighborhood. |
| 3. Your school. | 6. Your town, or village. |

If you suddenly left your home and went to a *distant*³ part of the country, in what way would your family, school, club, and town miss you? This is the best possible test for finding out how much or how little you are doing that is helpful to others.

Anything that a person does or says to make others safer, healthier, or happier is serving his country. If you live on a farm which sends fruit to the village or city, you can help—no one knows how many people—by seeing that no *dirt*⁴ or *impurity*⁵ of any kind touches this fruit. Fruit carries disease. If you can do something to get cleaner fruit into the market, you will be serving the community. You can help to destroy *pests*⁶ that kill vines and fruit trees so that these pests will not spread to other farms and villages.

You can help take care of the road which runs past your village. If a heavy rain has washed out a part of it, even one boy could repair the damage. If there is a bad place which might result in accidents to carts or *barrows*⁷ or animals or *cars*⁸, or a *washout*⁹ which you cannot repair, you can get help in repairing it or at least put up a sign, warning *passers-by*¹⁰ of the danger. Every well-regulated town has officials who are supposed to

1 隱士. 2 會社. 3 遠方的. 4 污物. 5 不潔. 6 害蟲. 7 手推車. 8 車輛. 9 被水衝壞的地方. 10 行人.

人民生活於小羣中是很自然的。這是那末自然，如果有人選擇他的住所要完全孤獨，看起來是奇怪的。這樣個人喚作隱士。隱士是可憐的公民，因為生活的意義是取人與人，助人和被助。

十四 一些特別的服務方法

我們已明白服務，就是幫助，現在其意就是你在學校裏的時候你必得想法幫助。

1. 你的家庭。
2. 你的同級。
3. 你的學校。
4. 你的會社。
5. 你的鄰里。
6. 你的鎮或村。

如果你突然離開你的家庭而到國中的遠地方去，那末你的家庭，學校，會社，和鎮集不見了你之後，會覺得什麼呢？這是最好的試驗，可以看出你助人的事情有多少。

一個人所做的事情，或所說的話可使別人更安全更健康，或更快活，就是為國家服務。如果你住在一個田莊上，這個田莊上要把菓子運到村裏或城裏去，你就可幫助——沒有人知道你能幫助多少人——注意有沒有污穢或不潔之物附着在菓子上。菓子帶着疾病的。如果你能夠做一點事，使市場上的菓子較為清潔，那你就已對社會服務了。你能夠幫助消滅葡萄樹上和菓子樹上的害蟲，那末這些害蟲不會蔓延到別的田莊和村落裏了。

你能夠幫助當心經過你村上的道路。如果大雨衝去了一部分，也許就是個孩子也能修補這個損害。如果那裏有一處壞的路面，其結果可使貨車，手推車，動物，或車輛，發生意外的事情的，或是有一處被水衝壞的地方，而你不能自己修補的，你就可請人家幫助你修補，或是至少做一個記號，警告經過的人注意危險。每個治理得很好的鎮上都有官吏注意道路和市

attend to roads, markets, clean food, and the like, but this does not change your own duty. So far as possible each person must be a volunteer town official. What you can do, you should do regardless of anyone else. Often by NOT doing a certain thing a person is really serving his community. If every man in the city threw his *newspaper*¹ into the street when he had finished reading it, the streets would become full of newspapers. By not doing this careless thing a man helps to keep the streets *attractive*² and to save the expense of gathering up the litter.

There is another special way in which everybody can help the country—by becoming an accurate information *spreader*³. So many people repeat what they hear without knowing or caring whether it is true that much harm is often done. A bank was once ruined by a “*run*”⁴ caused by a false report that the *cashier*⁵ had stolen some of the bank’s money. A good business rule would be a good citizenship rule:

When in doubt, say nothing. If you don’t know a thing, don’t tell it. Don’t THINK that you know a thing; be SURE that you know it.

One of the ancient sayings of Confucius is still good today:

What one knows, to know that one knows it;
What one does not know, to know that one does not know it;
This is true knowledge.

15. Master Some Task

If you want to serve, become efficient. Be a master of some sort of work. Know how to do it perfectly. Become skillful and quick at it. To master one thing will make it easier to be of service and easier to master the next thing.

Hands and brain need to be trained to “play” as well as to work. Whether it is learning to *ride horseback*⁶ or to swim or to play *basket ball*⁷ or *tennis*⁸, be sure that you have really mastered some form of wholesome play. A sixteen year old boy who applied for an office position

1 報紙。 2 美觀。 3 傳播人。 4 擠兌。 5 會計員。 6 騎馬。 7 籃球。 8 網球。

場，潔淨食物，和相似的事情，但是這並不是你的責任的變換。推而廣之要人人都是自動的鎮上官吏。你能做什麼，就做什麼，你不必注意別的事情。有時因為對於某種事情不做，這個人却是真正的為他的社會服務。如果市裏的每一個人都把新聞紙拋在街道上，當他看完了的時候，那末街上就要充滿着新聞紙了。因為不做這種不小心的事情，這一個人就是幫助保持街道的美觀和節省收集廢物的費用。

還有另一種特別的方法，人人都能以此幫助國家的，——就是做一個確實消息的傳播人。有許多的人重說他所聽得的話，却不知道，或是不當心它是否可靠，那是常常要有很大的害處的。一家銀行會為擠兌而倒閉，其原因是因為有一種不實的報告說行裏的會計偷了行中的一筆錢。一種好的商業規則就是好公民的規則：

懷疑時，不要多說，如果你不明白一件事，不要談論它。不要『以為』你明白這件事；要確信你明白這件事。孔夫子的古話裏有一句在現在還是有益的話：
知之為知之，不知為不知，是知也。

十五 要有一技之長

如果你要服務，必須要有效率。要對於幾種工作有所專精。知道怎樣把它做得完完全全。要做事巧妙而迅速。能夠對於一件事專精可使其全服務時更覺容易，而且對於別件事情也容易專精。

手和腦需要加以訓練，遊戲和工作都是一樣的。不論它是學騎馬，學游泳，學打籃球或網球，要確知你已真正地對於一切有益衛生的遊戲中已有幾種專精了。一個十六歲的孩子要謀一家公司職員的位置，人家就問他這個問題，『你有什麼事

was asked this question, "What one thing can you do as well as, or better than, any of your friends?" The boy thought for a long time, then shook his head doubtfully. "I *guess*¹ this isn't what you mean, but I'm the best bicycle rider in my crowd." The business man, by asking a few questions, learned that the boy knew how to take the best care of his bicycle, and how to do many kinds of difficult *stunts*². Finally he said: "If you have mastered one thing, you ought to be able to master another. We will see what you can do with this position." No person who has learned the art of mastering need make a failure of his life.

16. What will you do when School Days are Over?

All the time that a pupil is at school he should be *looking ahead*³ and planning what he is to do when his school days are over. The mastering of home work, of *gardening*⁴, and the like is merely practice work for the big things later on. All of it is helping to make him a *full-fledged*⁵ citizen. In a few years each boy must be prepared to do a man's work in the world, each girl to do a woman's work. Every pupil should study himself to see in what occupation he can be happiest and most useful. Begin planning today whether you will learn a trade, or study a profession, or go into business. Make a list of the different occupations that attract you. Find out from books, magazines, and people all that you can about each one. The more you learn about the busy world of workers, the easier it will be for you to make a wise *choice*⁶.

The true citizen will never be an idler, however rich he becomes. If you should make a list of the persons in your town who do no useful work, would it be a long list or a short one? So necessary is work for the success of a nation that several governments have passed laws requiring all *able-bodied men*⁷ to have an occupation. Farther on we shall read about some of the scientific and other professions. For most men and women of even the

1 臆測。 2 技藝。 3 向前瞻顧。 4 園藝。 5 健全的。 6 選擇。 7 體格健全。

情能做得和你所有的朋友一樣好，或是比他更好？』這個孩子想了好一會，於是很疑慮地搖搖他的頭：『我臆測這不是你發問的意思，但是我在我們一羣中是一個最好的騎腳踏車者。』這個商人，再問了一些問題，知道這個孩子明白怎樣當心他的腳踏車，並且明白怎樣去做許多種困難的技藝。最後他說：『如果你有一技的專精，你就能專精另一件。我們將看你對於這個位置能做些什麼事。』沒有人學習了需要的專精技藝而在一生中造成失敗的。

十六 學校時期過了以後你打算怎樣呢？

學生在學校裏的時間就要向前瞻顧和計劃在他學校時期過了以後打算怎樣。管理家務，園藝；及相類的事情只是為以後的大事情作練習工作而已。這都是幫他成爲一個健全的公民。在不多幾年裏每個男孩子必定要預備在世界上做一個成人的工作，每個女孩子則做一個婦人的工作。每個學生要自己研究，明白就什麼職業最爲快樂和最爲得益。在今日開始計劃罷，你還是學習商業，或是研究一種專門事業，或是加入商業。造一張可以吸引你的各種職業表。從書上，雜誌上人類中努力找出每一種的職業。關於工作者們的勞碌世界你研究得愈多，就使你聰明地選擇起來也愈容易。

真正的公民決不是個遊閒者，不論他是怎樣的富裕。如果你能造一張表，列舉你鎮上不做有益工作的人民，看它是長的呢，還是短的？國家的成功必需要工作，所以有些政府通過了法律要一切體格健全的人都有職業。推而廣之我們還要讀些科學和別的專門事業的知識。因爲大多數的受過高等教育的男子

highest training, serving one's country does not mean being a government official or employee, but just doing some real work in an honest occupation or profession. Shall we not follow the *advice*¹ of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, who said, "Students should set their minds, not on becoming prominent officials, but on accomplishing great tasks"?

17. A Chinese must master the Chinese Language

In order to serve your country and earn your living, you will need to master your language. To master it means to be able to speak, read, write, and understand it correctly. The boy who knows his lesson but cannot tell it, the girl who can tell what she saw but cannot write it, the person who cannot understand what he reads—all are a long way from being useful citizens. There are many doors between you and success. The *key*² to the first one is your language. Whether you are to serve your country as a doctor, a lawyer, a *bookkeeper*³, a farmer, this door must be opened first.

18. Using Your "Chance in Life"

A "chance in life" means a chance to become a *statesman*⁴, an artist, a physician, an inventor, or to do some other useful work. Many boys and girls are unable to use their opportunities, and to a great extent their lives are a failure. Others take advantage of every opportunity, work during all their *waking hours*⁵, and, if a very difficult position is presented to them, they rejoice in trying to conquer it. One of the most *expert*⁶ mining engineers was asked one day to explain his success. A far-away look came into his eyes as he answered the question simply. "My father was a *brilliant*⁷ engineer. A great *career*⁸ was ahead of him, but when I was five years old he was struck down by fever. The day before he died he put his hand in mine and said, 'I'll have to leave my chance to you, son; don't waste it.' As I grew up I firmly believed that I must do my own work and his too."

1 勸告。 2 鑰匙。 3 記賬員。 4 政治家。 5 醒著的時候。 6 熟練的。 7 有才能的。 8 事業。

和女子，爲國家服務，其意並不是做一個政府的官員或雇員，却只是在一種誠實的職業或專門職業中做一些真實的工作。我們難道不聽孫逸仙博士的勸告麼？他說，『學生要打定主意，不要做大官，却要做大事？』

十七 中國人應該專精中國文字

要爲你的國家服務，和解決你的生活，你必須要精熟你的國語。精熟國語的意思，就是能說，能讀，能寫，並且要準確地了解它。這個男孩子明白他的功課，但是不能講出來，這個女孩子能夠把她所看見的講出來，可是不能寫出來，這個人讀了書不能了解——都是去成爲有用公民之道尚遠哩。在你與成功之間有許多的門戶。開第一扇門的鑰匙就是國語。不論你服務國家的職業是個醫生，是個律師，是個計賬員，是個農夫，這扇門必得要先開的。

十八 使用你一生的機會

所謂一生的機會就是一種成爲政治家，藝術家，醫生，發明家，或是做別的有用事業的機會。許多男孩子和女孩子不能使用他們的機會，擴而大之，他們的生活就是個失敗。別的人獲得各種機會的利益，在他們醒着的時候總在工作，並且如果他們遭到一種很困難的地位，也樂於試爲克服。一個最熟練的鑲師，有一天人家請他說明他的成功。他的眼睛成爲很恍惚地，簡單地回答這個問題，『我的父親是個有名的工程師。在他面前就是偉大的事業，但是在我五歲時他因熱病而死了。在他臨死的那一天，他把他的手放在我的手上說道，「我要把我的機會遺留給你，我的兒子；不要浪費它。」等到我長大時，我堅定地相信我必定要做我自己的工作，和他的工作。我決不

I never wasted a moment; I never lost an opportunity to get ahead. I felt all the time that I was being pushed forward by some *invisible*¹ power. The greatest pleasure that I had as a young man was when my employer said to me that I was worth two ordinary assistants."

To use another person's chance as well as your own means to do your work a little better than you would otherwise do it. You cannot stop *halfway*² to success. Even if you have no special ability and become, as most of us do, a maker or seller of food or of clothing or of some other article of use, you must try a little harder to have your work as perfect as possible. A "chance in life" means a chance to do your best to serve your people in some way or other.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell the story of a man who in a humble position served his country well.
2. Why is the old-fashioned "middleman" a waste?
3. Money is a *medium*³ of exchange. What are the essentials of a good medium?
4. Tell a few of the ways in which you can serve
 - a. Your family.
 - b. Your school.
 - c. The nation.
5. Why should we promote the welfare of workmen and farmers?
6. How can boys and girls serve their country?
7. Suppose you were asked the question "What one thing can you do as well as or better than any of your friends?" What would you reply?

1 不可見的。 2 半途。 3 媒介。

浪費一會兒。我決不失去當前的機會。我覺得在無論何時有種不能見的力量推着我前進。我所有的最大快樂就是在年青時，當我的雇主對我說，我一人足抵兩個通常的助手時。』

利用別個人的機會像利用你自己的一樣，意思就是要把你的工作做得比平時好一點。你不能在成功之道上半途停止。像我們大部分般，即使你沒有特殊的能力，也要成功一個糧食，或是衣服，或是別的有用的東西的製造者，或是販賣者，你必要辛苦一點做你的工作，盡力使其完善。所謂『一生的機會』就是盡力用各種方法為你的人民服務的意思。

問題和練習

1. 講一件故事，陳述一個地位卑賤的人好好地為他的國家服務。
2. 為什麼舊式中人是浪費？
3. 錢是交易的媒介。好的媒介物要具有什麼要素？
4. 陳述幾種方法，你能夠服務於
 - a. 你的家庭。
 - b. 你的學校。
 - c. 國家。
5. 為什麼我們要增進工人，農人的幸福？
6. 男孩與女孩怎樣為他的國家服務？
7. 如果人家問你這個問題『你有什麼東西能夠做得跟你所有朋友一樣好或是更比他們好？』你怎樣回答呢？

CHAPTER XII

SCIENCE AND NATIONAL PROGRESS

1. What is Science?

There are many old men and women who are said to be good *weather prophets*¹. They have learned to guess with some correctness what the weather will be and they have some knowledge of how certain weather has usually followed certain conditions; but their knowledge is *inaccurate*,² *incomplete*,³ and poorly connected, so that one can scarcely call it science.

There are also weather bureaus now which daily give a very reliable *forecast*⁴ of the weather. This is the way they do it: The bureaus receive from all over a large area of land and sea (including foreign countries) daily reports upon the condition of the air. They put together upon maps on a large scale this exact information about what the wind is doing and preparing to do. They discover, for example, that the *air pressure*⁵ is low in the north and high in the south and thus know that there is going to be more wind blowing from north to south. If this is from a dry, cold region, it means that certain regions are going to have dry and cooler weather. They may see also that the low-pressure southern area has wind blowing around it in great circles—circles so large perhaps that each station thinks its wind is blowing in a fixed straight line. Perhaps they can see that the center of these great circles of wind is a little farther east than it was the day before. Thus they know that this is really a big storm moving east, and they know what to telegraph to all eastern parts about the dangers to ships, or whether the wind will bring the farmers rain or not, cold weather or *warm*,⁶ etc. All this *prophecy*⁷ is based upon a knowledge so nearly complete, so accurate, and so connected that it may be called science.

1 天氣預言家。 2 不準確。 3 不完全。 4 預測。 5 氣壓。 6 變和的。 7 預言。

第十二章 科學與國家的進步

一 科學是什麼？

有許多老翁和老婦人被稱為良好的天氣預言家。他們預測天氣也有時準確地知道天氣的轉變，並且他們也有在某種情形之後就跟着某種天氣的知識；但是他們的知識却不準確，不完全，和不能聯繫的，所以很難稱之為科學。

現在還有天文臺，它天天報告一個很可靠的天氣預測。下面是他們工作的方法：天文臺接受海陸各地（包括外國）的關於氣象的每日報告。他們把這些風正在做什麼，與準備做什麼的準確報告一起放在鉅大的地圖上。例如他們發現北方的氣壓低，南方的氣壓高，如此就知道正有許多風從北吹到南方去了。如果這風是從乾燥，寒冷的區域裏吹來的，就是在某區域裏要有個乾燥而寒冷的天氣了。他們也許也看到低氣壓的南方區域正有旋風圍繞着——這個旋轉是那末巨大也許每個碇泊所以為這陣風正以有定的直線吹着。也許他們能夠見到這陣大旋風的中心比上一天稍偏東行。所以他們就知道這是一陣向東移進的暴烈風雨，他們就知道怎樣打電報給一切東區，告訴船隻的危險，或是這陣風是否會把雨帶給農夫，天氣還是熱還是冷，等等的事情。一切的這種預言以一種這樣近於完全這樣準確，和這樣的有聯系的知識為基礎，那是可以稱為科學的。

2. Arts and Sciences

An old *definition*¹ of science is "organized knowledge." One who can take good pictures has learned the art of *photography*²; one who can play well on the *piano*³ has learned the art of piano-playing; one who can tie sailors' *knots*⁴ has learned the art of knot-tying; one who can walk a *tight rope*⁵ has learned the art of balancing; one who can prepare a good meal has learned the art of cooking; and so on. In each case the skilled person may or may not know much about how or why each act is performed. He may have the art, but not the science that lies under it. An art is the skill and ability to do something; a science is a mass of organized knowledge. In colleges we speak of arts and sciences, because some subjects have chiefly to do with how to accomplish something, such as writing *essays*⁶, speaking foreign languages, painting pictures, and debating difficult questions, while other subjects have chiefly to do with acquiring exact and *systematic*⁷ knowledge. As a matter of fact, however, all skillful accomplishment must have real knowledge to support and improve it, and all science requires a large amount of skill to make it possible or worth while. We cannot really separate our studies into "*accomplishments*⁸" and "*pure knowledge*⁹." (The word "art" is often used in a narrower sense, to mean painting and related arts.)

3. The Scientific Age

Here is a *clipping*¹⁰ from a recent newspaper:

A *Disaster Investigation Bureau*¹¹ has been established in Kyoto under the management of the *Kyoto Imperial University*¹². The new institution has in view the prevention of disasters by scientific knowledge and experience. According to returns published by the University, Japan suffers a loss from disasters of various kinds of 200,000,000 yen per year.

1 定義. 2 攝影術. 3 鋼琴. 4 結. 5 緊窄的繩索. 6 散文. 7 有系統的. 8 才藝. 9 純粹學問. 10 摘錄. 11 災難調查所. 12 西京帝國大學.

二 藝術與科學

· 科學的舊定義是『有組織的知識。』一個人學過攝影術的可以攝一張很好的照相；一個人學過彈鋼琴的藝術的就可以彈得很好；一個人學過打結藝術的就能夠打一個水手結；一個人學過平均藝術的就能夠在繩索上走；一個人學過做菜的藝術的就能夠準備美味的菜肴；以此類推。在每種情形上這個精巧的人對於怎樣能使他的動作成功，和成功的理由也許知道，也許不大知道。他可以有這種藝術，但是其根據却不是科學。藝術是一種做一些事情的技巧和能力；而科學是一片有組織的知識。在大學裏，我們說着藝術和科學，因為有幾種科目首先要知道怎樣去完成一些事情，好像寫散文，說外國話，畫圖，辯論困難的問題，還有別的科目都首先要去獲得準確和有系統的知識。在事實上，無論如何，一切技術上的成就必要有真正的知識去扶助和改良，一切科學也要大量的技巧以使其可能或有價值。我們不能真正分開我們的研究爲『才藝』和『純粹學問。』（『藝術』一字常常作狹義解，僅指圖畫和其他相關的藝術。）

三 科學時代

這兒是最近報紙上的摘錄：

西京已建立災難調查所，由西京帝國大學管理。此新設之機關正着眼於以科學知識與經驗防止災難。依據該大學所刊行之報告書，日本每年由各種災難而損失之額爲二萬萬元。

Whether this is true or not, it shows how important science is considered to be in this modern age. Such a piece of news a generation ago would have made people laugh. The world has only recently found out how important science is. We may now say that one of the chief differences between our time and earlier times is the place that science has taken in everything. Science is changing the world very rapidly. It is both constructive and destructive. It *enables*¹ the people of today to do big things, both good and bad. Modern nations, therefore, have both to *acquire*² science and to control its uses.

4. Development of Science in the West

The world has been fighting its way up century by century from shameful darkness and poverty toward the age of brightness and plenty. Science is one of its great *weapons*³, or, we may say, one of the *winches*⁴ by which it has lifted itself.

Mr. H. G. Wells, in his "*Outline of History*"⁵, has told in an interesting way of the slow and painful progress of Europe toward the scientific age. As we in Asia today are getting the full benefit of that long struggle, we should be interested in that story. Very briefly it is as follows:

The Greeks of over two thousand years ago so developed *logic*⁶ and mathematics that the foundations of science were laid. The great leaders of Greece and *Macedonia*⁷ actually decided to proceed to a systematic development of scientific knowledge. They had the basis, the organization, and the beginning of scientific method. Then came *internal wars*⁸; *expansion*⁹ under Alexander the Great, the *break-up of his empire*¹⁰, and the scattering of all these scientific forces. These precious beginnings of science were preserved in records and in scattered colleges in many countries, but in this condition their real value was not seen. One city founded by Alexander away off in Egypt, and named Alexandria after him, developed a wonderful library. Here again was a good foundation for scientific development, but some of the

1 使能。 2 獲得。 3 兵器。 4 起貨機。 5 世界史綱。 6 論理學。 7 馬其頓。 8 內戰。 9 擴張領土。 10 帝國的分裂。

不管這個報告確實與否，它說明在現代科學該有怎樣的重要。這樣一段新聞在前一代就要使人民失笑了。世界只是在最近才找出科學有怎樣的重要。現在我們可以說，我們的時代和從前的大不同首在科學在各種事物上所佔的地位。科學很快地把世界變換過來了。它既是建設的，又是破壞的。它使今日的人民有能力去做巨大的事情，不論好的或是壞的。現代國家所以既要獲得科學和管理它的用途。

四 西洋科學的發展

世界一代代地從可恥的黑暗和貧窮裏奮鬥出來，向着光明與富裕的時代走去。科學就是它的大兵器之一，或是我們可以說，是一架起貨機，用它來升高世界的。

威爾斯先生在他的世界史綱裏曾以一種有趣的方法陳述歐洲走向科學時代的遲緩和苦痛的進步。而我們住在亞洲的今天却得到那個由長期掙扎而來的完全利益，我們應該注意那歷史。很簡短地寫在下面：

兩千年以前的希臘這樣地發展論理學和數學，於是科學的基礎就奠定了。希臘和馬其頓的偉大首領決意進行有系統的科學知識的發展。它們才有了基礎，組織，和科學方法的開始。後來發生了內戰，亞歷山大的擴張土地，和他的帝國之破裂，和一切科學力量的分散。這些可珍貴的科學起始就保存在記錄裏，並且散布於各國的學院裏，只是在這種情形下，它的真價值看不出來的。亞歷山大在遙遠的埃及建立了一個城市，就以他的名字名之為亞歷山特里亞，這個城市發展了可驚的圖書館。這兒再是科學發展的良好基礎，但是有幾種希臘最重要的

most important ideas of the Greeks were not present. Little that was new was discovered, and finally the great library was destroyed. Then, again after many centuries, the Arabians developed a good beginning of science upon those early elements. When the Mohammedans carried their religion into Europe *by way of*¹ Spain, they carried this science with them. They had not developed it very far, and they really needed the help of European people to carry it farther. But they were turned back at the battle of Tours, in France; and thus both Mohammedanism and the Arabian science were driven back from Europe. Unfortunately Europe had not received the Greek scientific spirit through the Romans, who had conquered Greece and taken over her arts. Rome was interested more in law, organization, business, and literature; she did not catch the scientific spirit.

The *wild Northern people*² came down upon Rome and began to destroy her civilization. The Christian Church preserved most of the good things of that civilization and began to civilize the Northern barbarians. Europe was soon full of vigorous people, with Latin as a common *written language*³, with ideas of truth and honor, of law and order, of education and civilization. The field was thus prepared for that science which was unfortunately driven back with the Mohammedans. And so the darkness continued until the *Crusaders*⁴ fought with the Turks and brought ideas back into Europe with them. The Turks *captured*⁵ Constantinople and scattered westward the stores of old Greek ideas, and the opening of the new ocean routes awakened people's minds. Thus the field was planted, and these long-neglected *seeds*⁶ of science began to grow rapidly. That was the beginning of Western scientific ideas, methods, and knowledge.

5. China's Need for Science

China, as one of the modern family of nations, must adopt a science program. Look back through the chapters we have been studying and see how much of all

1 取道。 2 野蠻的北方民族(日耳曼民族)。 3 寫作文字。 4 十字軍。 5 攻佔。 6 種子。

思想却不存在了。新發明的很少，最後這個偉大的圖書館燬滅了。以後再在許多世紀之後，阿拉伯人發展了科學的開始，依據着初期的因素。當回教取道西班牙以行教歐洲時，他們帶着這種科學一起搬來。他們沒有把科學發展得很遠，他們真的需要歐洲人的幫助，把它推行到更遠的地方去。但是他在法國的都耳之戰後回去了；於是回教和阿拉伯科學都一起從歐洲趕回去了。很不幸地歐洲沒有從羅馬人那裏接受希臘的科學精神，羅馬人是曾征服了希臘而承受她的藝術的。羅馬對於法律，組織，商業和文學較爲有興味；她也沒有把握住這種科學精神。

野蠻的北方民族襲擊羅馬，開始摧殘她的文化。基督教會保存了這個文化的大部分的好東西，並且起頭開化這種北方的野蠻人。歐洲於是立即充滿了強壯的人民，以拉丁文爲普通的寫作文字，有着真實和光榮的思想，充滿着法律和秩序，教育和文化。這個園地是這樣地爲科學——這種東西是曾與回教徒一起驅逐回去的——而準備着了。於是暗黑繼續着，直至十字軍和土耳其作戰，方將理想帶回歐洲。土耳其人攻佔了君士坦丁堡，把古老的希臘思想的積儲向西方分散，並且新航路的開關喚醒了人民的思想。於是這個園地被種植了，這個久遭漠視的科學種子就開始迅速地生長了。那就是西洋科學思想，方法，和知識的開始。

五 中國需要科學

中國既是現代國家中的一員，必得要採取科學的計劃。回過去把我們已曾讀過的幾章看一下，看我們要爲中國做的許多事情有多少要靠着科學知識的。如果沒有科學去清除道路企

that we want to do for China depends upon scientific knowledge. What can enterprise and energy accomplish without science to make the road clear? What use is there in saving and investing if we do not understand materials and processes? How can we hope to conserve our resources or even to protect ourselves without a *mastery*¹ of the great principles of modern science?

When Dr. Paul Monroe recently investigated the educational system for the Chinese government, he declared that the greatest weakness of Chinese schools was the teaching of science. He asked, "How can you lead your nation forward into the modern world without science?"²

Science is necessary for the progress of China. Let us see, therefore, what kinds of science are needed—some of the most important of them, at least—and how these sciences can be mastered by our future citizens.

6. Pure Science and Applied Science²

A college professor was seen picking up shells on a *seabeach*³, just as many children also were doing. Someone asked him, "Why do you gather shells as a child does?" He replied: "I am collecting and studying them. That is the branch of science in which I am most interested. I know more about shells than any other person in this country." Then he was asked, "How are you going to use your knowledge of shells?" The professor answered: "I do not use it. I only acquire and record it. This is pure, not applied, science." He was getting scientific knowledge without a definite practical purpose in view. That knowledge had practical values, but he was only studying the science itself, and not the uses to which it might be put.

When Edison was developing electric lights, he saw that he needed a certain kind of fine *fiber*⁴. He believed that he might find this in some undiscovered kind of bamboo. He knew that the development of electric

1 通曉。 2 應用科學。 3 海灘。 4 纖維。

業性和奮發的精力能夠完成什麼呢？如果我們不了解物質和方法，儲蓄和投資有什麼用呢？如果不能通曉現代科學的偉大原理，我們怎樣能希望保存我們的富源或是甚至於保護我們自身呢？

當孟維博士最近為中國政府考察教育系統時，他宣稱中國學校的最大弱點是在『科學的教導。』他問，『你怎麼能夠在現代的世界中引導你的國家情形而沒有科學呢？』

科學是為中國的進步所必須的。所以，讓我們看吧，什麼一種科學是需要的——科學中最重要的一種，至少——和怎樣這些科學能為未來的公民所精熟。

六 純粹科學與應用科學

有人看見一位大學教授在海灘上拾貝殼，正像許多孩子所做的一般。人家就問他，『你為什麼像小孩般收集貝殼呢？』他回答：『我正在收集它和研究它，那是科學的一技，我對於它是極感興趣的。關於貝殼的知識我比國中無論那一個人要多知道一些。』於是人家又問他，『你準備怎樣應用你對於貝殼的知識呢？』這位教授回答：『我不用它。我只要得到這種知識而記下來。這是種純粹科學，不是應用的。』他獲得了科學知識却沒有一定的實用目的。那種科學是有實用的價值地，但是他只是研究科學的本身，而不研究它應有的效用。

當愛迪生正在發明電燈時，他知道需要某種細緻的纖維。他相信可以在一些未經發見的竹子裏尋到。他知道電燈的發明

lights was of the greatest importance both to his country and to all the world; he therefore chose enterprising scientific men and sent them to Africa and other parts of the world to study bamboos. This is said to have cost him \$100,000 in gold. It was a big piece of scientific work undertaken for a definite practical purpose. Edison was studying a science for its uses.

Not all science is useful, but no one knows what scientific fact is going to be needed next. The more we know, the better chance we have of solving any problem. We gather all the information we can, because any part of it may be called for at any time. We cannot separate pure science from applied science. Science is in systems. You must study a system as a *unit*¹. You cannot select *beforehand*² exactly what is going to be useful to you. Although it is the usefulness of science that makes it so important, you must study a great deal that does not appear to have any value. We *guide*³ our searches and our studies as much as possible in directions which are the most *promising*⁴, but we are constantly dealing with facts which, like the collection of shells, seem to have no value. Much of our science is pure science first and comes to be applied *later*⁵.

The important thing is that China's young men and women shall have the scientific spirit. They must master the scientific knowledge which is already available, they must keep up with the rapid advance of science in other countries, and they must push forward the scientific study of China herself. They must give more attention to both pure science and applied science.

7. What is the Scientific Spirit?

The real scientist seeks knowledge without fear or *prejudice*⁶. He does not allow anything to prevent him from getting the exact truth; he is *observant*⁷; he searches for facts and continues his search *persistently*⁸ and systematically; he *checks up*⁹ and corrects himself

1 單位。 2 預先地。 3 引導。 4 有望的。 5 較後的。 6 偏見。 7 觀察銳敏的。 8 持久地。 9 檢閱。

對於國家對於世界都有很大的重要性的；於是他選擇有冒險性的科學訓練的人，派他們到非洲和世界各地去研究竹子。這件事據說就費了他十萬金元。這是爲了一定的實用目的而從事的巨大科學工作。愛迪生是爲了科學的應用而研究科學的。

一切科學不都是有用的，但是沒有一個人知道什麼一種科學事實下去要需要它的。我們知道得越多，關於解決任何問題我們也有更好的機會。我們盡力收集一切知識，因爲它的任何一部分在某一時期內也許要有用的。我們不能把純粹科學與應用科學分開。科學是有系統的。你必要研究一個系統好像一個單位般。你們不能預先進確地選擇什麼一種科學將來與你有用的。雖然科學的效用造成它的重要，你還得研究許多顯不出有什麼價值的。我們要盡力引導我們的探求和我們的研究向最有希望的方向去，但是我們常常要從事收集貝殼般看起來沒有價值的事實。我們的科學中有許多在起先是純粹科學而在後來成爲應用的。

重要的事情是中國的青年男女要有科學精神。他們一定要精熟於已加利用的科學知識。他們一定要趕及別國科學的迅速前進，並且他們一定要推進中國的科學研究。他們一定要大大注意不論純粹科學和應用科學。

七 科學精神是什麼？

真正的科學家尋究知識沒有恐懼或偏見。他不允許任何事物阻礙他去獲得精密的真理；他是個觀察銳敏的；他尋究事實，並且繼續他的尋求持久地，有系統地；他檢閱，改正自己

without shame or selfishness; he boldly publishes the facts that he finds in his *laboratory*¹ or in his study, no matter what it may cost him.

Here is a story of a judge who showed the scientific spirit:

A policeman brought forward a stranger who *was accused*² of *murder*³. He was seen *quarreling*⁴ with the murdered man. They started across a bridge alone. The stranger came running back. The other man was taken from the river dead. The stranger was asked what happened to the man, but he only replied, "I do not know." The judge asked for *witnesses*⁵, but there were none.

Then a man said to the judge: "The murdered man was my friend. If you will *hang*⁶ this murderer, I will give you ten thousand dollars."

The judge replied: "You are an enemy of truth and justice. He may be guilty, but I want facts and not money to prove it."

Then the stranger spoke for himself. He told about his poor mother, whose heart would be broken, and about his family, who would be fatherless if he were *convicted*⁷. To this the judge replied, "You may be *innocent*⁸, but I want facts and not *feelings*⁹ to prove it."

Then a man *whispered*¹⁰ to the judge that all the city was angry against the stranger, and that if he were not convicted their opinion of the judge would be very *harsh*¹¹, and his life would ever after be most unpleasant. To this the judge replied: "It is not I who am on *trial*¹² here. I am not thinking about myself. I want facts about this man. Let us keep all our attention upon the case."

A man rushed into the *courtroom*¹³ and cried, "If you do not convict that man, I will kill you!"

The judge's reply was: "I am seeking facts. Fear does not produce facts, and I will therefore give no attention to your *threats*¹⁴."

1 實驗室。 2 被控告。 3 殺人。 4 爭鬧。 5 證據。 6 絞死。 7 定罪。 8 無罪的。 9 感情。 10 密語。 11 嚴酷的。 12 審判。 13 法庭。 14 恐嚇。

沒有一點害羞和自私；他勇敢地刊行他在實驗室，或研究而得的事實，不管它有多少的代價。

這兒是一位法官的故事，他表現着科學精神：

一個警察帶上一個異鄉人，他被控告殺人。人家看見他和這個被殺的人爭鬧。他們跑過一頂橋。這個異鄉人跑了回來。另一個却在河裏撈起來，已是死了。人家問這個異鄉人這個人碰到了什麼事，可是他只是回答，『我不知道。』這個法官要問證據，但却沒有。

於是一個人對法官說：『這個被害人是我的朋友。如果你把這個殺人犯絞死，我可以給你一萬塊錢。』

這位法官回答：『你是個真理與公平的仇敵。他也許是犯罪的，但是我要事實作證，不要金錢作證。』

於是這個異鄉人自述起來。他講起他可憐的娘，她的心要碎了，又講到他的家庭，都要變成孤兒了，如果他定了罪。這幾句話這位法官回答，『你也許是無罪的，但是我要事實作證，不要感情。』

於是一個人偷偷地告訴法官說全城的人都恨這個異鄉人，如果不把他定罪，他們對於法官的意見將有嚴酷的批評，並且他的生活從此以後必將大為不愉快。對於這幾句話，這位法官回答：『這不是我在這兒審判。我並不想到自己。關於這個人我要事實。讓我們盡力注意這件案子吧。』

一個人衝進法庭喊着，『如果你不把那個人定罪，我要殺死你！』

這位法官的回答是：『我在找尋事實。恐懼不能產生事實的，所以我對於你的恐嚇毫不注意。』

Then he proceeded to gather facts,—the facts that all the others had neglected or refused to take the time to consider. He listened to even the *humblest person*¹ who could tell him anything. He got a *description*² of all the region about the bridge. He got the names of all the people who might have been looking at the bridge from windows in houses near or from afar. He had the bridge described in detail. He called everybody who might know anything about the matter or might have seen any part of it. Out of all this long investigation he got many facts bearing on the subject. One of them was so important as to decide the case.

“Facts have been *obtained*³,” said the judge. “The bridge had just been painted. The paint at the other end was still *wet*⁴. The paint on the dead man’s shoes shows that he went into the water from near the other end, while the clean *soles*⁵ of this stranger’s shoes show that he had not yet been so far along the bridge. He is cleared, and this city is taught a lesson in patient, systematic, and honest investigation.”

8. China needs Scientists

China needs a large number of men and women working in this spirit of persistent and thorough search to add to the present sum of scientific knowledge. They must master this and then push its *limits*⁶ farther out.

There are many important problems in China that cannot be solved until this information is secured. For example, China’s tea trade has been declining. The world used to drink only Chinese tea, and now it is drinking less and less of it, while *fortunes*⁷ are made in tea from other countries. Here is work for Chinese scientists. They must study the tea trade, the tea industry, and the tea plants. There may still be in China some undiscovered plants of great value. There may be unknown diseases injuring the tea. There may be something

1 最卑賤的人。 2 敘述。 3 漆好。 4 溼的。 5 鞋底。 6 範圍。 7 致富。

於是他進行搜集事實——這事實是別人都不注意的，或是拒絕費時間去考慮。他甚至細聽最卑賤的人的話，如果他能夠告訴他一點東西。他得到了一種關於這座橋四周區域的敘述。他把能從屋子的窗戶裏看到橋上的遠近各處人民的名字都弄明白。他把這座橋瑣細地描寫出來。關於這件事凡是能夠知道一點的，或是會看見事實的一部分的人他都去召來。在這長期偵查裏他獲得加於此案上的許多事實。其中之一是這樣的重要，就依此判解案件的。

『事實已得到了，』這位法官說。『這座橋剛剛漆好。另一端的漆還沒有乾。這個死人的鞋上的漆表示他在近於別一端的地方落水的，而這個異鄉人的乾淨的鞋底表示他還沒有沿橋走得那末遠。他的罪洗清了，而這個城市學到了一種忍耐，有系統，和誠實偵查的教訓。』

八 中國需要科學家

中國需要大量的男子和女子用一種堅持的精神工作，並要從探究中得以加增現在科學知識的數量。他們必定要精此，並且把它的範圍推擴得更遠。

在中國有許多重要的問題不能解決，除非這種知識得以確立。例如，中國的茶葉貿易已衰落了。從前世界只用中國茶，而現在却逐漸在減少了，別的國家却靠着茶葉致富。這兒是中國科學家的工作。他們必得研究茶葉貿易，茶葉工業，和茶樹的種植。也許中國仍有些未經發見的有極大價值的植物，也許有不知道的疾病損害茶葉。也許土壤裏方法上，裝置上還缺

lacking in the soil or in the process or in the packing. Only thoroughly scientific study and *experiment*¹ will solve the problem and *restore*² this trade to China. The solution may come from *wide-awake*³ tea merchants and growers, or it may come from some student of *botany*⁴ who is collecting and studying plants.

The work that is now being done in the scientific study of silk production is a good example of how China can profit from scientific work. One of the diseases of *silk-worms*⁵ is passed on from one generation to another through the *eggs*⁶. It has been common for a man to raise his worms most carefully and upon the best *mulleberry leaves*⁷, only to have 80 per cent or even 90 per cent of them die before they have *spun*⁸ their silk, thus wasting all those worms, the food fed to them, and the time and labor and equipment of the owner. Scientists have found that this is a *germ*⁹ disease and the germs can be found under the *microscope*¹⁰; therefore scientists in silk laboratories are saving China great loss in the following manner:

A large number of *moths*¹¹ are put to laying eggs under little cups. After they have finished, these moths are examined under the microscope. All the eggs laid by diseased moths are destroyed, and a new generation is raised from only those which showed no disease. From this second generation the diseased ones, now very few are again taken out. The longer this examination is continued, the nearer they get to a 100 per cent pure breed of worms, with no deaths or even weak worms, and consequently no loss of silk from this disease. That is only one of the features of scientific silk improvement.

9. A Future for Chinese Scientists

The age and extent of China make it a wonderful field for scientific work. Already scientists have come from all over the world to *carry on*¹² investigations in China. Many of them have become famous for their scientific work in China, and yet they have only *scratched*¹³ the *surface*¹⁴ of the knowledge that awaits discovery.

1 實驗. 2 復興. 3 清醒. 4 植物系. 5 蠶. 6 卵. 7 桑葉. 8 吐. 9 細菌. 10 顯微鏡. 11 蛾. 12 繼續. 13 抓著. 14 表面.

少什麼東西。只有澈底的科學研究和實驗能解決這個問題與復興中國的茶業。這個解決也許要從清醒的茶商和產茶者方面得來，也許要從植物系學生之搜集和研究種植者方面得來。

現已着手之絲產科學研究的工作是中國怎樣從科學工作裏獲利的良好例子。蠶有一種病是從卵上一代代傳下去的。人家養蠶通常是最最當心的，並以最好的桑葉喂它，却有百分之八十，或百分之九十的蠶兒在它們沒有吐絲之前死掉，這樣就是浪費了這些蠶，浪費了喂養它的食料，和養蠶人的時間，勞力，與設備。科學家已找到這是種黴菌病，那種黴菌是能夠在顯微鏡之下找到的；於是在蠶絲實驗室裏的科學家為中國節省了許多損失。其方法如下：

把大量的蛾放在小杯子裏產卵。在它們產卵完畢之後，把蛾兒用顯微鏡審查。凡是病蛾產的卵都消滅，所收養的新的一代只是看出來並無疾病的。第二代的病卵又拿來取出，不過那是很少的了。這種檢查的繼續時期愈長，其百分比也愈近於百分之百的純淨蠶卵，其中沒有死掉也沒有脆弱的，結果由於疾病的損失也沒有了。那不過是科學的蠶絲改良法的一種而已。

九 中國科學家的將來

中國之年代和幅員使它成為科學研究的奇怪園地。科學家都已從世界各地跑來在中國繼續考察。其中有許多因為他們在中國的科學工作而成了名，不過他們還只是抓着等待發見的科學知識的表面罷了。

Some men have made surveys of the *geology*¹ of China, but it has been hastily done. A real geological survey, such as has been made in Western countries, is yet to be made in China. A company was formed some time ago to develop a *strip of country*² in Yunnan. This company, with twenty-five engineers, spent two years at work on the *exploration*³ survey alone. That shows what some people mean by thorough study.

A great deal of work has been done in discovering and recording the *variations*⁴ of the *magnetic needle*⁵ all over China. The *Carnegie Institution*⁶, Washington, D.C.,⁷ is doing this work all over the world. It is an example of how scientific work sometimes has to be carried on over long periods and over great areas before its full results are shown. The needle varies from time to time and from place to place. Not only do surveyors and ships' masters want to know about its variations, but also the whole world waits for further *explanations*⁸ concerning the earth's magnetism and related facts.

When a *botanist*⁹ discovers a new plant, he is proud. He is on the road to fame. You may not realize it, but it is almost certain that you cannot find among the plants that grow near your school a single one of any kind that is not already known to the botanists of the world. And yet recently a botanist in Hainan discovered twenty-five plants that were new to science. There are probably hundreds of new plants in China waiting for scientists to discover and study them. Some of these may be of great value to mankind. The *li-chih*¹⁰, one of the best of all fruits, is one of China's many contributions to the world.

Thus we see that China needs scientists not only for herself but for the world. Fame awaits many a young man and woman in these lines. Let the girls not forget that here is a field that is open equally to men and women. Radium offers an example of a wonderful discovery made by a woman (*Madame Curie*¹¹ of Paris). There are a few women in China now who are making great progress in scientific investigation.

1 地質。 2 一塊地土。 3 探究。 4 變化。 5 磁針。 6 卡尼治研究院。 7 Distr. of Columbia. 8 說明。 9 植物學家。 10 荔枝。 11 居禮夫人。

有些人調查中國的地質，但是它做得太急促了。像西洋各國所做般的真正的地質調查在中國還要等着做呢。好多時前組織了一家公司去開發雲南的一塊地土。這家公司帶着二十五個工程師，費了兩年的工夫單是做着探究測量的工作。那表示人們對於徹底研究的意義了。關於中國各地的磁針的發明和紀錄其變化已做了許多的工作了。華盛頓的卡尼治研究院正做着這種工作，研究全世界的磁針這是一種例子，說明科學工作有時會繼續着一個長長的時期，和周徧極大的面積，在它的完全結果尚未明白以前。這個磁針一時與一時不同，一地與一地互異。不單是測量員和船主要曉得它的變化，就是整個的世界也等待着關於瓦磁和相關事實有進一步的說明。

當一個植物學家發見一種新植物的時候，他是很得意的。他是在成名的路上了。你也許不懂得它，但是差不多可以確定，你不能在生在你學校旁邊的植物中找出這獨有的任何一種植物為世界植物學家所未曾知道的。可是最近一位植物學家在海南發見了二十五種植物為科學上之新發見。顯然中國有幾百種的植物正等着科學家去發見和研究它們。其中也許有幾種對於人類有大價值的。荔枝是最好菓子中的一種，也是中國暢銷全球的藥品中之一。

所以我們明白中國需要科學家不但為了她自己，却也為了世界。在這條線上名譽正等着許多的青年男女呢。讓女孩們不要忘掉這兒是一片園地，對於男女是平等地公開的。鑄就為婦人造成偉大發明的例子（巴黎的居禮夫人。）在中國現在也有很少的幾個婦人在科學研究上造成偉大的進步哩。

10. Science in Medicine

Medicine is a branch of science which is of great importance to the welfare of the nation, one in which Chinese have shown themselves strong, one in which there are great discoveries yet to be made, one which offers a great deal of material for study, and one which requires an enormous number of workers as well as of *special investigators*¹. The *old-style*² doctors have a large number of medicines,—more, it is said, than the medicines of all the Western countries,—and yet no complete scientific study of them has been made. That is a piece of scientific work of great size and probably of world-wide importance. It will require *thorough preparation*³, persistent and honest work, and the cooperation of many physicians.

Nursing has become a science of itself. Some diseases yield more surely to good nursing than to anything else. *Dietetics*⁴, or proper feeding, is an old art which is now being made a science. Such lines call especially for women scientists.

*Surgery*⁵ is now one of the greatest sciences. Step by step it has been built up. One man after another has become famous by the discovery of some great fact about the *make-up*⁶ or working of some part of the body. Harvey discovered the main facts of the *circulation of the blood*⁷; Sir Charles Bell, of the *nervous system*⁸; Ambroise Paré of the *healing of wounds*⁹; and John Hunter, of much of the science of *anatomy*¹⁰. Lister taught the use of *antiseptics*¹¹. Pasteur's discoveries of the *nature of disease*¹² lifted the science of medicine so far as to make his name one that will never be forgotten. The result of all this systematic knowledge of the body is that people today are healed of most of the injuries and diseases from which they used to die in great pain. The discovery of *anaesthetics*¹³ has made all necessary cutting of the body painless. A man may now read his newspaper while his leg is being cut open and feel no pain whatever, and operations on *vital parts*¹⁴ of the body are performed with safety.

1 專門的調查員。 2 老式。 3 徹底的準備。 4 營養學。 5 外科。 6 組織。
7 血液循環。 8 神經系統。 9 治傷方法。 10 解剖學。 11 防腐劑。 12 病
理學。 13 麻醉劑。 14 主要部分。

十 醫藥科學

醫藥是科學的一枝，它是對於國家福利有極大重要性的，在這裏面中國可以表示他們的強壯，在這裏面仍有偉大的發見要造成，在這裏面供給許多研究的材料，在這裏面需要大量的工人和專門的調查員。老式醫師有大量的醫藥——據說，比所有兩洋國家的還要多——却至今沒有對之作完全的科學研究。那是一種規模極大的科學工作，並且顯然有全世界的重要性。這是要徹底的準備，堅持和誠實的工作，和許多醫師的合作。

看護學也成爲一種自立的科學了。有些疾病歸功於良好的看護比之任何別的東西爲多。營養學，或是合宜的飲食法，是一種老技術，現在却成爲科學了。這些門類特別需要女科學家。

外科是現在最偉大科學中的一種。它一步步地成立起來。一個又一個的因爲對於人體某部分的組織和功用有幾種巨大事實的發見而成名了。哈凡發見血液循環的主要事實；却爾斯皮爾爵士發見神經系統；恩勃羅華卑爾，發明治傷方法；約翰享脫，發明許多解剖的科學。李士德教授防腐劑的用法。巴斯德發見病理學，抬高醫藥的價值，甚至使他的名字永不會被人家忘掉。關於一切人體上的有系統知識的結果現在人民用以治療大多數的傷害和疾病，這種傷害和疾病在從前是要以極大的痛苦死掉的。麻醉劑的發明使一切人體上必要的割治沒有痛苦。一個人在他的腿部正在割治的時候現在也許可以讀新聞報，而不覺得一點痛苦，就是在人體的主要部分上施行手術也能安全地作成。

China needs one hundred thousand physicians and surgeons to take care of her people. Each one should be a master of his science. His life will be crowded with the most important kind of work for his community, and in the midst of it he may add new knowledge to his science. His experience may become so valuable that he will be needed in the training of others.

Some idea of the importance and high quality of the medical and surgical work that China needs may be had by a visit to the great *Peking Union Medical College*¹ and *hospital*². One is surprised at its size and beauty, but the important feature is its scientific character—its scientific ideals, methods, and equipment. Its aim is to train physicians and surgeons who will be able to handle China's great health problems, heal her sick and injured, discover some of the still hidden secrets of the human body, and prepare men and women to teach medical science to others.

China must fight disease scientifically. A hundred years ago *smallpox*³ was one of the most dreaded and dangerous diseases in Western countries. Dr. Jenner discovered and urged the use of *vaccination*⁴ to prevent it. As a result this fearful disease has almost entirely gone from America and many parts of Europe.

11. The Scientific Professions

The development of the marvelous modern profession of healing has a long and interesting history. It has been important not only because of its giving mankind more comfort, health, and strength, and greater length of life, but because it has greatly aided other sciences. Medicine developed as the first really scientific profession. Others developed later. This was fortunate, because the medical profession had high ideals, and thus set high ideals for the other sciences. No *reputable*⁵ doctor keeps a discovery a secret for his own use. He publishes it for the free use of all in need of it. No reputable doctor will let his

1 北京協和大學。 2 協和醫院。 3 天花。 4 種痘。 5 有名譽的。

中國需要十萬個內外科醫生照管她的人民。每個醫生都要對於他的專門科學精熟。他的一生爲了他的社會忙於做許多重大的工作，在其中也許他可以將新的知識加在他的科學上。他的經驗也許成爲這樣的有價值，需要他去教訓別人。

關於中國所需的醫藥和外科，其重要性和高尚性質可以由於參觀北平協和大學和協和醫院而知道了。其一是驚愕它的面積和美麗，但是最重要的現象却是它的科學性格——它的科學思想，方法，和設備。它的目的是訓練內外科醫生，使他們能夠處理中國的健康問題，醫治國民的疾病和傷害，發見人體上仍在隱秘中的一些東西，準備下男子和女子教授醫藥科學給別人。

中國必須要科學地和疾病作戰。百年以前，天花爲西方各國最可怕和最危險的一種疾病。詹尼爾博士發見了種痘的效用，並加以鼓勵以防止它。結果這種可怕的疾病差不多完全在美國和歐洲的許多部分裏消滅了。

十一 科學的職業

近代奇特的醫藥的發展有一個長而且有興趣的歷史。其重要性不僅因爲它給於人類更多的舒適，健康與強壯，和延長其生命，却是因爲它大大地幫助別的科學。醫藥的發展爲最初的真正科學職業。別的發展都在後面。這是很幸氣的。因爲醫藥有很高的標準，因之使別的科學的標準也提高。沒有個有名譽的醫生把發明藏着祕密留爲自用的。他刊行它，使一切需要它的都可自由使用。沒有個有名譽的醫生把它的科學知識作爲任

scientific knowledge be put to any wrong use, no matter what pay is offered him for it. No reputable doctor refuses to give aid because the *patient*¹ is poor or an enemy or even a *criminal*². No reputable doctor advertises himself as better than others. No reputable doctor takes advantage of his power over the sick or dying to enrich himself. No reputable doctor *s pares*³ himself in the service of those who need his help. Thus the high standards of the medical profession have not only raised it to a most honorable place in the *esteem*⁴ of all people but have helped to gain a good name and high standard for all sciences.

All the scientific professions have had to struggle upward against misunderstanding and prejudice. The old-style doctor in China is not usually held in high honor. So it was in early days with the Western doctor. He was thought to be partly a *magician*⁵ of doubtful character and partly just a man with a sharp knife, about as learned as a barber. In fact the barber was often the surgeon. The medical profession has risen out of this to its present high position. Now kings obey the doctor; everybody does his *bidding*⁶; people make way for him on the street; robbers do not attack him.

The other professions have had and often still have the same struggle. People do not at first appreciate them. A company thinks it can build a bridge without an engineer, just as many people think they can cure their disease without medical science. A man thinks he can plan a good house without an architect. A manufacturer thinks he can make the best soap without a chemist. A *dairyman*⁷ thinks he can escape disease among his buffaloes without calling a *veterinarian*⁸. A farmer does not believe that the agricultural scientist knows what is wrong with his tress or his soil. It takes a long time for the people to learn that the scientist is their servant and benefactor. They really cannot get on without him. Their bridges cost too much; their diseases continue; their houses are *ugly*⁹; their products are *second-grade*¹⁰; their cattle die; their crops fail—and

1 病人。 2 犯罪者。 3 吝惜。 4 尊敬。 5 魔術家。 6 吩咐。 7 賣牛乳者。
8 獸醫。 9 不好看。 10 次等。

何不正當的用途的，不管可以供給他多少酬勞。沒有個有名譽的醫生拒絕幫助一個窮苦的病人，或是一個仇敵，或甚至一個犯罪的人。沒有個有名譽的醫生登廣告說他自己比別人本領大。沒有個有名譽的醫生利用他對於病人或垂死的人的權力而致富的。沒有個有名譽的醫生吝惜他對於需要幫助的人的服務。所以醫業的高度標準不但是抬高它為最光榮的地位；受着一切人民的尊敬，却是幫助一切科學獲得好的名譽和高度的標準。

一切科學職業要向上競爭，反抗誤解和僻見。中國的老式醫生通常不受最高的尊重。而西洋醫生在初期也是這樣的。人家以為他一部分是個有可疑性質的魔術家，一部分是一個帶着銳利小刀的人，好像習見的理髮匠。事實上理髮匠常常是外科醫生。醫業從這種狀況裏升到現在高高的位置。現在國王服從醫生，個個人照他所囑付的做；人民在街上讓路給他；強盜也不侵犯他。

別的職業也有同樣的奮鬥。人民在起先並不評定它們的價值。一家公司以為沒有工程師也能造一座橋，正像許多人民以為他們沒有醫藥科學也能醫治他們的病。一個人以為他能夠計劃一所房屋而不用建築師。一個製造家以為他能夠製造最好的肥皂而不用化學師。一個賣牛乳的人以為他能夠避免牛瘟，不用請獸醫。一個農夫不相信農學家會知道他的樹木或土壤有什麼不對。它要一個很長的時間，才能使人民明白科學家是他們的僕人，也是他們的恩人。真的沒有他們就不能向前進。他們的橋所費太巨；他們的疾病連續着，他們的房屋不好看；他們的產物是列入次等；他們的牛死掉；他們的收穫失敗。——

yet they are slow to believe that the professional men and women are able to help them. Therefore it is our duty to our people to help develop appreciation of the professions.

12. The Biological¹ Sciences

In all the biological sciences China is a great field both for investigation and for the practical appreciation of what is already known.

There must be men and women trained to study all the plants of China; to collect, preserve, *identify*², *classify*³, and describe them. There ought to be no ignorance about what grows in China. This is the field of the professional botanist, supported both by the government and by the universities.

The *zoologist*⁴ is needed to do similar work for the animals of China—the *quadrupeds*⁵, the birds, the *reptiles*⁶, the amphibians, the fish, the *shellfish*⁷, the insects, and so on. In recent years it has been discovered that some of the worst diseases are carried by small creatures—*typhus*⁸ by *lice*⁹, *bubonic plague*¹⁰ by rats and *fleas*¹¹, yellow fever and *malaria*¹² by mosquitoes, and several diseases by flies.

Cotton has been attacked by an insect called the *boll weevil*¹³, which develops in the plant and destroys the fiber. Unless it is checked it will reduce greatly the world's supply of cotton, and this will cause a great increase of price. As Manchuria is likely to become a great cotton-growing area, China must join hands with America, Egypt, India, and Africa to fight this pest.

13. The Sciences of Food production

The biological sciences may be said to include medicine and surgery and nursing, to which we have referred, and also all the sciences of production of vegetable and animal food as well as the production of silk, wood oil,

1 生物的。 2 鑑定。 3 分類。 4 動物家。 5 四足獸。 6 爬蟲類。 7 甲殼類。 8 發疹傷寒。 9 蚤。 10 黑死病。 11 蚤。 12 瘧疾。 13 棉實象鼻蟲。

但是他們不能很快地相信專門的男子或女子有能力幫助他們。所以去幫助發展專門的評價是我們對於人民的責任。

十二 生物的科學

對於一切的生物科學中國是一片巨大的園地，不論為考察或是為對於已知事實的實驗評價。

必定要訓練男女去研究一切的中國植物；去收集，保存，鑑定，分類，和敘述。關於中國生產什麼應該並無蒙昧。這是專門植物學家的園地，應由政府及大學扶助。

對於中國的動物——四足類，鳥類，爬蟲類，兩棲類，魚類，甲殼類，昆蟲類等等——也需要動物家去做類似的工作呢。在近時動物學上發見許多惡病是從小動物身上傳過來的。——發疹傷寒之由於蟲，黑死病之由於鼠與蚤，黃熱病和瘧疾之由於蚊蟲，有些疾病由於蒼蠅。

綿花有時被一種叫棉實象鼻蟲所侵犯，它在植物上傳佈而損害其纖微。除非消滅它，世界上的綿花供給要大大的減少了，並且還要造成綿花的漲價。像滿洲是差不多成為大量綿花的出產區了，中國必定要和美國，埃及，印度以及菲州攜手，共同和這種害蟲奮鬥。

十三 食物生產的科學

生物的科學也可以說包含醫藥，外科和看護，關於這些我們已會講過了，並還包着蔬菜和動物食料的生產科學，以及

and many other things. Let us here mention only a few of the lines to which young men and women in China must for the good of their nation devote themselves.

The raising of grain is the greatest *industry*¹ in China. Farmers are so expert at it that no scientist can teach them anything about certain parts of the processes. And yet there has been no scientific selection of seed or *crossing of varieties*². When we remember that *Indian corn*³ we developed originally from a plant as small as rice, we realize what possibilities lie in other grains; and when we remember that boys' corn clubs in America increased the yields from 20 bushels an acre to 220 bushels, we realize what possibilities lie in the methods of growing those grains.

The raising of vegetables and fruits is a science *in the making*⁴. People now consume thousands of cans of tomatoes every year, and yet there are people who remember when tomatoes were not considered good to eat. It has been recently discovered that tomato *juice*⁵ and orange juice are almost necessary to the full health and growth of children. A wonderful new discovery about tomatoes is that they may be *grafted*⁶ on potatoes. The discoverer is said to have raised plants which bore at the same time tomatoes aboveground and potatoes underground. More important, perhaps, was the process of developing the tomato from a vegetable only as large as a *chestnut*⁷ to one as large as your *fist*⁸ or larger. The tomato is only one example. Vegetables and fruits are now sought in every part of the world. They are *crossed*⁹ until wonderful new ones are produced. They are improved until *thorns*¹⁰ are *eliminated*¹¹, or taste is sweetened, or some such great change is brought about.

It is the same with the raising of *live stock*¹². The food varieties of such animals have been developed till they all approach the "*block type*¹³," with straight back and short neck and head. Scientists are now *straightening*¹⁴ the back of the Chinese pig. They are increasing the milk of the water buffalo. They are making Cantonese

1 實業。 2 接種法。 3 玉蜀黍。 4 正在創造中。 5 汁。 6 接。 7 栗子。 8 拳。 9 接枝。 10 刺。 11 消除。 12 家畜。 13 典型家畜。 14 使直。

絲，桐油和別的東西的生產。讓我們只在這裏舉出幾種，爲中國青年男女爲了本國的利益所宜專心致志的。

栽培五穀是中國的最大實業。農人是這樣地熟練於種植，却沒有個科學家能夠教導他們任何一件關於種植方法上某部分的事。至今仍沒有科學的種子選擇和接種法。當我們記起玉蜀黍在起先是小得像米一樣的，却從此發展起來的時候，我們明白別的五穀也有這種可能；當我們記起美國的兒童種稻團增加產額從二十個蒲式耳一畝加增到二百二十個的時候，我們明白靠着栽培五穀的方法有什麼可能性呢。

栽培蔬菜是一種正在創造中的科學。現在人民每年消費幾千罐的番茄，仍有人民會記起在當時番茄並不算是好吃的東西。直到最近發見番茄汁和橘子汁對於小孩的健康和生長差不多是必需的。新近有一種奇怪的發見就是番茄可以接在馬鈴薯上。這個發明家說他在同時種着這種植物，番茄結在上面，馬鈴薯結在下面。假使發展番茄的方法，能使小如栗子的植物發展成爲大如你的拳頭般或是更大則更爲重要了。番茄不過是一個例子。菜蔬和菓子現在世界各地尋求着，他們互相接枝，直到產生奇怪的新種，改良它們，直到刺的消滅，或是嘗有甜味，或是使其有大變換。

關於飼養家畜也是一樣，家畜的種種食料已曾改良，使它們都近於典型家畜，有直的背，短的頸和頭。科學家現在弄直了中國豬的背，他們加增了水牛的乳量。他們使廣東雞生更多

hens lay more eggs. Most of the big Western breeds of chickens, now completely developed and standardized, came originally from China and southern Asia. No people, perhaps, do so much *fish-raising*¹ as the Chinese in the southern provinces. Here is a great field for scientific study and the development of an industry of importance. In all such raising of food animals there is need for the study of species and varieties both wild and tame, the study of their diseases and their feeding, and the study of the uses of food products.

14. The Physical Sciences²

One may say that the fundamental physical sciences—chemistry and physics—*underlie*³ all the other sciences. Yet each of these itself is a whole great field for a *lifetime*⁴ of work for many people. At this moment there is great need for expert teachers of these fundamental sciences in the colleges, *normal schools*⁵, and middle schools all over China. Chemistry underlies the sciences of biology, medicine, *pharmacy*⁶, chemical and mechanical engineering, etc. Physics underlies the science of engineering in all its branches—electrical engineering, chemical engineering, mechanics, *hydraulics*⁷, marine engineering, bridge-building, surveying mining, conservancy work, railway engineering; also astronomy, geology, *meteorology*⁸, and many other branches of scientific work, including all kinds of construction work. Are not these sciences, then, *exceedingly*⁹ important? How can students neglect them? Without experts in all these many sciences how can China develop? How can experts be trained unless great number of students study thoroughly these two fundamental sciences? Science is a big thing. Do not imagine that a few hours a week for two or three years *will carry you anywhere*¹⁰. Do not imagine that a *course*¹¹ for the degree of *Bachelor of Arts*¹², with half of it given to science, makes one a scientist. If you have ability along a scientific line, make up your mind to a lifetime devoted to it.

1 養魚。2 自然科學。3 成爲……的基礎。4 終身。5 師範學校。6 藥劑學。7 水力學。8 氣象學。9 極端地。10 使你樣樣懂得。11 學程。12 文學士。

的蛋。大多數的大種西洋雞現在已完全加以發展和合標準了，原先却是從中國和亞洲南部來的。也許沒有人民能像中國的南幾省般有這麼多的養飼魚類。這兒是一種科學的研究和發展一種重要實業的巨大園地。在喂養肉食畜類中需要研究它們的各式種類——不論野生家畜，研究它們的疾病，和飼養，並且研究食物生產的用處。

十四 自然科學

也許可以說基本的自然科學——化學和物理——為一切別的科學的基礎。至今兩種都是整個的巨大園地，足供許多人民的終身工作。在此時間，中國的大學，師範，學校，中學都需要這些基本科學的熟練的教師。化學為生物，醫學，藥劑學，化學工程和機械工程學等等科學的基礎。物理學為工程各枝系——電氣工程，化學工程，機械學，水力學，海洋工程，橋樑建築測量學，開鑿學，水利工程，鐵路工程，——的基礎。還有天文學，地質學，氣象學，和許多科學工作的枝系，包括一切的建設工作都以物理為基礎。那末這些科學不是極端的重要麼？學生怎麼能忽視它們呢？一切這些科學沒有熟練家中國怎能發展呢？怎樣能夠訓練出熟練家呢，除非大量的學生澈底研究這兩種科學？科學是巨物。不要幻想一星期幾個鐘點，讀了二年三年就能使你樣樣懂得。不要幻想文學士的學程只需把一半分給科學，就使他成為科學家了。如果有能力沿着科學的線路前進，立定主意，以學生專心致志於科學。

The sciences named above are chiefly applied sciences *absolutely*¹ necessary to the development of the nation. The health of the country demands them, business waits for them, industry and transportation depend upon them.

Modern war—destruction as well as construction—is a scientific thing. The World War, of 1914-1918, was a series of great scientific ventures: great *forts*² scientifically built but scientifically destroyed; armies scientifically hidden but found and killed by new science; ships under the sea discovered by ships in the sky; new *trenches*³ armed with new guns and protected by new *forces*⁴ and watched over by new *balloons*⁵, but soon broken by new *ironclad monsters*⁶ that *crawled*⁷ right up through everything. It was a *contest*⁸ of scientists and brave men on each side. Armies were organized and moved on scientific principles. They communicated with each other by science, were fed by science, were *cut to pieces*⁹ by science, and were healed and sent back again by science. One reason the war lasted so long was because the scientific knowledge was so nearly equal on the two sides. This gives some idea of the large place science holds in the modern world and the great need for directing the uses of science for *humanitarian purposes*¹⁰.

15. The Social Sciences¹¹

Someone has said that China is as great a field for the development of the social sciences as America has been for the physical sciences. China cannot neglect *one*¹² for the *other*¹³. The physical sciences are necessary to life, health, and comfort; the social sciences are necessary to public welfare, coöperation, and the general progress and happiness of society. China has a long history, which must be studied by modern scientific methods. *Anthropologists*¹⁴ are already beginning to search China for new facts about the early life of man. Perhaps Chinese dialects and the *aboriginal tribes*¹⁵ of China are ready to supply answers to some questions these scientists have long been asking. China's great population is the basis

1 絕對地。 2 堡壘。 3 戰壕。 4 軍隊。 5 汽球。 6 鐵甲車。 7 飛行。 8 爭鬥。 9 毀滅。 10 人道主義的目的。 11 社會科學。 12 自然科學。 13 社會科學。 14 人類學家。 15 原始種族。

上面所舉的科學大都是應用科學，對於國家的發展是絕對需要的。國家的健康需要它們，商業等待着它們，工業和運輸倚仗它們。

現代的戰爭——破壞和建設一樣——也是科學上的東西。一九一四至一九一八的世界戰爭是一串偉大的科學冒險，巨大的堡壘科學地建築却科學地被燬了；軍隊科學地隱藏起來，但是被新的科學方法所找到和殲滅；海底下的船被天空中的船發見；新式的塹壕裏裝置着新的槍砲，以新式的軍隊保護着，新式的汽球看守着，但是迅即被新的鐵甲怪物直前爬行經過一切的東西。這是雙方科學家和勇士們的爭鬥。軍隊都依科學的原理而組織與活動。他們以科學互相交通，以科學給養，被科學毀滅，以科學醫治和重新送回後方。這次戰爭延長到這末長久的一個理由是因為雙方的科學知識差不多平均的。對於在現代世界上科學所佔之巨大地位據此可以明白，但是爲了人道主義的目的却大大的需要指導科學的用途。

十五 社會科學

有人說中國是發展社會科學的巨大園地好像美國之爲自然科學園地一般。中國不能爲了一樣而忘掉另一樣。自然科學是對於生活，健康與舒適所必需的；社會科學是對於公衆福利，合作，和社會上的一般進步和快樂所必需的。中國有一個長長的歷史，這是必須以現代的科學方法研究的。人類學家已經開始在中國找出關於先民生活的新事實了。也許中國的方言和中國的原始種族準備供給科學家久置疑問的回覆。中國的巨大

for study in all branches of *sociology*¹, politics, economics, education, and religion. And, too, it is for the benefit of this great population that we want all kinds of science developed.

16. School Science

We often wonder how we can be of service to our country while we are still in school. The study of those things which will make us useful is one way. The development of the right spirit among our *schoolmates*² and among our people at home is another way. In this matter of the mastery of modern science we can do a great service by encouraging the scientific spirit. We must have it ourselves and try to encourage it in others.

In your school you are studying some physical, biological, and social sciences. You are studying some subjects, like geography, which combine many sciences in the one great study of the earth in its relation to man. In these studies try to show the scientific spirit. Try to master each subject. Go at it systematically. Be observant in class and out. Understand each item. Do not hesitate to say you do not yet understand it. Have no shame about your ignorance as long as you are doing your best to remove it. Ask questions boldly. Be more active than your teacher. Check up your knowledge by questioning yourself and others. Be glad when someone corrects you. Be humble and *teachable*³. Pride goes before a fall. But be firm about the truth if you know a thing to be true.

17. Science and Mathematics

Finally we must say a word about mathematics. As science underlies progress, chemistry, physics, and geography are fundamentals. Science and mathematics are often classed together. College authorities say that a student who cannot learn mathematics cannot successfully learn the sciences.

1 社會學。 2 同學。 3 受教的。

人口是研究一切社會學，政治學，經濟學，宗教教育，各支系的根據。並且爲了巨大人口的利益，我們要發展一切種類的科學。

十六 學校科學

我們往往要奇怪，我們還未出學校怎樣能爲國家服務呢。研究這些能使我們爲有用的東西是一種方法。在我們的同學中和在居家的人民中發展正確精神又是一種方法。關於精熟現代科學的一件事，我們鼓勵着科學精神能夠做巨大的服務呢。我們自己要有這種精神，並且實行鼓勵人家要有這種精神。

在你的學校裏你學習一些自然的，生物的，社會的科學。你們正在學習一些科目，像地理，它把許多的科學結合起來，成爲一種『對於地球與人的關係』的偉大研究。在這些科目中要表示出科學精神。嘗試精熟每種科目。有系統地讀上去。要在課堂內外觀察。了解每一個條目。不要怕說我還沒有了解。關於你的昧然無知並無可羞，如果你能努力轉變。要勇於發問。要比你教師更活動。以自省與問人家檢正你的知識。有人爲你改正要快活。要謙遜和受教。驕傲是失敗的先行者。但是如果你知道一件事物是真實的，要對於這個真實堅定不搖。

十七 科學和數學

最後關於數學我們要說一句話。科學既是進步的基礎，而化學，物理，和地理又是科學的基礎。科學和數學分類往往是在一起的。大學當局說一個學生不能學習數學的，也不能有效地學習科學。

Someone has said, "Science is *measurement*¹." A certain physics professor in China used to start his class with the measuring of the classroom table. He said, "If you cannot measure accurately, you cannot be a scientist." There is so much truth in this idea that we may say that mathematics is the *doorstep*² to science. "You must learn to calculate, to measure, and to reason logically if you are to make any progress in science. Now, some students will say, "Then it is impossible for me to study science, because I cannot learn mathematics." But it is very doubtful whether it is true that you cannot learn mathematics. Perhaps it is only that you do not know how to study mathematics. Perhaps you have only failed to learn that although your teacher can do a great deal for you in history and geography, in mathematics you must do the work almost entirely yourself. Do not depend too much upon the teacher. Do not let others do your work for you. Master it all yourself. If you are now part way through your mathematics book and cannot remember it well or do not feel sure you have mastered it thoroughly, stop right where you are and begin at the beginning again. Don't miss a step, an item, a chapter, a section, a problem, an exercise. Mathematics is all by steps. Understand everything and be able to do everything in order from the very first without any help. Don't deceive yourself. Don't judge by the teacher's *approval*³ only. Know for yourself that you are master of each step. Take paper and pencil, state your problem, proceed a step at a time, go as far as you can, recall, think, try, experiment, practice, question, prove, till each step is clear. You will probably find that in reality you can learn mathematics, and you will lay the foundations of your mastery of science.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Tell of a few ways in which science is *remaking*⁴ the world.

1 測量. 2 門限. 3 贊許. 4 改造.

有人曾說過，『科學就是測量。』中國有一位物理教授以測量課室書桌為授課之始。他說，『如果你不能準確地量好，你也不能成為科學家。』這個觀念含有極大真理，所以我們可以說數學為科學的門限。你們必定要學計算，量度，和合邏輯的理由，如果你要在科學方面進步。現在，有幾個學生要說，『那末我學科學是不可能了，因為我不能學數學。』但是你是否不能學數學是很可疑的。也許只是你不懂怎樣學習數學。也許你學習數學之失敗，就是在史地方面你的教師可以大大的幫助你，而對於數學你必得完全由自己去做工作。不要太倚靠你的教師。不要教人家代你做你的工作。自己去精熟它。如果你現在把數學書讀過了一部分，可是不能記得很牢，或是不能確定已否澈底精熟它，就逕在那裏停下來，重新開頭讀起。不要錯了一個步驟，一個項目，一章，一節，一個問題，一篇習題。數學是整個的有步驟的。了解每種東西，並且要有做各種東西的能力，從頭至尾，不要任何的助力。不要自欺。不要只以教師的贊許做評判。要自己明白你已精熟於每個步驟了。拿了紙和筆，寫下你的問題，一次進一步，盡力地猛進，回憶，思考，嘗試，實驗，練習，發問，證明，等到每一步驟都清楚。你將顯然看出實在你是能學習數學的，並且你將奠定你精熟於科學的基礎。

問題和練習

1. 說出幾種科學可以改造世界的方法。

2. Suppose a man had fallen asleep one hundred years ago and waked up today. He is told that on board a ship at sea he can receive a *message*¹ from a friend on shore. What would he say? What other *marvels*² could you tell him about? Try to imagine some wonderful things that science may accomplish in the future. Write briefly about them.

3. What do you mean by "the scientific spirit"?

4. Tell a few things that we want to do for China which depend upon scientific knowledge.

5. Make a list of a few scientific professions.

6. *Distinguish*³ between the physical sciences and the social sciences.

7. Explain the statement "Mathematics is the door-step of science."

1 信息。 2 奇事。 3 分别。

2. 如果有人睡熟了一百年，在今天醒過來。人家告訴他在海裏的船上可以收到岸上朋友的信息。他將怎麼說呢？你還能告訴他別的奇事麼？幻想一些奇怪的事物，在未來科學能夠完成的。簡單地寫一點下來。

3. 『科學精神』是什麼意思？

4. 說出我們要為中國做的幾件事物，這幾件事物是倚仗着科學知識的。

5. 製一張科學職業表。

6. 分別自然科學和社會科學。

7. 說明『數學是科學的門限』這句話。

CHAPTER XIII

THE LIFE OF THE PEOPLE

1. What do our People Want?

When one watches busy people, one often asks: "What are they aiming at? What is it they are working so hard for? For what do they search day after day, *year in and year out*? What is the prize they seek? What do the people want?" If we understand clearly what our people desire, we can know better our *duty*² in their service. For what chief object do they plan, labor, *invest*³, wait, beg, or fight?

One answer is that they are all seeking money. But we have already seen that money itself is of no use. If you were lost in a desert, what good would a hundred-dollar bank note do you? They want money only because it will buy something. What is it beyond the money that makes people work? They want, as we said in an earlier chapter, to buy goods and services. But what sort of goods and services? For what purposes are these goods and services?

There is another common answer, which also answers this last question. They seek food, clothing, shelter, and means of communication—something to eat and drink, something to wear, somewhere to live protected from the weather, and some way to communicate with other people. It is true that a very large number of people—far too large a proportion—are kept busy getting only these three necessary things. All people, however, want more than these necessities of life. There is a larger *goal*⁴. What is it?

One may *sum up*⁵ the wants of people under five *heads*⁶:

1 年復一年。 2 責任。 3 投資。 4 標的。 5 總含。 6 項。

第十三章 人民的生活

一 我們人民要些什麼？

有人注視着勞碌的人，他常常問道：『他們有什麼目的呢？他們爲什麼，工作得這樣辛苦呢？爲了什麼他們日復一日，年復一年的追求呢？他們追求的賞賜是什麼呢？人民要些什麼？』如果我們清楚地了解人民的欲望是什麼？我們更能明白對於他們服務的責任了。爲了什麼主要的目的，使他們計劃，勞力，投資，等候，求乞，或戰爭呢？

一個答覆是他們都在找尋金錢。但是我們已經明白，金錢本身是無用的。如果你在沙漠裏迷了路，一張百元銀行支票於你有何利益呢？他們要錢只因爲它能夠買東西。除開錢有什麼東西能使人工作呢？如我們在最前的幾章裏說過，他們要買貨物和服務。但是什麼一種貨物與服務呢？這些貨物與服務又有什麼目的呢？

另有一種普通的回答，這也可答覆最後的問題的。他們尋求食物，衣服，居所，和交通方法——一些吃喝的東西，一些穿的東西，一些足以躲避冷熱的地方，和一些與別人交通的方法。這是真實的，有大量的人民——很大很大的比例——不斷的勞碌只是獲得這三種必需的東西。畢竟一切人民所要的除了生活上必需品還多着呢。那裏是一個大標的。這是什麼？

我們可以把人民所要的總合爲下面的五項：

1. Life—to continue to live.
2. Liberty—to have freedom.
3. Health—to have full *strength*¹ and *vigor*².
4. comfort—to be free from pain or trouble.
5. Happiness—to enjoy life.

2. The General Welfare

If a man loves his country, it means that he desires to see his people have life, liberty, health, comfort, and happiness. He wishes to have his country enjoy the highest general welfare. Therefore every patriotic citizen should understand what is best for the welfare of the people.

This does not mean the welfare of some while others lack it. It does not mean that some may starve while others have enough; that some may be healthy while all the others suffer; that some may be satisfied while all the others are in *want*³ or *discomfort*⁴; that some may be happy while there is a large measure of unhappiness over the whole land. General welfare means life, liberty, health, comfort, and happiness for all. No patriotic citizen should be contented with the satisfaction of his own wants, or even of those of his family and friends. He should find his own complete happiness only in that of the whole people. His greatest joy should be in efforts to increase the happiness of others, to contribute to the general welfare. That is being public-spirited. Nothing will help a nation faster than the growth of this spirit. Fortunately each of us can contribute daily both to the *actual*⁵ welfare and happiness of our people and to the spirit that works for this public welfare and happiness.

3. The Preservation of Life

In the next chapter we shall discuss the problem of public health, but there are many ways to preserve life that do not come under the head of health. One of these is the prevention of *accidents*⁶. The number of people

1 體力。 2 精力。 3 缺乏。 4 不舒適。 5 實在的。 6 意外事。

1. 生活——繼續生存下去。
2. 自由——有自由。
3. 健康——有充足的體力和精力。
4. 舒適——避免痛苦或煩擾。
5. 快樂——享受生活上的樂趣。

二 一般福利

如果有人愛他的國家，其意就是他願意看他的人民都有生活，自由，健康，舒適，和快樂。他願意使他的國家享受最高的一般福利。所以每個愛國的公民要了解什麼是對於人民頂頂好的東西。

這不是指幾個人的福利而別人所缺乏的。這不是指有些人挨餓，而有些人足夠；有些人健康而別人都在受苦；有些人滿足而一切別的人都是缺乏和不舒適；有些人快活，而有大量的不快活遍於全土。一般福利是指全民的生活，自由，健康，舒適，和快樂。沒有個愛國的公民以能滿足自己的要求而愜意的，或甚至他的家庭，他的朋友的也不算。他要在全民的福利中找出他個人的完全的快樂。他的最大快樂却在於增加別人快樂的效力和把一般福利分配的效力。那是公益精神。除了這種精神的生長沒有能更快地幫助一個國家了。有幸地我們人人能天天分配到實在的福利與人民的快樂，並且分配到為這種公共福利和快樂的工作。

三 生命的保全

在下一章我們要討論公共衛生的問題，但是有許多保全生命的方法不能歸於健康標題下的。其中之一是謹防意外。每年

killed every year by motor cars, *tramcars*¹, and railway trains is very great and is probably increasing very rapidly. It is said that a large part of the patients in Shanghai hospitals are people injured on the streets. Much of this loss of life is due to the fact that people have not been *accustomed*² to such fast motion. Is it right that some people should travel so fast that other people are killed? Should one man's enjoyment of life be another man's loss of life? Life should be protected. People should be patiently taught the danger of walking on the motor roads, of jumping from *moving cars*³, of crossing *in front of*⁴ cars. Both the *drivers*⁵ and the owners should be punished most *severely*⁶ whenever they are in any way responsible. Roads should be so marked that drivers can see where the danger is—where curves are short, where children may be in the way, where there is a difficult crossing, etc. Only safe cars and engines should be used. Such rules are for the preservation of life and *limb*.⁷ Public opinion and public-spirited men and women will secure such rules.

There is great loss of life also upon the water. Thousands of people are *drowned*⁸ every year in China. The greatest disasters are in the *sinking of boats*⁹ full of passengers on the rivers and canals. This loss of life can be prevented. If some day you hear that someone has gone to his death in the cold waters of a river, just recall that we said it could have been prevented! Boat companies want to make as much money as possible, and there are no *well-enforced laws*¹⁰ so protect the people. Consequently a boat is *overloaded*¹¹, or it is too old and weak, or it has a badly *mended*¹² hole in it, or it has an engine just ready to *explode*¹³. The passengers cannot know the danger. They pay their money and go to their death. In Western countries every passenger boat is carefully inspected, the officers are examined, the number of people is limited and they are counted as they go aboard, and *provision*¹⁴ for life-saving for the total number is made.

1 電車。2 慣於。3 在行駛的車子。4 在...之前。5 車夫。6 嚴厲地。7 四肢。8 溺死。9 沉船。10 實施的法律。11 過度裝載。12 修補。13 爆發。14 準備。

被汽車，電車，火車所殺死的人民，其數甚大，並且有顯著的迅速增加。據說上海醫院裏的病人大部分是在路上受傷的人民。這種傷失生命大都由於人民在事實上沒有慣習於這樣迅速的行動。有些人行得這樣的快而別人被殺是對的麼？一個人生活上的娛樂該是別人的喪失生命麼？生命是應加保護的。該耐心地教導人民，在汽車路上行走，從行駛的車子裏跳下來，當車子的前面穿過都是危險的。車夫和車主都受着最嚴厲的處罰，因為無論如何他們總該負責的。路上要立標記，使駕車者能夠看見危險在那裏——圓度太短的地方，孩子們多走的地方，有難以穿過的地方等等。只有妥當的駕車者才許開車。只有妥當的車子和機器才許使用。這種規則是爲了生命和四肢的保全。公共輿論和有公益心男子和女子將保守這種規則。

在水裏喪失生命的也有許多。中國每年有幾千人溺死。最大的不幸是在江河和運河裏滿載乘客船隻的沉沒。這種生命的喪失能夠防止的。如果有日你聽得有人掉在冰冷的河水裏死了，就記起我們說過這是可以防止的話吧！船公司要盡力賺錢，而沒有實施的法律保障人民。因此船隻過度裝載，或是船身太舊太不牢，或是修補得很壞的漏洞，或是機器將近爆裂。乘客們不知道這個危險。他們出了錢却去送命。在西洋各國每隻載客的船都是當心地偵查過的，職員們是考試過的，乘客出洋的數目是限止的，是要點數的。並且爲全部數目準備下救生設備。

Many people are killed in construction work, in machine shops, in factories, in engine rooms, in handling poisons and *explosives*¹, and in mines. Many are killed by overwork, by *overstrain*², by *exposure*³, by sitting in the cold in their rickshas all night, by hunger, by *bad treatment*⁴, by sorrow, by discouragement. Have we been public-spirited and merciful enough to think about these? Have we anything to do with any of those forms of danger to the life of our people? Should we not be very angry if we saw a foreigner kill one of our people? How then shall we feel about our own carelessness and *indifference*⁵? A certain high official once said: "Don't *bother*⁶. There are too many people anyway." He ought to have been the first to die, for he was the enemy of the people. Let us seek every way we can to preserve the lives of our people, to decrease dangers, and to work to make their lives in every way safer.

Let us keep in mind China's great losses of life, for they will make us work more earnestly for ways to prevent them. We do not want China to be famous as the nation of the greatest disasters. Let us remember the *famine*⁷ of 1877-1878, when eight million people died from starvation. Let us remember Szechwan's great historical destruction of population. Let us not forget the *Taiping Revolution*⁸, in which the loss of life was somewhere between ten and twenty million. Let us keep in mind that there is a famine from a flood or other cause somewhere in China every year. Let us continue to look for ways to prevent such disaster, to preserve life, to provide for those who are starving. If we keep our minds earnestly upon such matters, we shall soon be able to find *remedies* for these evils, and will do everything in our power to secure means to apply these remedies.

4. Life and Freedom

Of what use is life without liberty? Many a time a prisoner has had his life spared only to spend the rest of his existence in a *prison cell*¹⁰. That is more like death

1 炸藥。 2 勞力過度。 3 露天過宿。 4 不良待遇。 5 漠不關心。 6 煩惱。 7 饑饉。 8 太平天國革命。 9 補救方法。 10 監獄。

許多人民死於建設工作，機廠裏，工廠裏，機器間裏，手弄毒藥和炸藥，鑛裏。許多人死於工作過度，勞力過度，露天過宿，整夜冒冷坐在他們的人力車上，由於飢餓，由於不良待遇，由於憂愁，由於灰心。我們會以充足的公益心和慈悲心想到這裏麼？對於危及人民生命的各種形式我們能有所盡力麼？如果我們看見一個外國人殺死一個中國人我們能不發怒麼？那末關於我們自己的疏忽和漠不關心，我們的感觸怎樣呢？一位高級官吏曾說道：『不要煩惱。我們的人民多着哩。』他就該第一個死，因為他是人民的敵人。讓我們盡力找出各種方法以保全人民的生命，以減少危險，並要做着使人民生命完全安穩的工作。

讓我們記牢中國生命的巨大喪失，因為可使我們更熱心地做着防止方法的工作。我們不要中國以災患最甚之國出名。讓我們記憶一八七七——一八八八的飢饉，當時有八百萬人死於飢餓。讓我們記憶四川的歷史上的人口大屠殺。讓我們不要忘掉太平天國革命，其間各地喪失的生命是一千萬至二千萬。讓我們記牢中國每年總有地方因洪水或別的原因而大荒年。讓我們不斷地去找防止這種災難的方法，以保全生命，以瞻養飢餓的人民。如果我們熱心地記牢這種事情，我們就能立即找出對於這些壞事的補救辦法，並且將在我們的能力之內做着各種事情以應用這些補救法。

四 生命和自由

生命沒有自由有什麼用處呢？好幾次有獄囚饒恕了生命却只在監獄裏消磨他的餘生。那是說他活着，不如說他死掉。

than life. To take away a man's freedom is next to taking away his life. Murder is sometimes punished with death, sometimes with *imprisonment*² for life or for many years. Children cannot have full freedom as long as others are responsible for them; but as soon as they are of age and *self-supporting*², if they are good citizens they may come and go, and no one may take away their freedom without their consent. Civilized governments are *pledged*³ to preserve the greatest possible liberty for the largest possible number of people under their rule.

5. Home and Liberty

A government cannot take away the home or liberty of any man, woman, or child unless person *commits a crime*⁴ or has some disease which makes him a danger to everybody else. A person who *deliberately kills*⁵ another person is punished with death. A person who drinks or takes drugs until he finally becomes *insane*⁶ and dangerous is shut up in an institution and loses his liberty. There are some diseases so *contagious*⁷ that the mere touch of the hand will spread them. People who have such diseases must be prevented from giving them to others. In China there are twenty-six villages, hospitals, and homes for *lepers*⁸. On the island of Culion in the Philippines there are over six thousand lepers. The United States government gives them comfortable homes, plenty of books to read, and everything they want except one great thing—their liberty. No matter how long they live they can never *revisit*⁹ their homes or their friends. This seems *cruel*¹⁰; but if *leprosy*¹¹ should spread among the people, the whole nation might soon be afflicted with this terrible and incurable disease. In ancient times, as in Jerusalem, lepers were cruelly driven outside the walls of the city, where they often *perished*¹² from hunger and exposure.

Except for criminals and persons afflicted with terrible diseases, the government does not *deprive*¹³ even the humblest person of his home or his liberty. In the large

1 監禁。 2 自立。 3 立誓。 4 犯罪。 5 謀殺。 6 癡狂的。 7 有傳染性的。
8 痲瘋病患者。 9 重訪。 10 殘酷的。 11 痲瘋病。 12 死亡。 13 剝奪。

剝奪一個人的自由僅次於剝奪他的生命。殺人犯有時以死刑懲罰，有時終身監禁，或是許多年的監禁。小孩不能有充足的自由，在此期內別人爲他負責；但是一到成年和自立時，如果他們是好公民，就可來來去去，沒有人可以剝奪他們的自由而不得他們的允許。文明的政府在法律範圍之內立誓爲最多數的人民保全最大可能的自由。

五 家庭與自由

一個政府不能剝奪任何男子，女子，孩童的家庭或是自由，除非這個人犯了罪或是有什麼危及他人的疾病時。一個人謀殺別人是要受死罪的懲罰的。一個人飲酒服藥，最後成爲瘋人，而有危險性的是關在瘋人院裏，而喪失了他的自由。有幾種傳染性的疾病，只要觸了他之手就能傳染給人家。害這樣疾病的人必定要防止其傳給別人。中國有二十六個村莊，醫院和家庭以供癲瘋患者。菲律賓的寇鄰島有六千以上的癲瘋患者。美國政府給他們安適的房屋住，許多的書籍閱讀，給他們所要的各種東西，除掉一件大東西——他們的自由。不管他們有多少時間好活，他們永遠不能重訪他們的家庭和朋友了。這似乎是殘酷的；但是如果讓癲瘋病在人民間傳佈，全國會立即被這種可怕與無法治療的疾病所苦。在古時，好像耶路撒冷，癲瘋患者是被殘酷地趕出城牆以外的，在那裏他們往往以飢餓和暴露而死亡。

除掉爲了犯罪和爲疾病所苦的，即使是最卑賤的人政府也不能剝奪他的家庭和自由。在大城市裏人數往往比地位爲多。

cities there are often more people than positions. At the same time, in the wheat fields, on the cotton farms, or in the coal mines, there may not be enough workers to harvest the crops or to mine the coal. It would almost seem that for the good of the nation the government should force the *unemployed*¹ men and boys in the cities to go to the wheat fields and coal mines. But no; all that the government can do is to urge those who are out of employment to go where there is work.

6. Certain Forms of Slavery²

A slave is one whose liberty has been taken away and who is compelled to work for others. Although slavery has never existed to the same extent in China as in some Western countries, there are certain forms of slavery in our country that every patriotic citizen must *condemn*³ and fight against. Families in villages which are too poor to support all their children often sell the girls to the richer families in the cities as "*slave girls*⁴." Boys are almost never sold, because people have the idea that the boys will earn money and will maintain the continuity of the family, while the girls will have to be given away to other families in marriage anyway. Frequently these unfortunate girls are sold at a very *tender age*⁵, and have to do a great deal of the manual work in the household of their mistresses. If a slave girl happens to have a kind mistress, she is fairly well treated, but has to toil every day in the year without any wage or opportunity of education. She is not freed until she is of age to marry, when she will be again sold, this time to be the wife of some man. Sometimes the mistress is a harsh woman, and the slave girl cannot go away, no matter how cruelly treated she may be. She often cannot go to bed until late at night and has to get up early in the morning. She is *scolded*⁶, even *beaten*⁷, at the *slightest sign of disobedience*⁸. What a difference there is between the life of a slave girl and the life of comfort and ease of the children of her mistress! Is this justice? Should we not

失業的。 2 奴隸。 3 取締。 4 婢女。 5 年幼時。 6 被罵。 7 被打。 8 稍微表示不服從。

同時，在麥田裏，在綿花田裏，在煤礦裏，那裏也許沒有充足的工人以收穫五穀或是開掘煤礦。爲了國家的利益，政府似乎應該強迫市中失業的男子和男孩跑到麥田裏和煤礦裏。但是不對的；政府所能做的一切只是激勵那些失業的人跑到有工作的地方去。

六 幾種奴隸的方式

奴隸就是一個人，他的自由已被剝奪，並且逼迫他爲別人工作。雖然中國的奴隸制度的建立並無西洋各國般的同等程度，但還有幾種形式的奴隸制度，每個愛國公民必應取締和奮鬥的。村落裏的家庭是太苦了，不能供給他所有的孩子，就往往把女孩子賣給城裏的富人作『婢女』。男孩子差不多從不出售的，因爲人民有種觀念，以爲男孩可以賺錢，可以維持家庭的嗣續，而女孩子却要在婚時嫁给人家的。常常這些不幸的女孩子在很幼穉的年齡時被賣，要爲他們的女東家做着許多操作。如果一個婢女偶然碰到個慈祥的女東家，她是受着很好的待遇，但是一年之中天天勞動而沒有工資，與受教育的機會。她是不能自由的，直到她適婚年齡爲止，在那時她又將重新被賣，這一次是做一個人的妻子。有時這個女東家是個苛刻的婦人，不管她會怎樣殘酷地待遇她，這個婢女是不能離去的。她往往非到夜深，不准睡覺，而在早上又要很早地起來。因爲很輕微的不服從樣子，她就要被責罵，甚至被打。以婢女的生活和她女東家孩子的舒服安適的生活相較其差異爲何如呢！這是公平的

advocate the *abolition*¹ of these slave girls? Already a number of cities and districts have made laws against this evil practice. We should do our best to *create*² public opinion that will secure the *passage*³ and *enforcement*⁴ of such laws all over China.

There is another form of slavery, which is even more *hideous*⁵ but has received little attention from the public. For many years heartless agents acting for certain companies have been *recruiting*⁶ ignorant laborers to work in mines or on plantations abroad, chiefly in Cuba, Peru, and the Malay States. They give these laborers all sorts of false hopes and pay their passage on condition they will each sign a *contract*⁷ selling their personal liberty for a period of ten or twenty years. When they arrive in the foreign country, they are treated like *beasts*⁸, and their bodies are ruined by overwork and poor living conditions. They are often *whipped*⁹, beaten, and even killed, at the will of their masters. Many of them never live long enough to return to their homes, to say nothing of getting rich. The government should investigate the matter, *prohibit*¹⁰ this kind of contract labor, and make proper provisions for the protection of the lives of Chinese living abroad.

7. Eternal Vigilance¹¹ is the Price of Liberty

Since there is danger that through ignorance or thoughtlessness some people may be treated unfairly, every one of us should pledge himself always to stand for justice and fair play. The words "injustice" and "*oppression*"¹² ought not to appear on any page of our history that is yet to be written. The future of our nation is largely in the keeping of the boys and girls of today. Eternal vigilance is the price of liberty, and we must never cease to look for wrongs that need correcting. Let us look into our own homes and villages for those who may not be enjoying full liberty. Let us look into our own classroom and playgrounds and see if everyone is

1 取消。 2 創造。 3 通過。 4 履行。 5 可怕的。 6 招募。 7 契約。 8 野獸。 9 鞭撻。 10 禁止。 11 永久的警覺。 12 壓迫。

麼？我們還不該主張取消婢女麼？已有許多城市和縣區已制定法律反對這種惡毒的習慣了。我們要盡力創造輿論，使這種法律通過，並厲行於全國。

還有種奴隸的方式，這是甚至更爲可怕，却很少受公衆的注意。已有好多年了，沒有心肝的經紀人，爲某公司代理招募愚昧的勞工到外洋去做鑛工或植林，主要是在古巴，秘魯和馬來殖民地。他們把一切種類的虛僞希望給與這些勞工，爲他們付川資，條件是他們每人要簽約出賣他們的個人自由，爲期十年或二十年。當他們到達外國的時候，待遇他們好像野獸，而他們的身體就被工作過多和不好的生活情形所燬了。他們常常受鞭笞，甚至被殺，任他們主人的高興。許多人決不能活得這麼長久，足以回到家裏，至於發財更談不到了。政府應該調查該事，禁止這一類的勞動契約，制定合宜的條款以保護海外僑民的生命。

七 永久的警醒是自由的代價

雖然有的危險由於愚昧和沒有思想，而有些人民得到不良的待遇，但是我們人人該保證自己總是站在公正和平等機會方面的。『不公平』和『壓迫』等字不該在我們將來的歷史任何一頁上出現。我國的將來是大部分要今日的男孩和女孩保管。永久的警醒是自由的代價，我們必要不停地檢視我們需要改正的錯誤。讓我們檢視我們的家庭，和村落，因爲他們也許不能享受充分的自由。讓我們檢視我們的課室和操場，看是否人

enjoying the rights of a free citizen. Let us insist that everybody be given a "square deal."¹ That is liberty and democracy. It must reach from the president to the humblest worker in the kitchen.

8. Health and Comfort

The third item in our list of wants is health, which is so important that we shall give a whole chapter to it.

The fourth item is comfort, which depends first upon health. To be comfortable means, first of all, to be free from pain or any bodily unpleasantness—not to be too hungry or *thirsty*², too tired or sleepy, too cold or hot.

By real comfort, however, we mean a great deal more than that. We mean the *absence*³ of all troubles both of mind and of body. There must be good food to eat, good water to drink, good clothes to wear, good shelter from rain and sun and from heat and cold. There must be good *furniture*⁴, conveniences, light, air, etc. There must also be a feeling of safety, an *atmo-sphere*⁵ of friendliness, a satisfaction in labor, the presence of family and friends. When we stop to think what is necessary to our comfort, we find that we can make quite a list without going into the question of what is necessary to our happiness. Let us think for a *little while*⁶ about what is needed only for our comfort, and then ask ourselves if that is more than we want to see all the people of our country have. Do we not wish to see every family living in comfort? Do we not eagerly desire for every man, woman, and child in China life, liberty, health, food, clothing, a home, proper occupation, easy means of transportation and communication, and, in fact, all the comforts of modern life?

9. A Modern Home

What are the comforts of a modern home? Homes *differ*⁷ very much from country to country, from city to city, from village to village, even from house to house.

1 公平待遇. 2 解渴的. 3 沒有. 4 家具. 5 氛圍. 6 一會兒. 7 不同.

人都享受着自由公民的權利。讓我們堅持着人人要『公平待遇。』那是自由和民主。這必須要上至大總統，下至最卑賤的廚役。

八 健康和舒適

我們的人民需要表的第三項是健康，它是這樣的重要，我們將要專章討論。

第四項是舒適，它是首先要倚靠健康的。達到舒適的意義，最最首要的是沒有痛苦或任何人體上的不愉快——不要太饑渴，太疲乏或太倦，太冷或太熱。

可是講到真正的舒適，我們所指的還多着哩。我們指沒有精神上與肉體上的煩惱。一定要有好食吃，好水喝，好衣服穿，好住所以避雨，和日，熱和冷。要有好的家具，方便，光亮，空氣等等。要有安全的感覺，友好的氛圍，工作的滿意，家庭和朋友的團聚。當我們停着思想什麼是我們舒適所必須的，我們就能開滿一單沒問題是我們『快樂』所必需的。讓我們想一會兒，關於什麼是只為我們舒適所必需的，再自問全國人民所有的舒適是否已超出我們所要者之上。我們不願意看到每個家庭生活得很舒適麼？我們不熱望着中國的男，女，孩子都有生命，自由，健康，食物，衣服，家庭，合宜的職業，運輸和交通的便利，和在事實上的一切現代生活的舒適麼？

九 現代家庭

現代家庭的舒適是什麼？各國，各城市，各村落，甚至各家的家庭都有很大的差異。不要從電影上獲得現代家庭的觀

Do not get your idea of a modern home from the motion pictures. They usually show either the very poorest, or those so grand that they can hardly be real homes.

The things that really make a good home can be pictured or described only in part. Many of the most important factors are hidden in the hearts of those who live in that home. Someone has said that wherever there is a mother's love there is a home. *Affection*¹ and mutual service make a home more comfortable and happy than anything else. Fortunately those are contributions that every one of us can make in his own home. If the members of a home circle are always watching for opportunities to assist, to understand, to sympathize with and to encourage one another, the home is certain to be a happy one. More than that, such a home is a strong center of patriotism. From such homes come our heroes and our public-spirited citizens. The home is the unit and center of democratic civilization. Now and in the future do all you can to make your home a good one. A man or a woman should not live alone, and yet a home ought not to be so large as to lose its simple character as the center of a single family.

What is your idea of an ideal Chinese home? Can you picture an ideal home in a city? in a small town? in a village? Remember we should not want for ourselves more than we want to see every home in China have. Picture your ideal in terms of your experience and observation and Chinese conditions *in general*². As living conditions differ from country to country, home life will be different. Since we are studying English, it may be interesting to learn something about home life in the West.

10. A Western Home in a City

Let us begin with a modern home in a city of a Western country; we shall not give names or places. The family all eat *breakfast*³ together. In winter the house is already warm. There is a *coal stove*⁴ or furnace, the fire in

1 爱情. 2 一般的. 3 早餐. 4 煤爐.

念。電影裏不是表現着最最窮苦的，就是那末高貴，它們都很難說是真正的家庭。

這些真正造成一個優美家庭的東西，能攝取或描寫的只有一部分。許多最最重要的因素是藏在住在屋子裏的人的心裏。有些人說有母愛的地方就是家庭。愛情和互助使一個家庭比任何所在爲舒適而快樂。有幸地這個貢獻我們人人都能在家庭裏做到的。如果家庭圈內的人員都常在守候着機會去幫助，去了解，互相同情和鼓勵，那末這家庭確是個快樂家庭了。進一步講，這種家庭就是愛國主義的強固中心。從這種家裏生出我們的英雄和有公益精神的公民。家庭是民主文化的單位和中心。現在和將來都要盡力使你的家庭爲優美的一個。一個男子或一個婦人不該孤獨地住着，並且家庭不該過大，以喪失其簡單的性質。這種性質是一個小家庭的中心呢。

關於理想的中國家庭你有什麼觀念？你能描寫一個城市裏的理想家庭麼？能描寫鎮集上的與鄉村上的麼？記好我們爲自己所要的東西不可比之所望於中國家庭者爲多。用你的經驗和觀察以及一般的中國情形描寫你的理想。因爲生活狀況一國和一國不同。家庭生活也就各異。我們讀了英文以來，也許對於知道一些西方家庭生活的事感着興趣罷。

十 城市裏的西洋家庭

讓我們以西洋國家的城市裏家庭做開頭罷；我們將不寫出名字和地點。這個家庭大家都一起吃早餐。在冬天房子裏總是溫暖。有一架煤爐或火爐，爐中的火今天燒到明天，總是不滅。

which does not go out from one day to the next, and yet does not require much coal. Breakfast may be as early as seven o'clock, and yet milk, fresh meat or fish, the newspaper, and the early morning *mail*¹ have already been delivered. The family read and talk about their letters and the news while they eat breakfast, or just before and after breakfast.

After that each goes at once to his day's work. The father takes a tramcar or bicycle to his business. Perhaps he walks. Perhaps he has a motor car. Perhaps he has a chauffeur, or drives and takes care of the car himself. Perhaps he takes his sons and daughters to school or work and his wife to the *market*².

The mother does her *shopping*³. She may go to the market herself and select food for the family. She knows what foods are best and most economical. When she returns to the house, she sees that the rooms are swept, the windows opened, the beds made up, and preparations for *lunch*⁴ started. When the house is clean and well aired it is closed again and is soon warm enough for writing, sewing, and for lunch. Perhaps there is a servant or even more than one to assist in the work.

At noon there is a *reunited family*⁵, unless some go so far to work or school that they cannot return. There is something interesting to tell about the morning's experiences, as well as something good to eat, chosen by mother and cooked in just the right way. Then one goes back to work; another returns to school; another goes to teach or study music. Mother calls a friend on the telephone and makes an appointment to meet her and discuss plans for some *social-service*⁶ work.

Later in the afternoon the father returns from his business and goes with one of the family for a walk or a ride. One of the boys comes in from school after a game of football and goes at once to have a bath. He *plunges*⁷ into clean water in a clean white *tub*⁸ in a clean white room. There are hot water and cold water, good *smooth*⁹

1 郵件。 2 市場。 3 購物。 4 午飯。 5 團聚的家庭。 6 社會服務。 7 跳入。 8 浴缸。 9 光滑的。

的，但是不需要許多的煤。早餐也許早到晨間七時就吃，那時牛乳，新鮮的魚肉，新聞紙和早上的郵件都已送來了。這個家庭讀着講着這些信件，和新聞，在他們早餐的時候，或是早餐前後。

以後，每人都立即去做他們的日間工作。父親趁電車或騎腳踏車去辦事。也許是走去的。也許他有輛汽車。也許他有個車夫，也許自己開車，並且自己當心這輛車。也許他帶着他的兒子，女兒到學校裏去，或是去工作，帶着他的妻子到市場上去。

母親出去購物。也許她自己到市場上去，並為家庭選購食物。她知道什麼食品是最最好的，並且是最最經濟的。當她回到家裏的時候，她看見房間已掃淨，窗子已打開，床已鋪好，並且開始在預備午飯了。等到屋子裏的空氣清新以後，再把窗子關好，於是立即就會溫暖起來，可以寫作，縫紉，和做飯了。那裏也許有一個或甚至一個以上的僕人幫助做這些工作。

在午間又是個團聚的家庭了，除非有些人工作或上學的地點太遠了，他們不能回來。於是講着一些早上經歷的有興趣的事，並也講着什麼東西好吃，母親所選的與燒煮的方法很不錯。於是一個回去工作；還有一個回到學校去；另有一個去教授或研究音樂。母親用電話招呼一個朋友，約定會晤的日期，並且討論一些社會服務工作的計劃。

傍晚父親從他的職務上回來了，就和他家人的一個出去散步或是騎馬。孩子中的一個在足球遊戲後從校裏回來了，就立即去洗澡。他跳入潔白浴室中潔白浴缸裏的清潔的水裏。有熱水和冷水，好的光滑的肥皂，和粗糙的毛巾。他從浴室裏出

soap, and a rough *towel*¹. He comes out feeling like a new person, and after dressing he studies his lessons before dinner.

At dinner time each one has finished his day's work, his afternoon's recreation, his *toilet*², and perhaps all preparations for tomorrow. Each has something interesting to tell. Dinner is enjoyed, and if there is no servant, all take a hand at washing the dishes and putting things away for the night.

Then comes the comfortable evening hour. The light is *turned on*³ in the *sitting-room*⁴, where all have comfortable seats. Someone reads a good book to the others or starts a game of some kind. Or perhaps there is an *open fire*⁵ with a soft light, so that all wish to have the electric light *turned off*⁶ and a story told around the fire. Or perhaps some friend or friends come in for an evening's conversation or games or music. Someone is asked to play the piano or to sing. So the evening is spent in comfort and *wholesome*⁷ pleasure of one kind or another. Finally the father or mother reminds all of the passage of time and of the eight hours that everybody should sleep. Lights are turned out and *bedroom*⁸ lights are turned on. Soon these lights are out, windows are open, and all are fast asleep in clean and comfortable beds.

11. A Western Home in a Small Town

This is a home in a small town. Father and sons are up before breakfast to start a fire in the kitchen stove, to cut some wood or carry some coal or attend to the furnace, to care for the cow and to wash the motor car, to bring in the milk and to clean shoes and clothes. Mother and daughters cook breakfast and take care of the smaller children.

After breakfast all go to work or school or go shopping or do housework. They probably walk to work and school and to their shopping. The mother and daughters care for the house, make and mend clothes, and sometimes *can*⁹

1 毛巾。 2 裝飾。 3 旋亮。 4 休息室。 5 壁爐。 6 旋暗。 7 有益的。 8 寢室。 9 裝罐。

來覺得像一個新人，穿好衣服後，他在夜飯前溫習他的功課。

在晚飯時，人人都已完畢他的日間工作，他的午後的消遣，他的裝飾，並且甚至於準備好明天的工作。人人都有有興趣的事講述。晚飯享受了，如果他們沒有僕人，人人都相幫洗滌盆子，把東西放好，因為是晚上了。

於是舒適的晚上到了。休息室裏的電燈旋亮，在那裏人人有舒適的座位。有人向着別人讀良好的書，或是開始作某種遊戲。或是那裏是一具壁爐，有着柔和的光亮，所以人人都願意把電燈旋暗，環着爐子講故事。也許有一個或幾個朋友跑來做晚上的談話，或是遊戲，或是音樂。有人是被要求着彈鋼琴或是唱歌。這樣地一個晚上就在舒適和種種有益的娛樂上消磨了。最後父親或母親向各人提醒時間不早。每人需有八句鐘的睡眠。旋暗了燈光，把臥室的燈光旋亮。不久這些燈光也暗了，窗戶是開着的，人人都在清潔和舒適的床上睡着了。

十一 小鎮裏面的西洋家庭

這是種小鎮裏的家庭。父親和兒子在早餐以前起來，在廚房的煤爐裏生起火來，斫一些木柴，搬運一些煤炭，或當心煤爐，或當心乳牛和洗汽車，帶進牛乳來，刷靴子和衣服。母親和女兒煮早飯和當心較小的孩子。

在早餐以後人人去工作或上學校，或購物，或做家事。他們工作，上學校，購物想是步行的。母親和女兒照管屋子，製衣服，或是修補破處，有時把水菓裝在罐頭裏。沒有僕人，照

fruit. The care of a whole house seems a large task without a servant, but even in a small town there are usually gas and electricity. A *gas stove*² needs only a light. An *electric iron*² needs only to be moved. An *electric vacuum cleaner* *takes*³ all the dirt and dust out of the house. Electric lights leave no smoke or oil. *Steam heat*⁴ makes no dirt. *Laundry is sent out*⁵, and occasionally a man or woman is employed to come in and work. There are no dogs to *soil*⁶ the floors, and chickens are kept in a yard at the back of the house.

If the father's work is at a distance, he may not come home for lunch, but all return before dinner in the evening.

Lunch and dinner are times for news. In a small town everybody knows everybody else. Mother wants to know what is going on in town, what the schools are doing, what strangers have come, and what the newspaper says. Everything is discussed.

The hour or two before dinner is spent in many ways that add to the comfort and pleasure of the home. There may be a back garden in which all the family like to work. There are chickens to take care of, furniture to be repaired or moved, a broken glass to be replaced, the grass in the front yard to cut, some flowers to plant, a broken gate to *fix*⁷, painting or *whitewashing*⁸ to do, a *drain*⁹ to mend. No workman is needed: it is part of the fun and exercise of the family. The beauty and comfort of the home are enjoyed more because these things are done without help or expense. Sometimes the late afternoon is spent in games or a *trip*¹⁰ of some kind. Perhaps dinner is packed in a basket and all go out for an evening picnic in the fields or woods. Often neighbors call, and the time is spent in conversation on the *veranda*¹¹ or on the clean grass.

The evening is short after dinner is eaten and after the last of the day's work is done; for the family go early to bed, since they rise earlier than the people of the city. Lessons are quickly studied, things are talked over, the

1 煤氣爐。 2 電熨斗。 3 電氣真空掃除器。 4 熱水汀。 5 要洗的衣服送了
出去。 6 弄髒。 7 修理。 8 刷白粉。 9 陰溝。 10 小遊。 11 走廊。

管一所整個的屋子，似乎是很大的事業呢，但是即使是小鎮通常也總有煤氣和電氣的。煤氣爐只需一點火。電熨斗只需把它移動好了。一架電氣真空掃除器把屋子裏一切的污穢與灰塵掃出去。電燈不留着煙和油。熱水汀不生污穢。要洗的衣服送了出去，偶然也有男子或婦人被雇用叫他跑進來做工作的。沒有狗弄髒地板，雞是關在屋子後面的圍場裏的。

如果父親的工作地點有點路，也許他不回家吃飯，但却有人在晚飯前回來的。

中飯和晚飯是談新聞的時候。在小鎮裏人人知道人人的事情。母親要知道鎮上有什麼事，學校做些什麼事，有什麼異鄉人進來，報紙上說些什麼。每件事都討論着。

晚飯前一個或兩個鐘點是以各種方法消磨着的，這些方法是加增家庭的舒適和快樂的。那裏也許有一個後園，在那裏全家都歡喜去工作的。那裏有小雞要當心，有家具要修補或移動，一處碎掉的玻璃要換過，前庭裏的草地要剪，有花要種植，一扇破的門要修理，油漆或刷白粉，一個陰溝要修。不需要工人；這是家庭裏的一部分遊戲和體操。家庭的美麗和舒適是享受得更多，因為這些東西是不要幫助或不費錢做成的。有時這個傍晚是在遊戲或小遊裏消磨掉。也許晚飯是裝在籃子裏，大家出去在田間或林木裏做一個晚上的野餐。常常有鄰舍來拜望，而時間就消磨在走廊上或清潔的草地上的談話。

在吃晚飯之後和在一天工作做完之後，晚上的時間已很短了；因為這種家庭很早的上床，所以他們起身也比城裏的人早。功課學習得很快，事情講論過，新聞紙讀過，雜事都辦

newspaper is read, small matters are *attended to*¹, and soon all are asleep.

12. A Western Country Home

This is a country home. It is several miles from any town, but there are other farm homes not far away and also a post office and a store or two. The house stands among beautiful big trees; the smooth grass under them runs down to the road. Behind the house are the chicken yards, the *barn*², and the small house in which the motor car is kept. Not far away is a stream of clean water. In it is a hydraulic ram which is kept working all the time by the stream. It pumps water into a *tank*³ above the house. This gives water in the kitchen and *bathroom*⁴ and in the back yard, and the overflow of the tank always keeps full a trough of drinking-water for the cows and horses at the barn.

Before breakfast one of the boys *feeds*⁵ and milks the cows and takes them to the field of grass where they spend the day. The horses are fed and made ready for work. The girls gather fruit, make the beds, and help their mother prepare breakfast. A bell is rung. The father and boys come in from the stable and wash hands and faces; then breakfast is eaten. There are *berries*⁶ and *cream*⁷, *bacon*⁸ and eggs, bread and *butter*⁹ and milk, and hot cakes with *honey*¹⁰. Everybody talks about the day's plans.

After breakfast two boys take the horses to one of the fields to cultivate the corn. With modern *implements*¹¹ they put a fairly large field into good condition before lunch time. Then they get on their horses and come back around by the *cherry trees*¹², where they have a feast. Meanwhile the girls have picked several *bucketfuls*¹³ of berries. Mother has made *jam*¹⁴ of some of the fruit and stored it away for winter. Father has *sprayed*¹⁵ an apple orchard to protect it from scale insects, *caterp lars*¹⁶, and other pests.

1 辦妥。 2 穀倉。 3 水槽。 4 浴室。 5 飼。 6 漿果。 7 乳酪。 8 鹹肉。
9 白塔油。 10 蜜。 11 器具。 12 櫻桃樹。 13 滿桶。 14 果漿。 15 噴殺
蟲藥水。 16 毛蟲。

妥，就立即大家睡熟了。

十二 西洋鄉村家庭

這是種鄉村家庭。它去鎮集有數里之遙，但是在那裏並不甚遠還有別的村屋，也有一所郵局和一兩家的店鋪。房屋直立在美麗的大樹間；下面光滑的草地一直接到路上。屋子後面是雞場，穀倉，和藏着汽車的小屋子。不遠有一條清整的溪流。溪裏面有自動揚水機，被溪流所轉動，所有的時間都在工作。它抽水引到屋上的水槽裏。以此供給廚房，浴室，和後天井裏的水，水槽裏溢出來的水常充滿棚裏的牛馬槽。

在早餐以前孩子中的一個飼乳牛與擠牛乳，把它們帶到草地上去，他們就在那裏消磨整天，馬喂了並等着工作。女孩們收集水菓，鋪床，幫助他們的母親準備早餐。打了鐘。父親和男孩從廐舍裏跑進來，洗了手和臉，於是吃早餐。那兒有漿菓和乳酪，鹹肉和雞蛋，麵包，白塔油，和牛乳，還有塗着蜜的熱餅。人人談論着一天的計劃。

早餐以後兩個孩子帶着馬到田間去種穀。用着新式的器具，在午飯前，他們把很大的田地弄得很好。於是他們騎上了馬，繞過櫻桃樹回去，就在樹旁吃了一頓櫻桃。正在此時這個女孩子已採得滿桶漿菓。母親把一些菓子製成菓漿，並儲藏起來以備冬天之用。父親在蘋菓園裏噴殺蟲藥水以保護它，使它不受甲蟲，毛蟲，和別的害蟲的傷害。

At lunch all are hungry and make short work of the *fried chicken*¹ and the fresh vegetables which have come in from the garden. There are accounts of what has been done and seen during the morning. There is a discussion as to whether the rest of the berries shall be canned or sold. It is decided that mother and the girl shall take them to town. The boys at once rush away and pick a lot of cherries to sell, too. One of the girls drives the car. In town they sell the berries and cherries to a *fruit dealer*², do their shopping, and come home. One of the girls picks up a *rubber hose*³, turns on the water, and washes the wheels of the car without even wetting her hands.

Father has been telephoning about his *peaches*⁴. He has made arrangements for skilled men to pick and pack them. He has decided, moreover, to ship the peaches to New York, and has made a contract for the *boxes*⁵, the shipping, and the sale. This news will be interesting and *instructive*⁶ to the boys when they return. They have picked and brought in more cherries and then have gone for a swim.

Evening comes. Father milks the cows. The boys feed the horses and put them up for the night or make some repairs on the car or *tractor*⁷. Mother feeds the chickens and brings in the eggs. The girls light the lamps and set the table for supper. There is plenty to eat—a big *cherry pie*⁸, cool rich milk, and lots of bread and butter and *cheese*⁹. And yet no fire has been made for supper. The pie was baked at lunch time. Before and after supper the family sit on the varanda or under the trees. The *postman*¹⁰ brings the mail. There are magazines, newspapers, and letters. One of the girls runs the gramophone.

That is summer. In winter there is less work. There are repairs to make, wood to cut, cows to feed, fires to make, snow to *shovel*¹¹. Then there are rides to school, studying, reading, hunting, and *entertaining*¹².

1 煎雞。 2 水果商。 3 橡皮管。 4 桃。 5 裝箱。 6 有益的。 7 牽引車。 8 櫻桃餅。 9 乾酪。 10 郵差。 11 鏟除。 12 款待。

午飯時大家都餓了，就很快地吃完煎雞和從園裏採進來的新鮮菜蔬。計算着在早晨已做好了或看過了什麼東西。討論着餘多的漿菓還是裝罐呢還是售賣。決定母親和女孩子那一個把它們拿到鎮集上去。男孩子立即奔出去，也採了許多櫻桃去發賣。一個女孩子駕車。他們在鎮集裏把漿菓和櫻桃賣給一個菓子商，購物，就回家去。一個女孩子拿起了橡皮管，旋水出來，沖洗這車上的輪，却一點也不濕她的手。

父親打電話接洽他的桃子。他已和技巧的人訂了約，叫他們來採和裝。他更已決定把桃子用船運到紐約去，並且把裝箱，船運和售賣的事都訂了契約。這個消息也許對於孩子們是很有興趣和很有益的，當他們回來時。他們已採了更多的櫻桃帶來了。以後就出去游泳。

黃昏到了，父親擠牛乳。孩子們喂馬，把它們牽到廄裏去過夜，修補車子或是牽引車。母親喂雞，把雞蛋帶進來。女孩們點燈，鋪好桌面，以備晚餐。那裏有許多的東西好吃呢——大櫻桃餅，冷而濃的牛乳，許多的麵包和白塔及乾酪。但是晚餐是不舉火的。餅還是中飯時煎的哩。晚飯前後這個家庭坐在廊上或坐在樹下。郵差送郵件來，有雜誌，新聞紙，和信件。一個女孩子跑去開留聲機。

那是夏天。在冬天工作要少一些。只有修補的工作，和斫樹，喂牛，生火，鏟雪。那時他們騎馬上學校，學習，誦讀，打獵和款待。

13. Rural¹ China

It has been said that 80 per cent of China's population is rural. There is no way of knowing *definitely*², for there has never been a careful and accurate census of the whole population, such as there is in many Western countries; but certainly a very large majority of the people live on farms or in farming villages. The greatest problems in China, therefore, are the rural problems. How can so vast a number of country people be made comfortable, healthy, strong, and happy? They ought to have plenty of food, good clothing, bright and comfortable homes, pretty villages, agricultural equipment and science, roads and telephones, education, organization, and protection.

Some of these things come with good government and some with ordinary education, both of which we shall discuss later. All of them are aided by increased means of communication and transportation. We already have a wonderful telegraph and postal system, as we shall see, and telephones are being increased rapidly. Motor roads and railroads all over the country are necessary to the welfare of the rural people. Without good roads and railways they cannot *obtain*³ such *necessities of life*⁴ as medicines, books, and magazines. Every year people somewhere are starving, while others are selling food for almost nothing, or even letting it *rot*⁵, because it costs too much to carry it to market. It is said that wheat sometimes sells for 27 or 30 coppers a *picul*⁶ in western China when it is selling for \$4 or \$5 in Shanghai. Roads and railroads will increase many times the wealth and comforts and happiness of the people who are far from the cities. It is very important for us to keep this ever before the officials and *investors*⁷ and also before the rural people themselves.

Many of these much-needed roads can be built by the country people themselves. They need organization and leadership for this purpose and also for other cooperative enterprises. If they would organize, they could dike

1 農村的。 2 的確地。 3 獲得。 4 生活必需品。 5 腐爛。 6 担。 7 投資者。

十三 農村的中國

據說中國人口的百分之八十是農民。那是沒有法子可以確定地知道的，因為沒有當心的與準確的全人口統計，好像在許多西洋國家般；但却確有極大多數的人民住在田間，或是住在農村裏。於是中國最大的問題就是農村問題。怎樣能使這末大量的鄉民舒適，健康，強壯和快樂？他們該有許多的食品，好的衣服，光線充足和舒適的家庭，美麗的村落，農業的器具和科學，道路和電話，教育，組織和保護。

有些東西是要靠着良好的政府，有些靠着通常的教育，兩者在後面都要討論的。一切都要受交通，與運輸方法增加的幫助。我們已經有很好的電話和郵政，如我們所看見的，並且電話正在急速地增加。汽車路和火車路遍於全國，是為農民一般福利所必需的。沒有好的道路和汽車路他們不能得到這樣的生活必需品，如醫藥，書籍，和雜誌。每年各地有人民挨着餓，也有人賣掉他的食物而差不多沒有得到什麼，或者甚至於讓它爛掉，因為把它運到市場上的代價太大了。據說在中國西部小麥有時每擔只賣二十五或三十個銅元，而其時在上海却要賣到四五元。道路和鐵路將增加好幾倍的人民財富，舒適和快活。他們是住得去城市很遠的。把這種事情永永放在官吏和投資者的面前，和農民自己的面前，這是對於我們很重要的。

許多必需的路能由村中的人民自己去築的。他們在這目的上和別的合作事業上都需要組織和領袖。如果他們組織起來，他們就能夠築壩岸，美麗鎮容，開學校，保平安，而不論賣買

rivers, beautify towns, open schools, secure protection, and both buy and sell at better prices. Many villages with wonderful possibilities of beauty are ugly and filthy because the men sit about in the winter and do nothing when they could just as well be working together to beautify and improve their towns. An old countryman was once asked what he did in the winter time. He replied, "Sometimes I sit and think," and sometimes I only sit." But, you say, what can the poor rural people do without money? They can do a large share of this work without money, and that will *bring in*² money. The people who lived in a certain village named Tungshan had land worth \$100 a *mow*³. That village began to be improved. It was improved so much that many people wanted to come there to live. In a few years the land was worth \$1000 a *mow*. True, in many reforms money is necessary; but it is more important to have an ideal, an earnest desire for improvement, and public-spirited cooperation. Given these, there is usually some way to get the needed money. Begin an improvement in some simple and inexpensive way. Let the people see how much better things can be made. The success of a person or village will be a great *encouragement*⁴ to others near by.

14. Thrift and the Pursuit⁴ of Happiness

Most men make more than they need to spend. It is possible for them to improve their lives and homes and to leave their children in better *circumstances*⁵ than those in which they themselves grew up. There is nothing impossible about it. They must, however, learn how to do it. Is it not our duty to learn and then to teach them? One thing necessary is thrift. Wise people spend for things of permanent value. They increase their capital. If you have capital to work for you, you have more time and money for the enjoyment of life. If families and towns save their money and then put it into things of permanent value, they are piling up the means of enjoyment to an ever-increasing degree.

1 賺得. 2 敵. 3 畝. 4 追求. 5 環境.

都得着好價錢。許多村落有美麗的極大可能性，却是污穢與醜陋，因為這些人在冬天坐着，在他們能夠好好地合作以美麗和改良他們鎮集的時候一點也不做什麼。有一次，人家問一個鄉下老冬天做些什麼。他回答：『有時我坐着想想，有時我只是坐着。』但是你說，這些窮苦的農民沒有錢能做什麼呢？但是他們能做的大部分的工作是不要錢的反而却可以賺得金錢。住在喚作東山的村裏的人民，他們的地每畝值一百元。那個村落開始改良了。它是改良得這末多，所以許多人民都要到那裏去居住。在不多幾年裏土地就值到每畝一千元了。真的，有許多的改良是必需要錢的；但是更重要的是有一種理想，一種要改良的熱誠欲望，和公益精神的合作。有了這幾點，通常也有幾種方法可籌必需的金錢。要以簡單和不費的方法開始改良。讓人民看能夠做出多少較好的事物。一個人或一村的成功將給予鄰近村落以大大的鼓勵。

十四 節儉與追求快樂

大多數的人賺的錢要比他們必須花用的要多。改良他們的生活與家庭，把他們的孩子留在比他們自己所生育之地更好的環境，這是他們辦得到的事。那是並無一點不可能的。可是他們必定要曉得怎樣去做。去學習和教給他們不是我們的責任麼？一件必要的事是節儉。聰明的人民只消費在有永久價值的事物上。要加增他們的資本。如果你有資本為你運用，你就有更多的時間和金錢以娛你的生活了。如果家庭和鎮集省了它們的錢，而來用於有永久價值的事物上，她們是積聚這種快樂的方法而使之永永增加不已。

Why is it that men keep on working after they have saved enough for the "rainy day"¹? Why do young men and women *strive*² ceaselessly for larger salaries?

There are two reasons. One is that hard work is like a *tonic*³ to the brain and body. Without work the brain would grow *dull*⁴ and the body *flabby*⁵. The rich man as well as the poor man needs to keep at his work year after year. But there is still another reason—the most important one. Children and men and women are seeking happiness. Animals are satisfied if they can get food and can protect themselves against heat and cold. Men need more than this. It is not enough for us to sit down to food: we want it attractively served. When we have finished our day's work we are not *content*⁶ to sit doing nothing. It is not enough merely to have our family around us. We want them to enjoy themselves. We are eager to read a good story, to hear beautiful music, to see beautiful pictures, or to look at other things that please the eye. We need flowers, green grass, tall trees, clean roads. We need schools and lectures and entertainments.

Every person should have a home full of beauty; he needs to live in a town whose streets are shaded with beautiful trees and whose houses are well kept and attractive. The sooner a person begins to save, the sooner he can make his home and his town beautiful.

No town or home is successful unless it has real beauty. If every family in each town or city would see that the *yards*⁷ and the *outsides*⁸ of the houses were neat and attractive, there would be more enjoyment in living in them. Men who own their homes usually take better care of them than those who live in *rented houses*⁹. This is a mistake, for the families that pay rent are as much a part of the town as those that own their houses. There is something wrong with the man who is content to live in a house that is in need of repairs.

Let us be eager for better homes, better villages, more comforts and pleasures for all the people—for more nice

1 困難時。 2 努力。 3 補藥。 4 遲鈍。 5 柔弱。 6 滿足。 7 天井。 8 外表。 9 租屋。

在人民省下了足夠的錢以防困窮時，爲什麼他們仍要繼續工作呢？爲什麼青年男女不停地努力以求較大的薪俸呢？

那有兩個理由。一個是辛苦的工作好像是腦筋和體力的補藥。沒有工作腦筋就要慢慢遲鈍，而身體也便要柔弱了。富人和窮人一樣需要年復一年地繼續工作。可是另外還有理由——最最重要的一個。孩子與男子，女子是在找尋快樂。動物如果能獲得食物和保護自身，不受寒熱的侵襲就滿足了。人却所需要的更多呢。坐着吃還是不夠：我們還要它滋味好。當我們把日間工作完畢了之後，我們並不就以坐着不做什麼爲滿足的。只有我們的家人圍繞我們也是不夠的。我們要他們自己去享樂。我們是熱烈地去讀一本好的故事，去聽美麗的音樂，去看美麗的圖畫，或是去看悅目的別的東西。我們需要花兒，綠的草，高的樹，清潔的路。我們需要學校，演說和款待。

人人該有個充滿美麗東西的家庭；他需要住在鎮上，街道蔭覆着美麗的樹，他的房子收拾整潔而美觀。一個人開始節省得愈早，他也能更早地使他的家庭和他的鎮集美麗。

沒有鎮集或家庭能有成就，除非它有真正的美麗。如果每城每鎮的每一家看起來。屋子的天井和外表都是整潔而動人，那末住在其間生活當更其愉快。人們住自己房子的通常總比租屋住的人把屋子照管得好。這是種錯誤，因爲出租錢的家庭和住自己屋子的家庭都是鎮上的一分子。一個人住在一所需要修補的屋子而已經滿足，那是有些錯誤的。

讓我們熱誠地要求着較好的家庭，較好的村落，爲民衆謀更舒適和較快樂的生活——要較多的整齊街道，較多的公園，

streets, more parks, more reading, more enjoyment of life; but let us remember two things: first, that such improvements take long years of thrift and labor and coöperative effort and, second, that every little bit that we do to encourage these things *hastens*¹ the day when they shall be *realized*².

15. "Too Many Mouths to Feed"³

A poor man who was carrying his farm produce to market was asked: "Why don't you buy a wheelbarrow? It would save you much time and labor." He replied, "I have too many mouths to feed." This man was unwise in two ways: he failed to invest in equipment that would have increased his income, and he allowed his family to grow so large that he could not take care of them. He ought not to have had too many mouths to feed. A man should not marry until he is fully able to support himself and his wife and to make a permanent home, and then they should not have more children than they are able to care for—to feed, to clothe, to keep well and strong, to educate, and to *surround*⁴ with the comforts that make life so much the happier.

The country can produce only so much, which must be divided among the people; and the larger the number of the people, the smaller the share for each. By modern science, transportation, etc. you can increase the amount produced and distributed; but if the number of people at once increases likewise, each one is no better off than before—in fact, in the change many will become far worse off than before. We must, then, produce more, and at the same time not proportionately increase the number of new mouths to feed but, rather, *reduce*⁵ the proportion. No one knows definitely the present rate of increase of China's population. But if health and living conditions improve rapidly under a good government, the *death rate*⁶ will greatly decrease, and then the rate of increase in population will be much

1 催促。 2 實現。 3 食口太多。 4 環繞。 5 減縮。 6 死亡率。

較多的讀物，較多的生活樂趣；但是讓我們記好兩件事：第一，這種改良要長時期的節省，勞力，和合作。其二，我們爲了鼓勵這些東西而做的每一小點子都能催促它們實現的日子。

十五 食口太多

一個窮人，他肩負了他的農產物到市上去，人家問他：『你爲什麼不買一輛小車呢？它可以省掉你許多時間和勞力。』他回答：『我的食口太多。』這個人在兩種地方都不聰明：他不能投資於設備上，那是可以增加他的收入的，還有他允許他的家庭發長得那末大至於他不能照顧他們。他該不要有太多的口去喂養。一個人非到他能充分自給與給養他的妻子，並且能造成一個永久的家庭時是不該結婚的，那末他們就不會有太多的孩子至於不能照顧了——如給養，穿衣，保持其健康，教育之，並且有舒適的環境，使生活樂趣頗多。

國家的生產只能這末多，而必定要分配與人民間；於是人民的數目愈多，每人的分得也愈小。靠了現代科學，運輸，等等，你能夠增加生產量，和支配量；但是如果人民的數目也立即一樣地增加起來，那末每人都不能比從前過得好了——在事實上，反而有許多人成爲過得更壞了。所以我們一定要生產得更多，而在同時不是比例地增加給養的新口數目，不如說，減縮其比例。沒有一個人確定地知道現在中國人口增加的速率。但是如果在一良好政府之下，健康和生活情狀迅速地改良，死亡率就會大大地減少，於是人口增加率將比現在更快了。如

faster than at present. If the increase of production does not *run ahead*¹ of the increase of population, it will prevent China from *rising*². It would keep wages low. It would probably increase disease. It would make the improvement of conditions difficult. Poor people would remain poor and become more and more discouraged. The need for more land might lead China into terrible wars, where she would lose millions of her best young men.

There are three hopeful things to keep in mind: one is that this is a matter which the people can control and upon which they may be educated, upon which they may try to form right opinions and ideals, just as we are trying to do now. Another is that as conditions improve, as production increases, as products are better distributed and marketed, as knowledge grows, and as people think more about *modern standards of living*³ and of enjoying life, the marriage age will naturally be advanced. A third is that people may be encouraged to move from *congested areas*⁴ to *sparsely settled regions*⁵ in the country. In any case it demands the attention of every generation of young people.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Describe a few of the acts a public-spirited citizen can perform for his country.
2. What are some of the causes of China's great losses of life? How can these losses be prevented? Mention a few ways.
3. Describe a home in a Chinese city; in a rural district in China. Can you compare one of these with a city or a country home in the West?
4. Tell of some of the needs of rural communities in China.
5. What are some good qualities of a Chinese home? of a Western home?

1 趕前。 2 興起。 3 現代標準。 4 繁鬧區域。 5 冷落的地方。

果生產增加沒有趕在人口增加的前面，就能妨礙中國的興起。它會減低工資。它將顯然地加增疾病。它將使情狀的改良發生困難。貧窮的人將仍是貧窮，並且愈加失望。更多土地的需求可以引領中國到可怕的戰爭之途，在那裏她將喪失幾百萬的最好青年。

有三件有希望的事要記好：其一這是人民能夠管理的事，在這上面他們可以受到教育，在這上面他們可以試為形成正確的意見和理想，好像我們現在試做的一般。另一件是如果情形改良，生產增加，如果產物善加分配與善價出售，如果知識增長，如果人民多想到生活和生活娛樂的現代標準，那末結婚年齡會自然地提高的。其三是人民要受勸告，從國中的繁鬧區域搬到冷落的地方。無論如何，每一代的青年都應該注意這件事。

問題和練習

1. 描寫幾件一個有公益精神的公民能為他國家做的事情。
2. 中國的生命大損失，其原因是什麼？如何才能防止這種損失？提出幾個方法來！
3. 描寫一個中國的城市家庭；一個中國的農村區域家庭。你能以此和西洋各國的城市與鄉村的家庭作比較麼？
4. 說出一些中國農村社會需要的東西。
5. 中國家庭有些什麼好性質？西洋家庭呢？

6. Discuss the value of thrift.
7. Tell some of the values of work:
 - a. To the individual.
 - b. To the community.
8. What is the chief difference between work and play?
9. What is meant by "*standard of living*"?

6. 討論節儉的價值。
7. 說出工作的一些價值：
 - a. 對個人。
 - b. 對社會。
8. 工作和遊戲，其主要分別何在？
9. 『生活程度』是什麼意義？

CHAPTER XIV

HEALTH, STRENGTH, AND ENERGY

1. Your Success may depend on your Health

When a successful *lawyer*¹ was asked to explain to elementary-school boys what they must do to become successful men, this is one of the things he said: "Train your body. That is what you must make most of your effort with. If your body *fails you at the wrong time*² you will fail indeed. Some day the *crisis*³ will come in your career. You will have, for example, a *lawsuit*⁴ that will decide your future. To win it you must work one night, two nights, perhaps longer, without sleep or food. Will your body *stand*⁵ it? In every person's life there comes the time when success or failure hangs in the balance. Perhaps for days you must be at your best, without sleep or rest. Will your body stand it?"

2. Your Nation's Success may depend on it, too

If ten years from now an enemy should attack this nation, it is the boys who are of school age today who would have to fight, to raise crops for the army, to make *munitions*⁶. It is the girls who would have to be nurses and do the work of the men who had gone to fight. Every boy should train his body as if he expected to be a soldier; every girl should train hers as if she would one day be a Red Cross nurse. In a republic the people govern their own towns, cities, and the whole nation. If the boys and girls of today are to do their share of this work, they will need the same kind of *sturdy*⁷ bodies that soldiers must have. Are our boys and girls growing up healthy and strong for the work that they will have to do? Are the men and women and children you know always well and strong and full of energy?

1 律師。 2 要緊關頭時力不從心。 3 危機。 4 訴訟。 5 支持。 6 軍火。 7 強壯的。

第十四章 健康，體力，和精力

一 你的成功要倚靠你的健康

當一個成功的律師被人家請求向小學學生說明，要做成功的人他們必需做什麼事的時候，他說這是其中的一件：『鍛鍊你的身體。那是你們必須盡力去做的東西。如果你的身體在要緊關頭時力不從心，那你失敗定了。總有一天危機會降臨你的事業上。例如，你有一件訴訟，可以決定你的將來的。要打贏官司你必得做一夜兩夜，或更長的工作，沒有睡也不能吃喝。你的身體能支持麼？每個人的一生總有一個時間，當時失敗和成功懸於平等的。也許你必定要好幾天不食不睡努力去做。你的身體能夠支持麼？』

二 你國家的成功也靠着它

如果十年之後有敵人要侵襲你的國家，那末今日的學齡男孩要去作戰，要去為軍隊播種百穀，製造軍火。今日的女孩子要去作看護，要去做着出征男子所做的工作。個個男孩要鍛鍊體格，因為他盼望做一個兵士的，個個女孩也要鍛鍊體格，因為她有一天要做紅十字看護的。在一個民主國家裏，人民治理他們的鎮，城，和整個的國家呢。如果今天的男孩和女孩要盡他們一分子的工作，他們就需要一個體格和兵士一般強壯。我們的男孩與女孩是在增進健康麼？他們對於要去做的工作有更強壯的體力麼？是否你所認識的男子，女子，和孩子都總是健康，強壯，和精力充滿麼？

3. Chinese are Hardy People

Doctors say that Chinese men and women as a rule can stand pain, *shock*¹, and loss of blood better than either black or white people. It is said that the Chinese soldier with less food and sleep can march farther, carry more, and dig his trenches more quickly than a Western soldier. It is said that Chinese are less likely to *catch most diseases*² than other people, and less likely to die of them. It is said that few people in the world can stand as much exposure as the Chinese—exposure to sun, to rain, to cold, to sudden changes. Certainly there are few people who can work so long and hard upon two simple meals a day.

It is difficult to know whether such statements are true or not; but it is true that the Chinese are a hardy people, certainly among the hardiest in the world. Now the question is, Are they as hardy, healthy, strong, and *energetic*³ as they might be? Are they going to continue to be so as they take their part in the modern world? One is forced to notice that many students in the modern schools of China lose their health, while most of those who go to Western countries to study come back well and strong. We must look carefully into the question of the health conditions in China. Next time when you go back to your native village, ask everybody you know how many times he has been sick during the past year. What are the commonest causes of illness?

4. Health is Necessary to Win Success and to Hold it

A college professor was once asked if he could explain why so many promising students failed when they *went out into the world*⁴. "It is a matter of health, *chiefly*⁵," he said. "It takes almost perfect health to win success, and, if such a thing were possible, even more health to hold success. Success, you know, cannot be won *once for all*⁶. It has to be re-won every year."

1 震駭。 2 養病。 3 有精力的。 4 到社會上去做事。 5 主要地。 6 一勞永逸。

三 中國人是耐勞苦的人民

醫生說中國的男子，女子，比之無論黑人或白人照例能支持痛苦，震駭，和失血。據說中國的兵士比之西洋兵士吃得少，睡得少，却能跑更遠的路，負更重的負擔，掘壕更快。據說中國人好像比別國人民不容易害病，並且也不容易死亡。據說世界上很少人民能像中國人般支持這未許久的驟露——在太陽下雨點下，寒冷裏，突變的天氣裏驟露。當然有很少幾種人民能夠工作得這未長遠和辛苦，却每天只有簡單的兩餐飯。

這些話是真是假，很難知道。但是中國人是全世界最強健者之一，却是事實。現在的問題是：他們確是耐勞，健康，強壯，有精力的嗎？他們繼續去擔負現世界的工作嗎？必須注意：中國現代學校中有許多學生失去健康，而西洋留學回國者却很強健。關於中國的健康問題，我們必須密切注意。當你下次回家時，詢問每一個人，他在去年害了幾次病。什麼是害病的最普通原因？

四 健康為獲得成功與把握成功所必需的

人家問一位大學教授為什麼許多有望的學生當他們到社會上去做事却失敗了，問他能夠解釋麼？『這主要的原因是健康的事情，』他說。『要贏得成功要有差不多十足的健康，並且如果這件事是可能的，那末要把握成功就得更多的健康。成功，你知道的，不能一次贏得就算了。它是要每年去重新獲得的。』

As a rule, most great men and women have been strong and healthy. Sometimes a man with genius will succeed in spite of a weak body. Genius is often *superior to all obstacles*¹, even ill health. But genius is *rare*². Most of us must be simple workers in the office or factory or village. Genius will not come to our assistance. We must rely on brain and body. In Western countries, many a great industrial company requires every person who *applies*³ for a position to be examined by the company's physician. To be accepted the young man or woman must be 90 per cent well and strong. Some of the large *department stores*⁴ also refuse to hire any person who cannot pass a strict *physical examination*⁵. No doubt, modern business in China will do the same thing, and the time may come when all important business houses will refuse to employ any person who cannot prove that his body is well trained and capable of many years of hard work.

It is especially difficult for a man who drinks or smokes to excess either to get or to keep a good position. *Physiologists*⁶ have proved *beyond a doubt*⁷ that alcohol kills more men and causes more *misery*⁸ than war has ever done. Doctors are agreed that while the effects of smoking tobacco on *adults*⁹ are not clear, it is injurious to the rapidly growing bodies of boys and girls.

A person who smokes opium is *bound to fail*¹⁰ and to live a *miserable*¹¹ life. It gradually takes away all his strength, energy, and *will power*¹², and makes him take greater and greater *doses of opium*¹³. He cannot do any useful work, and very soon the drug will leave him a weak body, a dull mind, and an *empty purse*¹⁴. Opium is man's deadly enemy. No man should use it. Every patriot should work for the *prohibition*¹⁵ of opium-smoking in China. Join the *anti-opium movement*¹⁶.

5. Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts

*Hardships*¹⁷ help the body. The right kind of hard training builds up a strong *physique*¹⁸. That is one kind

1 克服一切障礙。 2 稀少的。 3 請求。 4 百貨商店。 5 體格檢查。 6 生理學者。 7 毫無疑問。 8 不幸。 9 成人。 10 必定失敗。 11 悲慘的。 12 志力。 13 煙癮。 14 空錢袋。 15 禁止。 16 禁煙運動。 17 勞苦。 18 體格。

照例，大多數的男女偉人都是強壯和健康的。有時一個有天才的人不管身體壞也能成功。天才常能克服一切障礙，即使健康情形不良。但是天才却很少呢。我們大多數必是簡單的公司裏，工廠裏，鄉村中的工人。天才不能給我們幫助的。我們必定要依賴腦筋，和身體。在西洋各國，許多大實業公司要每一個請求位置的人要受公司醫生的檢驗。青年男女必須要百分之九十的健康與強壯才能受雇。有些大百貨商店也拒絕雇用不能通過一個嚴格檢查的人。無疑的，中國的現代商業也將做同樣的事，一切重要商業機關將予拒絕雇用任何人員，如果他不能證明他的身體鍛鍊得很好並且能勝任許多年數的勞劇，這個時候就要來了。

尤其對於一個飲酒吸煙過量的人難以獲得或保守一個位置。生理學家毫無可疑地證明酒精殺死的人和造成的不幸較之戰爭更多。醫生都同意對於成人吸煙的效果不清楚，可是它却損及男女孩子的迅速長成的身體。

一個抽大煙的人是必定要失敗，並且過着一個悲慘的生活。它慢慢地把他的所有體力，精力，志力奪去，使他的煙癮愈弄愈大。他不能做有用的工作，不久這個迷藥就遺留給他一個衰弱的身體，一副遲鈍的意志，並是一隻空空的錢袋。鴉片為人類死敵。沒有人該吸它。每個愛國的人都該為中國的禁煙而工作。參加禁煙運動去！

五 男童子軍與女童子軍

勞苦有助於身體。正常的刻苦訓練造成強壯的體格。加於

of training that Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts get. They undertake difficult tasks that keep them exposed to the weather and make them work hard for a long time. They *stand guard by the hour*¹. They carry loads and do cooking and other work. They combine the health of outdoors with the hardships of outdoors. This is very strengthening. People in the city would weaken if they did not seek the hardships of outdoor life. Such training as that of the Scouts and of *sports clubs*² and other similar organizations will put new life into every generation even of city people.

Outdoor life is hardening, strengthening, and health-giving. Thousands of Europeans go on long walks every summer. They walk from village to village, from city to city, over the mountains, around the lakes, and along the rivers. The Japanese visit famous places, go to see beautiful views, and *tramp*³ from place to place all over their country. Every summer thousands of American families and parties and clubs go out into the forests to camp. Sometimes a whole school camps out under a military organization. Some families go in motor cars or wagons. Some parties put their food, *cooking-utensils*⁴, ax, and tent upon their backs and tramp away many miles to some lake or river in a forest. They are living again the pioneer life that put such strength and *endurance*⁵ into their ancestors. Has China outdoor sports and customs like these? Is not the time for *attending to graves*⁶ a great outdoor day for the whole nation? Is not "Dragon Boat Day"⁷ a great occasion for making rowing a national sport? How can we develop the best outdoor life for the people?

6. How Many of us are Well?

"How are you?" is a common Western *greeting*⁸. It is usually answered, "Oh, very well, thank you." I wonder how many of us really are very well. Did you sleep soundly eight or nine hours last night? Did you have no unpleasant feeling this morning in your mouth

1 整個鐘頭站着守衛。 2 體育會。 3 步行。 4 燒飯器具。 5 忍耐。 6 掃墓。
7 龍船節。 8 問候。

男女童子軍的訓練就是一種。他們擔任困苦的工作，使他們曝露於各種天氣裏，使他們長時期的工作。他們整個鐘頭站着守衛。他們搬運物件，燒飯和做別的工作。他們把戶外的衛生和戶外的勞苦合起來。這是很能致強健的。城市裏的人民如果他們不找尋戶外生活的勞苦是會衰弱的。像童子軍，體育會和別的類似組織的訓練將以新生命加於各時代裏，即使是城市裏的人們。

戶外生活是勞苦，強健和合於衛生。幾千個歐洲人在夏天做長途的步行。他們從一村跑到一村，一個城市跑到一個城市，越過山，環繞着湖沼，沿着河流。日本人參觀有名的地方，去看美麗的風景，他們一處一處的把全國跑遍。每個夏天幾千個美國家庭，和團體，俱樂部跑到樹林裏去露營。有時整個學校在軍事組織之下出去露營。有些家庭坐汽車去或貨車去。有些團體把他們的食物，燒飯器具，斧子和帳幕背在背上跑了好多里到樹木中的湖沼或河流邊去。他們重新過着原始創造人的生活，這種生活曾以這樣的強健和忍耐給於祖先的。中國有像這種的戶外運動和習慣麼？是不是掃墓爲全國的大出遊日子麼？『龍船節』是全國划船運動的好機會麼？我們怎樣能爲人民發展這最好的戶外生活呢？

六 我們有多少人是健康的？

『你好麼？』是一句普通的西洋問候語。通常的回答是『吓，很好，謝謝你。』我奇怪我們究有多少是健康的呢。你在上一夜是不是酣睡了八點或九點鐘？今天早上你的眼中口裏沒

or eyes? Did you have a good *appetite*¹ for breakfast? Did you feel as if you would like to do something strenuous? Do you never have a pain? Do you never *cough*²? Does your breath never have a bad *odor*³? Do you never have to take any medicine to keep your habits regular? If you can give a *favorable*⁴ answer to every such question, you are indeed very fortunate, for you are probably very healthy. Pain is a sign that something is wrong. A *headache*⁵ is a common sign of many different troubles — of *stomach trouble*⁶, of eye trouble, of *nerve trouble*⁷, etc. Sometimes trouble comes with no sign.

If a person has no bodily weakness or trouble of any kind, he is well, and he is very fortunate. If he is wise, he will keep himself well as long as he can. It is, however, very rare to find anyone physically perfect, absolutely well and strong. We may, many of us, keep near to that condition; and if we make wise and earnest effort, we may all come closer and closer to it.

7. Why seek Health so Strenuously?

One reason for seeking perfect health has been given — to be more fit for the work of life, for the struggle for success, for the service of the nation. *Fitness*⁸ means strength and endurance. Good health makes men and women able to work hard and *stand strain*⁹, to strive and to persist.

Another reason for seeking perfect health is to be free from pain. Pain is not only disagreeable and a sign of trouble but it hinders activity and often prevents success in life. All sickness brings pain or discomfort of one sort or another.

A third reason for seeking perfect health is to lengthen one's life. It is not only the "deadly" diseases that kill. Every sickness weakens. Every accident leaves its *scar*¹¹. Every injury to the body or to its health leaves its effect, something to appear later on, perhaps to shorten life by just a little trouble or weakness added at the very end.

1 食慾. 2 咳嗽. 3 氣味. 4 良好的. 5 頭痛. 6 胃病. 7 神經病. 8 熱心地. 9 擔任. 10 耐苦. 11 傷痕.

有不愉快的感覺麼？你吃早餐時胃口好麼？你覺得好像歡喜做一些努力的事麼？你永不會有痛苦麼？你永不會咳嗽麼？你的氣息永無不好的氣味麼？你從不會用過什麼藥以使你的習慣照常麼？如果你對於每個問題都有良好的回答那你真的很有幸，因為你顯是很健康的。痛苦是一些東西有毛病的記號。頭痛是許多不同症候的記號——胃病，眼病，神經病，等等。有時病症來時沒有什麼記號。

如果人沒有任何一種的身體衰弱或疾病，他就是健康的，並且是有幸的。如果他是聰明的，他就要盡力保持身體健康，愈久愈妙。但是很少找到一個體格完全，和絕對健康與強壯的人。我們有許多也許能保持相近的情形；如果我們做着聰明與熱誠的努力，我們也許可以大家愈趨愈近。

七 爲什麼要熱心地去找尋健康

一個追求完全健康的理由已經說過了——爲要更勝任於一生的工作——就是爲成功而奮鬥，爲國家服務。勝任的意思就是強健和耐力。良好的健康使男子和女子能夠工作辛勞和耐苦，奮鬥和堅持。

還有個追求完全健康的理由就是避免痛苦。痛苦不但是可憎，和疾病的記號，却也阻礙着活力，並且常常妨礙一生的成功。一切疾病都帶着一種或數種的痛苦或不舒服。

第三個追求完全健康的理由就是延長個人的生命。不但是致死的疾病能殺死人。每種疾病都能衰弱人，每種偶然的事都把傷痕留着，每種對於身體或健康的損害却遺留着它的結果。有些東西在後來才發見，也許正是由於小病症或身體的衰弱逐漸增加到頂點而縮短了生命。

A fourth reason for seeking perfect health is found in its purely financial advantage. It not only saves money to have no need of a doctor or a *dentist*¹ and makes life insurance easier and cheaper, but it makes time more valuable and living more economical.

A fifth reason for seeking perfect health is that only a healthy person can grow and develop *normally*². How we like to see handsome people! It is a joy to everybody to look at pretty children and good-looking men and women. Do you realize that most *ugliness*³ is the result of the imperfect health either of the child or its parents? Disease, or lack of proper food, can usually be *blamed*⁴ for ugliness. There are a great many more good-looking and well-formed people among those who are well fed and well taken care of than among the poor and unfortunate. If you are careless of your health and strength, you may leave the *evil effects*⁵ both upon your own body and upon the bodies of your children. *Diseases of impurity*⁶ leave to one's children the worst effects—a *short limb*⁷, a *deformed face*⁸, blindness, etc. *Alcoholism*⁹ or opium-smoking makes weak children. Poor food and poor care and illness of the mother cause children to be born in bad physical condition. They cause *bow legs*¹⁰, bad eyes, bad teeth, and *flat chests*¹¹.

A sixth reason for seeking perfect health is that it gives energy. It makes one eager. It gives *zest*¹² to life. It makes life worth more. Life to a sick man may be so miserable that he cares little for it, but life to a perfectly healthy man is of supreme value. *Enthusiasm*¹³ is the moving force that makes most people accomplish great things. It is difficult for any but healthy people to be enthusiastic or to make others so. If you are advocating some good cause, present it to healthy people, for they are much more likely to be enthusiastic about it. If anyone "*turns you down*,¹⁴" say "*Poor fellow*!¹⁵ he is probably sick." Then try some perfectly healthy man. Health gives energy and joy in life, and, strange to say, the *reverse*¹⁶ is true also—being cheerful and enthusiastic

1 牙醫。 2 正當地。 3 醜陋。 4 歸咎於。 5 不良影響。 6 不潔之病（花柳病）。 7 四肢短小。 8 面容醜陋。 9 嗜酒癖。 10 彎腿。 11 平胸。 12 興味。 13 熱情。 14 攻擊你。 15 可憐的人。 16 顛倒。

第四個追求完全健康的理由是可以從它的純粹經濟利益上找到。它不但因為不需要醫生和牙醫，使人壽保險更其容易而價廉，所以省下了錢，却是可使時間更有價值，生活更其經濟。

第五個追求完全健康的理由就是只有健康的人能夠正常地長大發育。我們多麼歡喜看見美觀的人民呢！看見好看的孩童，好看的男子和女子是人人歡喜的。你明白大多數的醜陋是由於孩子或父親的健康不完全麼？醜陋通常要歸咎於疾病或缺乏合宜的食物。許多好看的和樣子優美的人在吃得好，當心得好的人中比之在貧苦和不幸的人中為多。如果你不當心你的健康和體力，你就會把不良影響遺留於自己的身上和你孩子的身上。不潔的疾病把最壞的影響傳給孩子，——四肢短小，面容醜陋，瞎眼，等等。喝酒精和吸鴉片造成衰弱的孩童。食物不良，照管不良，母親的害病使孩子生而體格情形不佳。使他們彎腿，眼睛不好，牙齒不好，和扁平的胸。

第六個追求完全健康的理由是健康可以生出精力。它使一個人熱心。它以興味給於生命。它使生活更有價值。病人的生活也許這樣的悲慘，可以不必看重，但是對於一個完全健康人生活是極有價值的。熱情是為大多數人完成大事的動力。除掉健康的人，任何人難以發生熱情，或使人家發生熱情。如果你辯護一些好的原因，把它介紹給健康的人們，因為他們對於這個辯護是頗為熱情的。如果有人攻擊你，說『可憐的人，他顯然是有病的吧！』然後試之於一些完全健康的人們。健康給予生命裏的精力和娛樂，並且說也奇怪，顛倒過來也是一樣——

makes one healthier. A doctor who spreads brightness and enthusiasm wherever he goes cures a great many by his more presence and influence.

8. "Safety First" or "I will be Careful"

"Yes, indeed," someone says, "we know all the reasons for wanting to be healthy and well and uninjured. We are not so foolish as to be blind to the importance of these things. Why do you remind us of all these reasons?"

There are 86,400 seconds in a day. There are certainly that number of people *on an average*¹ injured every day by motor cars, tramcars, and other moving *vehicles*² and animals. Take out your watch and think of the fact that for every second it *ticks off*³, somebody, somewhere, is being injured. Think of it the next time you walk out into the street or get into a car or ricksha or, still more, if you ride a bicycle or drive a car. The sad thing is that sickness and accidents come from carelessness, from just the kind of blindness that says, "I am not going to worry about health and that sort of thing." People are careless. You are careless. We must awaken each other to think about these things. We must *take up the cry*⁴ "Safety first!" The man who walks out in front of a train or car is a fool; so is the man who says, "I am not afraid of getting sick."

Stand by the side of a busy street where vehicles of any kind are passing rapidly, and watch the people. *Count*⁵ how many of them do one of the following foolish things:

1. Walk in the paths of the vehicles instead of along the sides of the street.
2. Look in one *direction*⁶ while walking in another.
3. Carry something that keeps them from seeing the road in one direction.

1 平均。 2 車輛。 3 響過。 4 喊起這個口號。 5 計算。 6 方向。

愉快和熱情使人更健康。一個醫生在無論那裏他到的地方傳佈快樂和熱情，許多僅僅被他的出場與受他的影響就把病看好了。

八 『安全第一』或是『我要留心』

『真的不錯，』一個人說，『我們知道需要健康，不生病，和不受傷害的一切理由了。我們不會這樣的呆，對於這些事情的重要都瞎了眼。你爲什麼要把所有的理由來驚醒我們呢？』

每天有八萬六千四百秒。確然地，平均起來天天受傷害的人也有這個數目，他們是喪於汽車，電車和別的車輛及動物。拿出你的錶來，想想那個事實，在每秒鐘嗒嗒地響的時候，就有幾個人某幾個地方被傷害了。下次你步行到街上，或是坐一輛車，或是坐人力車，或進言之，你騎輛腳踏車或自己開車，你想想這件事吧。悲傷的是疾病和意外之事都由於不小心而來，都由於類於盲目的這種話，『我不爲健康和那一類的事作無謂的煩惱。』人民是不小心的。你是不小心的。我們必得要喚醒每一個去想想這些東西。我們必定要喊起這個口號『安全第一！』在火車汽車面前跑過的人是個傻子；這樣說的人也是傻子，『我不怕生病。』

站在忙碌的街道傍邊，那裏各種的車輛很快地過去。再注視着人們。計算有多少人做着下列呆事中的一種：

1. 在車輛的過道上走，而不在街道的旁邊走。
2. 看着一個方向，却另向着別一方向走。
3. 帶着一些東西，可以使他不能看到路上的另一方向的。

4. Carry long objects partly or entirely *crosswise* to the road¹.

5. Allow a motor car or other vehicle to signal more than once before they *clear the road*².

6. *Loiter*³ in the road, or even stop to talk.

7. *Walk on the wrong side of the street*⁴.

The motto⁵ of such people is not "Safety first!" It is "Trust to luck⁶." It ought to be "Safety first!" or "I will be careful."

9. Personal Hygiene⁷

It is the same with the care of the body. As long as one has no pain, and his hunger and thirst are satisfied, and he is not tired, he is likely to forget that he has a body. He gives little thought to health when he eats and drinks. And when he has a pain he usually thinks the pain is something to be driven out of that particular spot.

In schools every girl and boy should be carefully taught how to take care of the body: to *brush the teeth*⁸, to wash the eyes and ears, to keep the hair and skin clean and healthy, to *look out for poisons*⁹, to avoid injurious drugs, to escape the forming of bad habits, to eat proper food, to drink only pure or *boiled water*¹⁰, to have regular habits of eating and sleeping. Certain cities also have passed laws prohibiting the selling of cigarettes to boys or girls.

Many things must be done to make people take care of their health. The first is to teach them the importance of doing so and how to do it. There are now good books of this sort for use in China, both in English and in Chinese. Study them and teach them in and around your home. Recently, just before *Commencement*¹¹, the principal of a certain school brought forward a great pile of health books and asked the students, "How many of you will pay twenty cents each and take some of these

1 橫遮道路。 2 讓開道路。 3 徘徊。 4 意指不靠左走。 5 格言。 6 信仰命運。 7 攝生法。 8 刷牙。 9 留心毒藥。 10 沸水。 11 開學。

4. 帶着長長的東西部分地或完全地橫遮道路。
5. 要汽車或別的車子再三警告，才肯讓開。
6. 徘徊路上，或者甚至站着談話。
7. 在路上相反的一邊走。

這種人的格言不是『安全第一！』却是『信仰命運。』但總該是『安全第一，』和『我要留心』的。

九 個人的攝生法

這是和當心身體一樣的。一個人如果沒有痛苦，他的饑渴都能滿足，並且並不疲乏，在此期內，他就好像忘掉他自己有個身體了。在他吃喝的時候對於健康考慮得很少。而在他有痛苦的時候常常想痛苦是一定缺點中的一些東西而可加以驅除的。

在學校裏每個男孩和女孩都該當心地教導他們怎樣當心身體：刷牙，洗眼，洗耳朵，頭髮和皮膚保持清潔與衛生，留心毒藥，避免有害的藥品。防止不良習慣的形成，吃合宜的食物，只飲純潔和沸過的水，對於吃和睡有一定的習慣。有些城市還通過禁止售買香煙給男女孩子。

使人民當心他們的健康有好許多必需做的事呢。第一是教導他們所以要這樣多的重要性和怎樣做它。現在有了良好的這一類的書足供中國之用，中文和英文都有。研究它們，把它們教給你的家庭和鄰里，最近，恰在開學前，某學校的校長帶來一大捆的衛生書籍詢問這些學生，『你們中有多少人願意每人

books home so as to spread these good-health ideas?" There were two hundred students who raised their hands. They were true patriots.

10. What is Sickness?

Before we go farther let us get a clearer idea of what we mean by good health and bad health, disease, *disorders*¹, etc. There are several quite different kinds of bodily troubles. If we are to work for better health for ourselves and others, we must know at once and remember some of the fundamental facts.

There are some bodily troubles that are called sickness which are not really so at all. *Seasickness*², although it is a very real thing at the time, is only the body acting as if it were sick. It is, so to speak, deceived. The moment the ship's motion stops or the patient becomes accustomed to it, the trouble is over. It is so with some mental troubles. There is very little you can do for the body in such cases, because there is nothing really wrong with the body itself.

There are many disorders which are due only to the general weakness of the body. Some parts are merely too weak to do their work, and that gives the whole body trouble. The need here is usually only for good simple food—enough of it, but not too much at a time—and for good exercise, or something of that sort. Usually a cup of perfectly fresh and clean unboiled milk, a raw or boiled egg, and rice boiled soft are the foods that are given to *build one up*³. Sometimes very special foods are needed—foods containing *iron*⁴ or *earth salts*⁵ or *vitamins*⁶. Only a skilled physician can say what is needed in such a case. Many disorders of uncertain character and also many common "diseases" belong in this class. An ignorant person may give the patient drugs which make him feel better for a little but worse later; a good physician, however, shows the patient how to build up his health and strength.

1 不快. 2 暈船. 3 強身. 4 鐵質. 5 礦物質. 6 維他命.

付掉兩毛錢，把這些書拿幾本到家裏去，藉以傳佈良好的衛生觀念呢？』有兩百個學生舉起手來。他們是真真的愛國者。

十 疾病是什麼？

在我們沒有多講以前，對於健康，不健康，疾病，不快等等的意義是什麼，讓我們獲得個更清楚的觀念。人體上的患苦有大為不同的好幾種。如果我們願意為自己的或別人的健康而工作，我們就該立即知道，並且記牢一些基本的事實。

有一些人體上的患苦稱做疾病，實在却總不能這樣稱呼它的。暈船，在一個時間雖然這是很真實的東西，却只是身體的動作好像有病罷了。這可以說是受騙。只在船隻動作停止的時候，或患者習慣了以後，這個患苦就消除了。有些精神上的患苦也是一樣的。這種情形，對於你的身體，你是很少能有辦法的，因為那不是你身體上面真有毛病。

有許多不快只由身體的一般衰弱。有些部分只是太衰弱了，不能做它們的工作，於是全身受着患苦。這兒所需要的通常只是簡單的良好食物，——分量要充足，每次不能吃得太多，——和良好的體操，或相類的事。通常是一杯十分新鮮清潔和未曾煮沸的牛乳，一隻生或熟的雞蛋，和燒得很軟的飯就是能強身的食品了。有時需要特別的食品——含有鐵質，礦物鹽，維他命的食物。只有技術高妙的醫生能夠說在這種情形需要什麼東西。許多不定性的不快還有許多普通的疾病屬於這一類。一個愚昧的人也許把一些麻醉藥給病人吃，使他在暫時覺得好一點，但是後來却更壞了；一個良好的醫生總是向病人表明，怎樣恢復他的健康和體力的。

Sometimes, from one cause or another, some *organ* or part of the body grows too much. This must be dealt with in an entirely different way. Proper food may help this trouble but will not cure it. As a rule an *operation*² is necessary, and the sooner it takes place the better. Most of the operations which fail are failures only because the patient has come too late. More than once surgeons in China have removed a *tumor*³ which weighed more than the person, who lived and regained health. *Adenoids*⁴ are growths back of the nose. They often cause children to keep their mouths open, and often hinder their growth and development. A common kind of blindness is due only to a growth, called a *cataract*⁵, on the *lenses*⁶. The lenses are then removed by a very skillful operation. The fitting to *thick-glass*⁷ lenses in front of the eyes restores fairly good sight. In the neck there are many *glands*⁸ and other organs which frequently give trouble. It is said that in parts of central Asia 70 per cent of all the grown people have great *swollen places*⁹ on their necks. One of the worst of all *fatal*¹⁰ diseases is *cancer*¹¹, which is a *malignant*¹² growth in the body. No one has yet been able to discover its cause, and it is frequently impossible to remove. The important thing to remember is that the sooner the patient sees a good physician the better, in spite of the fact that these growths seem to be so slow.

11. Infectious Diseases¹³

Infectious diseases are often spoken of as real diseases. They are due to the workings of some very small plants or animals called germs. Many of these *tiny*¹⁴ living things have been thoroughly studied under the microscope. For example, the tiny animals which are introduced into our blood by an *Anopheles mosquito*¹⁵ infected with malaria multiply very rapidly when they find us a little weakened by cold or slight illness. Their new generations are born in two days, and so we *shiver*¹⁶ with their births in our blood every other day—unless we have a double set

1 器官。 2 施手術。 3 瘤。 4 腺狀腫。 5 白內障。 6 水晶體。 7 厚玻璃。
8 腺。 9 腫處。 10 致命的。 11 癌。 12 惡性的。 13 傳染病。 14 小的。
15 瘧蚊。 16 顫抖。

有時爲了某種原因有些器官和身體上的一部分發育過甚。這是該以大大不同的方法對待它的。適宜的食物可以幫助這種患苦，却不能治癒它。照例需要施手術，並且是愈快愈妙。大多數的手術失敗由於病人來得太遲了。中國的外科醫生常常割除一個比人體還重的瘤，這個人活着並且恢復了健康。腺狀腫是生在鼻子後面的。它們往往使孩子張開口，常常會妨礙他們的生長和發展。一種普通的盲目只由於水晶體上的贅生物，呼爲白內障的。這種水晶體可以很巧妙的手術消除之。再把一個厚玻璃的水晶體放在眼睛前面，就能恢復很好的眼力。在頸上有許多的腺和別的機關常能致疾。據說中亞細亞有幾部分，百分之七十的所有發育的人民他們的頸都有大大的腫處。致命疾病中最壞的一種就是癌，這是一種人生上的惡性的贅生物至今沒有人能夠發現它的原因，並且這是往往不能割除的。最重要的事就是要記好，不管這種贅生物生長很慢的事實，病人愈早去看醫生就愈妙。

十一 傳染病

傳染病常常稱爲真的疾病。它們是由於一些很小的植物或動物喚作黴菌的工作。這些小的活物有許多在顯微鏡下已有徹底的研究了。例如，這個小動物被一種瘧蚊做媒介，送到我們的血液裏，它們找到我們因爲寒冷和輕微的不舒服而稍稍衰弱的时候就很快地繁殖了。他們的新一代在兩天之內產生，所以我們每隔一天在它們產生時發生顫抖，——除非我們有雙重

that brings a *chill*¹ every day, which is far more serious. It has been discovered that *quinine*² kills these little animals without, as a rule, doing the patient much harm.

Another little animal that gives trouble is the one that gets into the skin and causes an *itch*³ called *scabies*⁴. It is very common on beggars and other unclean people or on people living together in *dormitories*⁵, like soldiers or students. This little animal is very large compared with germs; it is almost large enough to be seen without a glass. It is easily killed with *sulphur*⁶ if you know how to use it and are thorough with the work.

How fortunate it would be if there were some harmless substance that would kill the germs in the same way those little animals are killed! There are some *antiseptics*⁷ and *disinfectants*⁸, but the difficulty is that they would usually kill the patient as well as the disease. You can wash your hands with a disinfectant, but you can hardly wash your food with it or give it to a sick person. So when you realize that germ diseases include most of our worst diseases,—plague, *cholera*⁹, *typhoid*¹⁰, typhus, *tuberculosis*¹¹, leprosy, *influenza*¹², etc.,—you see that here are some of the greatest problems of the world today. How can these germ attacks upon us be beaten back? How can the enemy be conquered? Here is a world war to fight. Everybody is in it. Everybody must fight. The doctors are the leaders. What are the methods of warfare?

Keep yourselves in good condition.
Prevent the germs from entering.
Attack the germs if they enter.
Nurse the patient properly.

12 The Prevention of Disease

Even when we keep ourselves in the best condition, we cannot always *resist*¹³ disease if it comes. Then the second important thing is to keep it from coming. Incoming ships are examined to prevent diseases from being carried from one port to another. An infected city is often *cut*¹⁴

1 發冷。 2 奎寧。 3 癢。 4 疥癬。 5 大廳室。 6 硫磺。 7 防腐劑。 8 殺菌劑。 9 霍亂。 10 傷寒。 11 肺病。 12 流行性感冒。 13 抵抗。 14 分隔。

的瘡蟲組，才是天天發冷，這比較要嚴重得多。已曾發明奎寧可殺死這些小動物，而照例不使病人感受痛苦。

另一種小動物可致疾病者是跑進皮膚裏，造成癢的一種東西，喚作疥癬。這是在乞丐和不清潔的人身上很普通的，或是像學生和兵士般同住一室也能發生。這種小東西比之黴菌要大多了：大到差不多不用顯微鏡也能看見。用硫磺可以很容易把它們殺死，如果你知道怎樣用它，並且對於這種工作十分周到。

這是怎樣地幸氣，如果也有無害的物質能夠像殺小動物把黴菌殺死！果然有些防腐劑和殺菌劑，可是所困難的是它們會治好病，也能殺死這個病人。你能把殺菌藥來洗手，但是你難於寫滌你的食物，或把它給病人吃。所以當你明白黴菌病中包括大多數最壞疾病的時候——鼠疫，霍亂，傷寒，熱病，肺病，癩瘋，流行性感官等等——你就知道這兒是現在世界上一些最大的問題了。這些黴菌襲擊我們，我們怎麼能夠把它們打回去？我們怎樣才能征服這個敵人？這兒是一個世界戰爭。人人都在其內。人人必定要出戰。醫生就是領袖。戰爭的方法怎樣呢？

1. 使你的身體情形總是很好。
2. 防止黴菌侵入。
3. 如果黴菌侵入，加以攻擊。
4. 合宜地看護病人。

十二 預防疾病

就是我們的身體保持着很好的情形，如果疾病來時我們也不能常常抵抗。那末第二件要緊事是不讓它來。進口的船要受檢查，以防止疾病從一個碼頭搬到別個碼頭。一個有傳染病的城市往往和所有別的城市分隔開。一個病人也常常以同樣的方

off from all others. A diseased person is often *quarantined*¹ in the same way. If a child has a contagious disease he should be kept at home. Schools are sometimes closed to prevent any disease which is very bad at the time from spreading among the children. All of these are efforts to stop the spread of such diseases, but one great difficulty is that many diseases are most contagious just before we find out that we are sick. Therefore other methods are also necessary.

There has been a great deal of study of diseases in order to learn how they are caught. Some are supposed to be caught from breathing infected air. Some we get through the skin. Some come in food or drink. Some are not yet understood; the search for their secrets continues.

13. Clean Food and Drink

Typhoid fever is an example of a disease that comes from impure food or drink. It is prevented by having food and drink free from germs. Dishes must be clean. This means that they must be washed with boiling water and soap and must not be touched by anything that is infected. It is not so difficult to wash things clean, but it is difficult to keep them clean. A fly or a person's hand may put the germs on a dish or a piece of food. If food is well cooked, not just heated, the germs are killed. If fruit is very carefully *peeled*² and not handled, it is sure to be clean. If water is boiled or well *filtered*³ and the cup is clean, there is little danger there. In every case care must be taken both to clean things and to keep them clean. Keep food covered from flies, dust, etc.

¶ In Western lands the problem of water supply is a very difficult one, because people drink the water un-boiled. In China the problem is not so *urgent*⁴, because the custom of drinking tea furnishes a protection against such diseases as typhoid fever. We must realize, however, that people usually do not really appreciate the

1 隔離。 2 剝皮。 3 濾清。 4 急迫的。

法隔離起來。如果孩子有了傳染病，他就該留在家裏。學校有時候問起來，以防止一種在此時期的惡病在孩子們中間傳佈開來。一切的事情都爲停止這種疾病傳佈的努力，但是一件大困難的事，就是有許多病却在我們知道生病之前最能傳染。所以別的方法也需要。

有許多疾病的研究就要曉得怎樣得病。有些想來是由於呼吸傳染的空氣。有些我們從皮膚裏進來。有些從飲食上來。有些至今還沒有明瞭；還在繼續找尋他們的祕密。

十三 清潔的食物和飲料

傷寒症是一個從不潔飲食得來的病症的一個例子。防止它的方法是要飲食裏沒有黴菌。碗盆要洗滌。這個意思是他們必須要拿沸水和肥皂來洗滌，並必不能爲可傳染的東西所觸。東西洗得潔淨是並不難的，但是把它們保存得潔淨却是難的。一隻蒼蠅或是一個人的手也許會把黴菌放在盆碗上或是一片食物上。如果食物燒得很好，不只是熱了就算；這黴菌就殺死了。如果菓子小心地剝皮而沒有用手拿，它確是潔淨的。如果水是沸過，或是好好地濾過，而杯子是潔淨的，那危險就很少了。各種的方法都得要一方面當心去清潔東西，一方面當心保持它的清潔。要把東西罩起來，以避蒼蠅，灰塵，等等。

在西方水的供給是一個很困難的問題，因爲人民喝沒有沸的水。在中國這個問題並不怎樣的急迫，因爲喝茶的習慣供給了一個保障，足以抵抗像傷寒症般的疾病。我們必定要明白，無論如何，人們通常不是真正能知道其危險的，並且常常喝不

danger, and often drink water that is not pure or drink tea from cups that are not clean. Modern cities and towns are putting in *water system*¹, and thus tempting the people to give up their old custom and to drink the cool water that is made so convenient for them. It is, therefore, very important for us in such places either to teach people the danger or else to make sure that the water is clean. Some cities keep a great region free from people, and thus from disease, so that the *water caught and stored*² is pure. Others filter or disinfect the water supply.

Another source of infection is in carelessly handled fruit. Certain diseases—cholera, for example—are likely to be carried by fruit. Another source is in vegetables which come from badly infected ground and then are not cooked long enough to kill the germs. Watch these two danger points carefully. Explain them to your family and friends and to your *cook*³ and all your servants.

Flies are exceedingly dangerous. Coming from their dirty *breeding-places*, they carry straight to your food the germs of many diseases, especially typhoid fever and *dysentery*⁴. If the breeding-places can be covered or removed, that is the best means of prevention; if not, the flies must be kept away from food, drink, dishes, hands, etc.

In Western countries the milk supply is carefully watched. Milk is both a perfect food and a dangerous carrier of disease. Cows must be healthy and clean; the milk must be carefully handled; *bottles*⁵ must be clean and quickly *sealed*⁶. If a milk dealer puts water into the milk, he is severely punished, not so much for cheating his customers as for endangering their lives. China and India have not suffered much from infected milk supply, because Indians boil their milk and Chinese do not often drink it, although there is now a large and rapidly increasing amount of milk used in China. If the Chinese use milk as it is used in the West, there will be a new health problem for China.

1 自來水管采。 2 收容而貯藏的水。 3 廚役。 4 產生地方。 5 痢疾。 6 瓶。
7 封固。

潔淨的水，或是從不潔淨的杯子裏喝茶。現代城市與鎮集都設有自來水，以此引誘人們放棄他們的老習慣，和喝着冷水，那是對於他們大為便利的。所以在這種地方，是對於我們很重要的，我們既要把危險教導人民，又要確知這水是潔淨的。有些城市留着一塊大空地不讓人住，藉以免除疾病，所以收容而貯藏的水都是潔淨的。別的方法是把自來水清濾或消毒。

另一種傳染的原因是由於不當地手拿着菓子。某種疾病——例如霍亂——大概是從菓子上傳染來的。還有種是由於蔬菜，這種菜是在不良的傳染的地上產生的，並且以後沒有燒得長久，不足以殺死黴菌。留心注意這兩點危險。把它們向你的家庭，你的朋友，你的廚司，以及你的所有僕人說明。

蒼蠅是極端危險的。從它們污穢的產生地方帶着許多疾病的黴菌直向你的食物上飛來，特別是傷寒細菌和痢疾。如果這個生產地能夠蓋住，或是掃除，那是最好的防止方法；如果不能，那未必定要把食物，飲料，盆碗，手等等，和蒼蠅隔離。

在西洋各國牛乳的供給是留心注意的。牛乳既是完善的食料，又是危險的疾病負販者。乳牛一定要衛生和清潔；牛乳擠起來一定要很當心；瓶子一定要清潔並要很快地封固。如果牛乳商把水放在牛乳裏，他要受嚴厲的懲罰，不是爲了他的欺騙顧客，却是爲了他危及他們的生命。中國和印度沒有從傳染的牛乳供給上受到這末多的損害，因爲印度煮沸他們的牛乳，而中國不常常飲它，雖然現在中國所用的牛乳有大量的和迅速的增加。如果中國人用牛乳和西洋人一般，那末就要成爲中國的衛生新問題了。

14. Carriers¹, or Hosts²

When one entertains a guest one is the host or hostess of that guest. Some diseases have been discovered to have hosts and hostesses. Farmers in America lost a great deal of grain from a certain plant disease. The government scientists went to work on the question, "Where is this disease in the winter time?" It was not in the seed and it was not in the ground. It was found that it lived through the winter, in an entirely different form,—as different as the *larva*³ from the insect,—upon certain bushes. The scientists proceeded to destroy all those bushes and so stopped the disease. They gave it no host, and it starved to death.

Have you ever wondered where diseases hide between the seasons when they appear? It has been discovered that some have hosts to take care of them. Typhoid, for example, is often carried for a long period by someone who seems to be well. He does not know that he carries typhoid, and so he cheerfully spreads death wherever he goes. He is, of course, most dangerous as a cook or *waiter*⁴, because he then spreads *infection*⁵ through the food he handles. The government of the Philippine Islands examines the blood of every person who comes to its hospitals, and thus discovers some carriers of hidden diseases. Far more than this, however, must be done to locate all carriers. This is only a step in the right direction.

15. Fighting Diseases

When disease germs enter the body they are attacked by certain cells in the blood. Some are perhaps eaten up; some are killed by poisons made for them. If they can be defeated, the patient recovers. The fight is sometimes long and sometimes very short. Physicians have already discovered methods of assisting the body to attack these enemies. Medicines are usually of little use. They sometimes serve only to help the enemy. In the fight against

1 媒介物. 2 居停主人. 3 幼蟲. 4 侍役. 5 傳染病.

十四 媒介物或居停主人

當一個人款待客人的時候，他就是這個客人的主人或主婦。有些疾病發見得來也有主人和主婦的。美國的農夫喪失了許許多多的米穀，由於某種植物病。政府的科學家跑來研究這個問題在冬天這種疾病在那裏呢？它不在種子裏，並且也不在地下。後來找到他住着度冬的地方，方式頗為不同——其差異正如幼蟲之不同於成蟲——却是住在某種灌木上。科學家進行斫除一切的那種灌木，這樣就停止了這種疾病。他們不把主人給它，它就餓死了。

在疾病出現前後季候裏，病菌藏在什麼地方，你曾以為奇怪麼？這已發見了，有些是有主人來當心它們的。例如傷寒，往往人家帶着它好久，可是看起來還是很健康。他不知道他帶着傷寒，所以他快活地到處把死亡散佈。當然他如果是一個廚司或是一個侍役，那就更危險了，因為他從所觸的食物裏散佈着傳染病呢。菲律賓羣島的政府把到它醫院去的人個個加以檢查血液，因此發見有些潛伏病症的媒介。可是更有進於此者，必定把媒介物的所在地指出。這僅是正當辦法的一個步驟而已。

十五 抵抗疾病

當病菌侵入人體，它們就受着血液裏的某種細胞的攻擊。有些也許被吃下去了；有些被為抵抗而生的毒素所殺死。如果病菌戰敗，病人就復元了。這個戰爭有時長久，有時很短。醫生們已經發見幫助人體攻擊敵人的方法。醫藥通常是沒有大用處的。它們的服務有時只幫助着敵人。在抵抗天花的戰爭裏，

smallpox the patient prepares his blood to receive and kill the germs. He is *vaccinated*¹ with *cowpox*², which is a very mild disease that does him no harm but that provides his blood with some quality which serves to protect it against smallpox. In some other diseases *scrum*³ is taken from the blood of an animal which has conquered the disease, and is put into the blood of the patient. This helps him to overcome the disease. These are some of the ways in which diseases are fought when they enter the body. Some of them are so successful that you may say the disease is never really caught at all. Clearly the important thing is to have a good doctor supplied with these aids for *combating*⁴ disease. They must be prepared in great science laboratories and be ready in fresh supplies near at hand. Ask your doctor where he can get *antitoxin*⁵ for *tetanus*⁶, or *lockjaw*⁷. Where is his nearest supply of antitoxins for *diphtheria*⁸, *rabies*⁹, *meningitis*¹⁰? You should also ask him how often one should be vaccinated against smallpox and *inoculated*¹¹ against typhoid fever.

16. Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis is said to be the world's greatest *slayer*¹². Probably more people in China die of tuberculosis, or *consumption*¹³, than of any other disease. It lives in the darkness and *dampness*¹⁴ of China's shaded streets with their windowless houses and crowded rooms. There is no medicine that cures it and no antitoxin that conquers it. And yet, strange to say, if it has not gone too far, it can be stopped by the simplest methods. The germs of this disease cannot thrive in the sunlight and in dry fresh air. If the patient is well nourished and is kept warm and dry and in the fresh air and sunlight as much as possible, he will probably recover.

Tuberculosis is carried from person to person chiefly by the germs *spit up*¹⁵ by the one who is infected. If not exposed to bright sunlight, these germs continue to live for some time. *Spitting*¹⁶ is a terribly dangerous habit. Every effort should be made to prevent it, to keep floors

1 種牛痘. 2 牛痘. 3 血清. 4 戰爭. 5 抗毒素. 6 強直痙攣. 7 破傷風. 8 白喉. 9 狂犬病. 10 腦膜炎. 11 打針. 12 屠殺者. 13 肺結核. 14 溼氣. 15 吐出. 16 吐痰.

病人預備了血液，以接受黴菌而殺死之。他種了牛痘，這是最輕微的疾病，使他毫不覺到妨害，但是却為他的血液準備了一些能保衛它抵抗天花的品質。有幾種疾病需要從曾經戰勝疾病的動物血液裏取出血清來，把這種血清注射到病人的血液裏。這會幫助他戰勝疾病。這些都是病菌侵入人體後與疾病鬭爭的方法。其中有些是這麼地成功，也許你可說永不會真正地感染疾病了。明白地，最重要的事情是要有一個良好的醫生，供給這些助力，以和疾病戰爭。他們必定要在巨大的科學實驗室裏預備，並且要在手頭預備着新鮮的供給。問你的醫生從什麼地方得到強直瘧或破傷風的抗毒素。那裏是最最近的地方可以供給他白喉，狂犬病，腦膜炎的抗毒素的？你還要問他抵抗天花需種牛痘幾次，防傷寒須打針幾次。

十六 肺病

據說肺病是世界上最大的屠殺者。顯然中國死於肺病或腸結核的人民比之任何別的疾病為多。在中國隱蔽的街道，沒有窗戶的屋子和擁擠的房間等，黑暗和潮濕的地方都有肺病的存在。沒有醫藥去治療它，也沒有防毒素去征服它。不過說也奇怪，如果病還沒有深，却可以把最簡單的方法止住它。肺菌不能在陽光和乾燥的新鮮空氣裏旺盛。如果病人調補得很好，盡力保持溫暖，乾燥，在新鮮空氣和陽光中，他大概可以復元的。

肺病是由一個傳給另一個人的，主要的是一個肺病患者吐出來的黴菌。如果這些黴菌沒有在烈日下曝曬，它們仍能繼續活着一些時間。吐痰是一種可怕的危險習慣。應當盡力防止

clean, and to have sunlight as often as possible inside every room. When such a disease is common the Chinese method of "*shaking hands*"¹ is far safer than the Western method, because people are constantly putting their hands to their mouths.

Every one of us should be a soldier in the war against this "*white plague*"². In a recent year, 11 per cent of all the deaths in Shanghai were due to it, and in Hong Kong 10.9 per cent. What do you think the *percentage*³ is in your city or village? Tuberculosis carries down rich and poor alike. Fight it. Get people into the fresh air and sunshine to take exercise. Tell women that *foot-binding*⁴ and staying indoors encourage tuberculosis. Eating from a common dish or using the same *pipe*⁵ or chopsticks that somebody else uses is apt to spread it. Mud floors and poor *diet*⁶ and poor cooking are dangerous. Smoking encourages tuberculosis. Take a stand against tobacco. Shopkeepers, students, soldiers in *barracks*⁷, and people in any kind of dusty work are quickest to die of tuberculosis. Fight it.

17. Injuries and Local⁸ Infections

When one is injured, the body cells set to work at once to repair the injury and to kill the germs that attack the injured place. If the injury is slight, the body cells may be quite successful; if it is severe, the repairing may be only poorly accomplished, leaving the body very weak and imperfect at that place. It may, in any case, become too difficult a fight against infection, with the result that the place begins to poison the whole body. This poisoning process may be slow and may begin in a tooth or in some entirely hidden spot. It may be in some broken limb or other injury that kills the patient quickly. In all cases two things are important: to keep the place as clean and free from infection as possible and to give it whatever assistance it needs to get the injured parts in *proper place*⁹ again. Sometimes a part must be removed,

1 握手。 2 白死病，即肺癆。 3 百分比例。 4 纏足。 5 煙管。 6 食物。 7 兵營。 8 局部的。 9 原狀。

它，保持地板的清潔，使每間房間裏陽光能盡量地射進來。當這種疾病普遍的時候。中國人的拱手要比西洋人的握手安全得多，因為人們往往要把他們的手放在嘴裏。

我們每個人都該是抵抗這種『白死病』的戰士。在最近幾年，上海死者的百分之十一都由於肺病，在香港是百分之十，九。在你住着的城市或鎮集裏你以為百分比佔多少呢？肺病是貧人和富人一樣要染着的。和它鬪爭。要使人們都在新鮮空氣裏和陽光下體操。告訴女人纏足和老住在屋子裏是足以促進肺病的。從公用的碗盆裏吃東西，或合用着別人用的煙管和筷子是易於傳播肺病的。泥地，飲食不良，糞法不良是危險的。吸煙鼓勵肺病。抵抗煙草。店員，學生，軍營的兵士，和作任何種污穢工作的人們是最容易死於肺病的。奮鬪罷！

十七 受傷和局部的傳染

當一個人受傷的時候，人體細胞立即上工去修補傷口，並殺死侵襲傷處的黴菌。如果傷勢輕微，人體細胞可以十足地成功；如果傷勢嚴重，這個修補也許只是粗劣地完功，結果是身體很衰弱，和那個地方仍有缺陷。無論如何它也許會難於抵抗傳染，而其結果那個地方就開始毒化全體。這種受毒的程序也許很慢的，也許開始在牙齒上或是完全隱蔽的地方。也許在破損的四肢或別的傷口上發出，很快地殺死這個病人。總而言之有兩件事是重要的：要盡力保持傷口清潔和不受傳染，並以它所需要的助力給它，使受傷的一部分恢復原狀。有時一部分必

or even replaced. That is work for only the most skilled and scientific surgeons. It is important to keep in mind that the first things to do are to keep out infection and to stop *bleeding*¹. Do not think that drugs will heal. Keep dirty *p'asters*² off. Clean, soft cloths are better than anything except the care of a doctor.

18. Hospitals and Nursing

When one is badly injured he should be taken as quickly as possible to a hospital. There instruments, tables, beds, and other things are ready at hand, and nurses and doctors will give aid at once. If the patient has *fainted*³, there are *stimulants*⁴ to restore him; if he is in great pain, he can be given an *anaesthetic*⁵ until the injury is attended to; if the injury is a hidden one, the X-ray machine may reveal it. In a good hospital things can be kept *aseptic*⁶.

In the case of very severe illness or of illness that cannot be easily understood, the hospital is the best place to examine and treat it. It is very important to watch the progress of the case closely. We cannot easily look into the patient's body and see what his condition is, and therefore it is important to have every small fact about the progress of his disease. A *chart*⁷ showing how his *temperature*⁸ runs is one important bit of evidence. All such care requires trained nurses.

Nursing is the physician's fourth way of fighting disease and treating injuries. Good care and proper feeding give the patient the advantage of strength in the battle against the germs that attack him. Every bit of sleep that he loses, every mistake in his nourishment, and every moment of unnecessary talk or *worry*⁹ or *excitement*¹⁰ are handicaps in his fight. It is difficult to provide such quiet, food, and care except in hospitals. We must work for the better support of the hospitals of our communities.

1 流血. 2 膏藥. 3 昏暈. 4 興奮劑. 5 麻醉藥. 6 防菌. 7 體溫表. 8 體溫. 9 煩擾. 10 刺激.

定要除去，或甚至要替換。那只有最最巧妙的與科學的外科醫生才能做這種工作。最要緊的要記好，第一件事要做的就是排除傳染和停止流血。不要以為麻醉藥會醫治好。不要貼污穢的膏藥，除了醫生的照顧之外，清潔柔軟的衣服比任何東西都好。

十八 醫院和看護

當一個人受了重傷的時候，就該愈快愈妙地送到醫院去。那裏的器具，桌子，床鋪，和別的東西都準備在手頭，並且看護和醫生能立即來給以助力。如果病人昏去了，那兒有興奮劑使他蘇醒；如果他有極大的痛楚，可以給他上麻藥，直到傷口料理好為止；如果傷口是隱藏的，那末X光鏡可以發覺它。在一家良好的醫院裏東西都能防腐。

達到極為嚴重的症候，或不能容易明瞭的症候時醫院是受檢驗和治療最好的地方。嚴密注意病況的進步是重要的。我們不能很容易地看到病人身體的裏面，而看他的情形怎樣，所以病況進步的每個小事實都要視為重要。體溫表表示他的體溫怎樣，就是一個重要的證據。所有一切的照顧要有受過訓練的看護。

看護是醫生抵抗疾病和治療傷口的第四個方法。良好的照顧和合宜的食料給予病人以體力的益處，藉以抵抗侵襲他的黴菌。他所喪失的每一點的睡眠，他的滋養上的每一個錯誤，和每一刹那的無謂談話，無謂的煩惱或刺激都是他奮鬥的障礙。除掉醫院就很難供給這樣的幽靜，食物和照顧。我們必定要好好地資助社會上的醫院。

19. First Aid¹ and Home Remedies²

Ask your doctor to give you lessons in first aid and home remedies. Everyone ought to know that when a person faints, people should not crowd around and raise him up. They should stand back, give him air, *fan*³ him, wet his forehead a little to cool it, and let him lie flat. Why should people either neglect an injured person or do the wrong things? Let us be eager to help and be intelligent about it.

We should also know something about simple medicines. People do not go to the doctor about everything. Sometimes there is no doctor near. Many small matters need only the attention that we ourselves can give. We should therefore know the uses of some simple and harmless medicines. You know that *sterile vaseline*⁴ is good for a burn, that *boracic acid*⁵ is a good but *mild*⁶ antiseptic for cuts and scratches, and that *castor oil*⁷ is usually the first thing to take for a stomach ache or for *constipation*⁸. You should know something about *bicarbonate of soda*⁹, *eucalyptus oil*¹⁰, *menthol*¹¹, *camell*¹² salts, quinine, and common-salt solution.

20. Narcotics¹³, Alcohol, and Patent Medicines

One of the most important things to keep in mind about medicines is that the general public, being sick and yet not appreciating the service and science of the medical profession, tries to cure itself with the many medicines it buys from people who get rich selling them. Nothing seems easier than to cheat a sick man, if anyone is *mean*¹⁴ enough to do it. People have a foolish idea that there must be some great *cure-all*¹⁵. You need only to color some water, give it a taste, put it in bottles, and say, "Here is the cure-all," and people will begin to buy. You are stealing their money. They are foolishly throwing it away in the hope of getting well.

1 急救法。 2 家庭救護。 3 搨。 4 無菌凡士林。 5 硼酸。 6 溫和的。 7 蓖麻子油。 8 便秘。 9 蘇打重碳酸鹽。 10 有加利油。 11 薄荷腦。 12 甘肅。 13 麻醉劑。 14 下賤。 15 萬應藥。

十九 急救法和家庭救護

請你的醫生教給你急救法和家庭救護的功課。人人應該曉得當一個人昏倒的時候，人們不該擠着環牢他，並不要把他扶起來。他們該立在背後，給他空氣，搨他，微濕他的前額，使他受涼，讓他睡平。爲什麼一個人不是漠視一個受傷者，就是錯用了急救法呢？讓我們去熱心救助，並且對於這種事要有相當的知識。

我們還應該知道一些簡單的醫藥。人們不會件件都到醫生那兒去的。有時近處沒有醫生。許多小事件只需要我們自己能夠做的照顧便了。所以我們該知道一些簡單和無毒的醫藥用途。你知道對於灼傷可用無菌凡士林，硼酸對於刀傷與抓傷是一種有益而溫和的防腐劑，蓖麻油通常是治胃痛和便秘的第一種藥。你該知道一些關於蘇打重碳酸鹽，有加利油，薄荷腦，甘汞，食鹽，奎寧，和普通溶鹽液的用途。

二十 麻醉劑，酒精，和專賣藥品

關於醫藥，最重要的要記好的事，就是一般的人生了病可是不信任醫藥專家的服務和科學，嘗試自己治療，用着許多從倚此致富的人那裏買來的許多藥品。沒有事比欺騙一個病人更容易了，如果一個人卑鄙至於做這件事。人們有個愚蠢的觀念以爲一定有幾種萬應藥。你只需把水染上了顏色，給它一點味道，裝在瓶裏，說道，「這兒是萬應藥，」人們就開始來買了。你偷了他們的錢。他們愚蠢地因爲希望病好而丟掉了錢。

Patent-medicine manufacturers go farther than that. They have two ways of making their products sell faster and for a longer time. One way is to put into the bottle some simple liquid food that does not easily spoil. Then they truthfully say that it is good for you, and they have many witnesses to prove it. Yes; but it is no better than milk, *bean curd*¹, eggs, butter, and rice, and if you buy it you are only throwing away money, for these good foods are cheaper. Some of the most widely advertised medicines in China are in this class.

Another common *trick*² is to add some stimulant or narcotic to make the patient either feel more energetic or sleep, and thus think that he is better. Not only does he want more of the medicine to try to make that feeling continue, but he soon forms a habit of using it, and thus the manufacturer develops an ever-increasing trade in his deceitful, useless, and dangerous medicine. Not long ago an American in Shanghai was given some cough *sirup*³. It seemed to make him feel better at once. He wanted to know what was in it, but the *label*⁴ did not tell. Knowing that it was an American patent medicine, and that the American law requires all packages of foods and bottles of medicine to state their contents, he went to a drug store (or chemist's shop) to see the original bottles from which this sirup was taken. Imagine his surprise on seeing that it was a mixture of sirup with *morphine*⁵, *chloroform*⁶, and alcohol—an anaesthetic, an *opiate*⁷, and a stimulant! Nothing but a quick poison could be worse for him than that.

Chinese do not need to be told the danger of opium and other habit-forming drugs. These drugs are used by physicians with the greatest care, for they are quick to seize upon the patient and make him a slave. The Chinese *Maritime Customs*⁸ seized in 1926 over thirty-seven tons of opium. The fight against opium now is a world-wide one. Will you join and take your part in this worthy cause?

China, however, is not yet awake to the great harm that alcoholic drinks are doing. Chinese "wines" are

1 豆腐. 2 詭計. 3 糖漿. 4 貼紙. 5 嗎啡. 6 哥羅方. 7 鴉片藥. 8 海.

專賣藥品製造者比那種事更進一步。他們有兩個方法使他們的出產品脫售得快，並且時間長久。一個法子是把一些簡單的液質食物放在瓶裏，那些食物是不容易壞的。於是他們誠懇地說那是於你有益的，他們還有許多的證據來證明它。是的；但是它並不比牛奶，豆腐，蛋，白塔，和飯更好，如果你買了它，就是丟掉錢，因為這些好食品是較為便宜哩。中國有些大登廣告的醫藥是這一類的東西。

還有種普通詭計是把一些興奮劑和麻醉劑加進去，使病人不是覺得更有精神；就是更能熟睡，於是以為這種藥是有效了。他不但要更多的藥使那種感覺繼續，並且不久形成了用這種醫的習慣，以此這個製家用他的欺人的，無用的，危險的醫藥發展了一個永遠增加的貿易。不長遠上海有個美國人吃了些咳嗽糖漿。好像使他立即覺得好一點。他願意知道裏面含有什麼東西，但是這張貼紙上沒有說出來。知道這是種美國的專賣藥品，而美國的法律是一切的食物包裹和藥瓶都必需說明其內容的，於是他跑到一家製藥店（或稱化學店）裏去看原瓶，糖漿就是從這種瓶裏拿出來的。看了之後幻想他的驚愕罷。原來這是種糖漿和嗎啡，哥羅方，和酒精的混合物——一種麻醉劑，一種催眠藥，並是種刺激藥！除了迅速的中毒使他更壞之外別無他物了。

中國人不需人家再告訴他們鴉片和別的成癮麻醉藥的危險了。這些麻醉藥醫生也以極大的當心去使用，因為它們迅速地抓住了病人，使他成為奴隸。中國的海關在一九二六年抄出了三十七噸以上的鴉片。和鴉片作戰現在已廣達世界了。你病參加這個有價值的主義而盡你的本分麼？

中國無論如何對於喝酒精而得的害處還沒有覺悟。中國酒

really weak or strong *whisky*¹, and the foreign imported whisky is worse. Alcohol is taking the strength out of China when she needs it most. It is taking her money and her foodstuffs. Why should we let China handicap herself thus in her struggle to stand up among the great nations? Let us begin at once to use our influence against this national enemy. Drinking among Westerners is often a rough, quick, wild, crazy *business*²; in China it is usually a slow and gradual taking away of strength and shortening of life. It is hard to say which evil is the greater. *Temperance*³ becomes a patriotic virtue.

21. Public Health and Sanitation⁴

Health is a matter that requires not only personal attention but public coöperation. It has become an important function of modern governments to look after and improve public sanitary conditions. Our National Government has a Ministry of Public Health to direct and coöperate with local governments in this work. Many provinces, cities, and districts now have boards of health. It is necessary that honest, public-spirited, energetic, and well-trained physicians be appointed to such boards for a long enough period to learn the conditions and to carry out a policy of improvement of health conditions. That means they must not be political *appointees*⁵. A number of our cities are now launching public-health programs, which include the cleaning of streets and *public toilets*⁶, the making of the right kind of *sewers*⁷, the inspection of *slaughterhouses*⁸, markets, *dairies*⁹, and *restaurants*¹⁰, the examination and *certification*¹¹ of doctors, the keeping of vital *statistics*¹², the prevention of epidemics, the supervision of public and private hospitals, the *maintenance*¹³ of a staff of visiting nurses, the *elimination*¹⁴ of wild dogs, rats flies, and mosquitoes, the establishment of an institute to make *bacteriological*¹⁵ or chemical analyses of water, milk, food, manufactured goods, patent medicine, and to perform various tests for diseases, and finally the promotion of health education through public lectures,

1 威士忌酒。 2 事情。 3 節制。 4 衛生。 5 委任員。 6 公坑。 7 陰溝。 8 屠場。 9 製酪場。 10 飯堂。 11 證書。 12 統計。 13 供給。 14 驅除。 15 細菌學的。

是較弱或較強的真正威士忌酒，外國進口的威士忌却還要壞。在中國頂需要體力的時候，酒精把它取去了。它取掉她的錢和取掉她的食料。在中國掙扎着在強國之間站起來的時候，我們為什麼讓她自己阻礙着自己呢？讓我們立即開始用我們的力量掃除國敵。西洋人間的飲酒，常常有，粗暴，迅速，野蠻，發瘋的事件；在中國却通常是緩慢，逐漸把體力消磨，和縮短其生命。這是很難說那一種壞處更大。節制成爲愛國的德行。

二十一 公共健康和衛生

健康不但要個人的注意，却也要大眾的合作。關於照顧和改進公共衛生狀況已成爲現代政府的一個重要職務了。我們的國民政府有一個衛生部，以指導地方政府，並和地方政府合作。許多，省，市，縣現在都有衛生局。這却需要指定幾個誠實，有公益精神，有精力，和受過良好訓練的醫師在局裏服務，並使他有相當長久的任期，讓他熟悉情形而施行改進衛生情形的政策。那個意思就是說他們不該是政治上的委任員。我們已有幾處城市現在正開始着公共衛生的計劃，其中包括清潔街道和公坑，修理陰溝，考察屠場，市場，製酪場，和飯堂，檢查醫生證書，保有生命的統計，防止傳染病，監督公私立醫院，供給巡行看護的職員，驅除野狗，老鼠，蒼蠅，和蚊蟲，設立院所，以細菌學的或化學的方法分析水，牛乳，食物，製造品，專賣醫藥，對於疾病實行各種的鑑別法。未了，是舉行

*demonstrations*¹, and regular school work. Study the public-health program of your locality. When the board of health requests money for health purposes and for necessary laws let us help build up public opinion to aid them to carry out their plans. The more healthful a community is, the better are the chances for good health for everyone in it.

22. Some Important Health Rules

Here are some health suggestions that if possible you should begin to follow at once:

1. Go to a good doctor once a year to have a thorough physical examination. By thorough examination is meant having eyes, ears, nose, throat, *lungs*², heart, *liver*³, *kidneys*⁴, and *spine*⁵ tested. Be sure that your doctor is reliable.

2. Go to a good dentist twice a year to have your teeth examined.

3. Be sure to keep your spine straight by sitting and standing correctly. A *twisted*⁶ spine will affect all the organs of the body. Try to grow a "military" back.

4. What you grow on is what you eat, drink, and breathe. Breathe fresh air. Drink much water and milk, but no strong tea or coffee or alcoholic *beverages*⁷. Eat only wholesome, well-cooked food. By weakening your *digestion*⁸ and health, half-cooked rice or vegetables and *greasy*⁹ meat may lose you an important position in years to come.

5. Eat slowly. Go without a meal rather than half *chew*¹⁰ your food.

6. The fresher the food you eat every day, the better. Dried foods lose most of their values. Boiled and broiled things are far better than fried things, though not so easy to cook. Learn as much as possible about the right kinds of food and how to prepare them.

7. Do not smoke. It may weaken your heart.

8. Sleep at least eight hours in the twenty-four in a *well-ventilated*¹¹ room.

1 表演。 2 肺。 3 肝。 4 腎。 5 脊骨。 6 彎的。 7 飲料。 8 消化。 9 多脂的。 10 咀嚼。 11 空氣流通的。

講表演，和規定學校工作以推進衛生教育。研究你本地的衛生計劃。當衛生局爲了衛生的目標和爲了必需的法律而需要金錢的時候，讓我們建造輿論以幫助它並且推行其計劃。社會愈健康，個人得到健康的機會也愈多。

二十二 一些重要的衛生規條

這兒有一些衛生的提議，如果可能你就該立即開始照着做：

1. 每年一次到一個良好的醫生處去，詳細的檢查體格，所謂詳細的檢查是指檢查眼，耳鼻，喉，肺，心，肝，腎和脊骨等。要確知你的醫生是可靠的。
2. 每年兩次到牙醫生那裏去檢查牙齒。
3. 坐立都應姿勢準確，以使你的脊骨挺直。彎脊骨足以影響體中所有的器官。要實行長成一個像軍士般的背。
4. 你怎樣的吃，喝，呼吸，就怎樣的生長。呼吸新鮮空氣。多喝水和牛乳，可不要喝濃茶，濃咖啡，或含酒精的飲料。只吃有益的和煮熟的食品。半熟的飯或蔬菜和多脂的肉足以減弱你的消化和健康，並且也許使你在來年失去一個重要的位置。
5. 吃得慢，與其嚼得不爛，還是不吃好一點。
6. 你每天所吃東西愈新鮮愈好。乾掉的食物喪失了大部分的價值。煮沸的和烤的東西比油煎的好。雖然煮起來不容易。努力明白那一種是正當的食物，而怎樣預備它們。
7. 不要抽煙。它會衰弱你的心臟。
8. 二十四小時之內，至少要睡八小時。要睡在空氣流通的屋子裏。

9. Begin at once to learn some game or sport which will keep you out of doors. Exercise hardens the body, and is necessary for a person who is to do vigorous work. Walking about out of doors is not sufficient exercise. Basket ball, *baseball*¹, tennis, swimming, climbing, *vaulting*², *skating*³, horseback-riding, gardening, mowing the lawn, are some of the ways of getting outdoor exercise. Get it either by play or by work, or in both ways.

10. Be happy. If you are often sad or angry, you will find it impossible to keep your body in good condition. You cannot be angry just "inside your brain." You may not know it, but you are angry throughout your whole body. If all the nerves are *quivering*⁴ with anger, they are not attending to their regular work. The next-best thing to being happy is making believe that you are.

11. Work hard, study hard, and play hard. Hard things are good for you. Remember that all your heroes and heroines are those who have done hard things well.

12. Never get discouraged about your body. Even if the doctor tells you that you have a twisted spine, *short eyesight*⁵, and a weak digestion, the chances are that if you will determine to straighten your spine, to train your eyes, and to discipline your stomach, you can do so. If your doctor cannot tell you how to help yourself, find one who can.

13. If you have some physical *defect*⁶ which cannot be wholly overcome, make the rest of the body as perfect as possible. Wonderful things can be done with *two thirds*⁷ of a body if that part is perfectly trained.

14. What are you planning to do when you leave school? Different occupations require different physical *qualifications*⁸. If you have weak lungs, you must avoid work indoors if possible. If your spine has a twist, your work must not make this worse. Find out, at your earliest opportunity, whether you can fit your body to do the work that you are planning to take up. If you cannot, change your plans.

1 棒球. 2 跳高. 3 游泳. 4 顫動. 5 近視眼. 6 缺點. 7 三分之二. 8 限制.

9. 立即開始學習幾種戶外運動，或遊戲。苦苦的鍛鍊身體要用盡力工作的人這是需要的。在戶外散步不是充足的訓練。籃球，棒球，網球，游泳，爬水，跳高，滑冰，騎馬，種花卉，割草，都是戶外訓練的方法。去獲得一種訓練，不論是從遊戲裏來的，或是從工作上來的，或者兼而有之。

10. 要快樂。如果你常常悲傷或發怒，你要知道這是不能保持你的體況良好的。你不能只在你腦中發怒。你也許不知道，却是你的發怒要經過全身的。如果一切神經為發怒而顫動，它們就不當心它們的規定工作了。快活之外，其次的最好東西是相信你自己。

11. 苦幹，苦讀，苦玩。辛苦的東西是對於你有益的。記好你所有的男英雄和女英雄就是能把辛苦的工作做得很好的人。

12. 關於你的身體不要失望。即使醫生告訴你，你有一個彎曲的脊骨，近視的眼睛，衰弱的消化力，如果你決心伸直你的背，訓練你的眼，鍛鍊你的胃，其機會就在於此，你就可這樣地做。如果你的醫生不能告訴你怎樣自助，找一個能夠告訴你的。

13. 如果你有一些體格上的缺點，不能完全克服，盡力使你身上的其餘部分完全。三分之二的體格還能做可驚的事情，如果那些部分是十足地鍛鍊的。

14. 你離開學校後打算作些什麼？不同的職業有不同的體格限制。如果你的肺弱，你必要避免戶內工作，如果可能。如果有點駝背，你的工作不能使它更壞。在你最早的機會裏找出你的身體是否適宜於做這種工作，這種工作是你打算去做的。如果你不能，改換你的計劃吧。

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Did you ever try to study when you had a bad headache? If so, it will help you to understand why your health is necessary for work and for play. Can you remember any occasion when ill health prevented you from doing what you had planned to do? How many days have you lost on account of illness this school year?

2. Health is "the first of all liberties." Explain what this means.

3. Write a brief paragraph on "Safety First!"

4. What physical education is given in your school?

5. What is being done in your community to destroy flies? What should be done?

6. *Frame*¹ a few rules that everyone can practice, to help prevent tuberculosis. You might call them the tuberculosis "do's and "don't"s.

7. What can the community do to *safeguard*² health?

8. Mention several ways in which your school can help to safeguard health.

9. What is the greatest health reform needed in your community? What do you think can be done to further the reform?

10. Explain why the use of narcotics and stimulants is an enemy to the nation.

11. Find out all you can concerning the life and work of Louis Pasteur; of William C. Gorgas; of Jesse W. Lazear.

問題和練習

1. 你在頭痛時曾試行讀書麼？如果是的，它將助你明瞭爲什麼你的健康需要工作和遊戲。身體不好，防止你做計劃中的工作，你能記憶會有這種事麼？這個學年計算你因爲生病而損失的日子有多少呢？
2. 健康爲『一切自由之首。』解釋它有什麼意思。
3. 以『安全第一』爲題寫一篇簡單的文章。
4. 你們學校裏的體育教育是什麼？
5. 你的社會上對於掃滅蒼蠅正在做些什麼？要做的工作是什麼？
6. 計劃幾條人人能夠實行的規條，以助防止肺病。你可以把它們分爲肺病所要的，與不要的。
7. 社會能有什麼辦法以保護健康。
8. 舉出幾種方法，你們校裏用了這種方法以幫助保全健康的。
9. 你的社會上頂需要的衛生改革是什麼？你能想出什麼方法來以推進這個改革麼？
10. 說明爲什麼麻醉劑與興奮劑的使用是一個國家的公敵。
11. 盡力找出關於路易士·巴斯德的一生和工作；關於威廉·喬治的；奇斯·拉柴耳的。

CHAPTER XV

CHINA'S YOUNG PEOPLE

1. The Children's Age

About a *third*¹ of the population of a country are children and young men and women under twenty-one years of age. There are enough of them to make a nation in themselves. The United States, counting all its men, women, and children, has not as many people as China has boys and girls. It is only in recent years that people have come to realize the meaning and importance of this fact. Now the young people of a country are known to be a very important part of its population. This was not realized in earlier years.

All that many historians have thought it important to tell about the boys and girls who lived centuries ago makes a *mournful*² picture. It is hard to believe, yet it is true that some nations have thought so little of their children that when sickness or trouble came to a family they allowed parents to offer one of their children as a *sacrifice*³. In other countries, if a child was born with a twisted foot or a *hunched back*⁴ or *sightless eyes*⁵, or even if it was only weak, parents could leave it in the woods or fields to die. Nobody knows how many great men and women have been lost to the world in that way.

In all countries, in every age, the strong children of noble parents have been well cared for, but for many centuries poor or weak children were almost always neglected. Only a few were educated; it was not thought worth while to teach most of them even to read and write. Now the *attitude*⁶ of civilized people toward all children, both rich and poor, is entirely changed. The

1 三分之一。 2 悲慘的。 3 犧牲。 4 駝背。 5 盲目。 6 態度。

第十五章 中國的青年

一 兒童時期

全國人口約有三分之一是兒童和二十一歲以下的青年男女。他們已足夠自己去造成一個國家了。美國，計算他所有的男子，女子，和兒童，還沒有中國所有的男女孩子那末多。只在最近幾年人民漸漸明白這件事實的意義和重要性。現在一個國家的青年都已曉得是它全人口裏最重要的一部分。這在早幾年是不明白的。

許多歷史家以為這是重要的，去敘述一切關於數世紀前男女孩子的事造成一幅悲慘的圖畫。這是難以相信的，雖然確有幾個國家對於他們的孩子頗不挂懷，在疾病或憂患降到這個家庭時，他們允許父母貢獻他們孩子中的一個做犧牲。還有別的国家，如果孩子生下來有着彎曲的脚或是駝背，或是盲目，甚至於僅僅乎衰弱，父母就會把他丟在樹林裏或田地裏讓它死掉。沒有人知道因為這種方法世界上損失了多少偉大的男子和女子。

所有的國家，在每一個時代裏，高貴父母的強壯孩子都會照管得很好，但是有幾個世紀，貧苦或體弱的孩子差不多常常被漠視的。只有很少的幾個受教育；這是以為不值得去教育大多數的孩童，甚至不值得教他們讀書和寫字。現在文明人不論貧富，對於所有孩童的態度已完全變更了。現在年輕的人民比

young people of today are in far better and happier condition than they used to be. This has been called "the children's age," because in these days the young people occupy so important a place in the life of the country.

2. Children are Part of "the People"

Fathers and mothers and teachers used to talk about what a boy or girl was going to be and not so much about what he or she was as a boy or girl. It was as if children lived only in the future. They were made to *imitate*¹ grown people, to act and talk like grown people. Western parents dressed their children like grown ladies and gentlemen. They even made their hair white. They thought play was foolish and even wrong. Children must act only as their elders told them to act. Chinese parents put a long scholar's *gown*² on a little boy the first time he went to school. His childhood days were over; he must *behave*³ like a man. Thus children were considered to have very little life of their own: they lived for the future and for the service of their parents. They were either little old people or else small slaves.

About one hundred and seventy years ago Rousseau broke away from all these old ideas and began to prove that children were real people. He said that they must live their own lives; that nature was the best teacher; that children should almost run wild like animals in the forests; that they should learn for themselves; that they could not be forced to learn what they were not ready for; that they must play and enjoy their own natural lives; and then, at the *right time*⁴, they would be ready and able to learn what men and women should know. This great Frenchman did much to influence people in giving children a larger and more natural place.

Now people want children to play. They do not dress them in clothes that hinder them. They give them playgrounds and *toys*⁵, especially toys which can be made into things—blocks, tools, materials. Thus the children can

1 模倣。 2 長袍。 3 立身。 4 相當時候。 5 玩具。

了從前的情形要好得多快活得多。這是稱爲『兒童時期』，因爲在這些日子裏年輕的人民在國家的生命裏佔據着這樣重要的位置。

二 兒童是人民的一部分

父親，母親，和教師往往講到一個男孩或女孩將來怎樣，却不大多講他或她在兒童時怎樣。這樣好像兒童只是生活在未來裏面。使他們模倣成人，作專談話像個成人。西洋的父母把他們的孩子穿得好像個貴婦和紳士。他們甚至把兒童的頭髮弄白。他們以爲遊戲是愚蠢的，甚至錯誤的。兒童只好做大人叫他做的事。中國的父母把一件學士們的長袍加在兒童的身上，當他第一次上學時。他的孩子時代是過去了；他必定要舉止如成人。這樣想起來兒童們自己的生活是很少的了；他們爲了將來，爲了爲父母服務而活着。他們不是個小老頭，就是小奴隸。

約在一百七十年以前，羅騷打破一切的老觀念，起來證明兒童是真正的人民。他說他們必要生活着他們自己的生活；自然就是最好的教師；兒童該像動物在林子裏般亂跑亂走；他們要爲自己而學習；不該逼迫他們學習不願意明瞭的東西；他們必定要遊戲和娛樂他們自己的自然生活；於是，在相當的時期，他們就願意和能夠學習男子或女子該知道的東西了。這個偉大的法國人說了許多足以影響人民的話，給予兒童們一個巨大而更自然的地位。

現在人們要兒童們去遊戲了。他們不把足以妨礙他們的衣給兒童們穿了。他們把遊戲場和玩具給予兒童們，尤其是能夠做成東西的玩具——木塊，器具，材料。這樣兒童們就能夠活

be active and carry out their own ideas. Natural imitation of older people is not bad, and as far as the children choose that form of play they may learn much from it. They imitate also animals and engines and ships and all sorts of things. They play in their own natural ways. Some of their play is really hard work. As they get older they constantly change their forms of play. The more different kinds of play and work they take up, the more they learn from them. It is genuine education. But to them it is their own natural, happy life. Why should people not enjoy life when they are young as well as when they are grown, especially if that is also good preparation for later life?

3. Indoor and Outdoor Play

After our chapter on health it is not necessary to *argue*¹ the importance of outdoor sports. Young people who have as children developed their play *instincts*² and their health go in for such sports eagerly. Those who have been kept too quiet and given too little chance to play are often very slow to begin to play when they get a chance. They ought to become young again. They have grown old too fast. They should make themselves play. If they begin, they will quickly become *enthusiastic*³. If they do not feel energetic and strong, play will give them energy and strength. It may be the one thing they need to awaken and develop them.

A common plan in modern schools is to require every student once or twice a day to take part in sports or physical training. If a student is not sufficiently strong and healthy to enjoy football, tennis, and similar sports, the *physical drill*⁴ soon makes him so. The principal of a large school for girls in China says that when regular physical drill was begun, the number of cases of sickness at once decreased very much and the interest in sports increased.

Outdoor sports are better than indoor sports. If it is impossible to play outdoors, play indoors or, better still, on a veranda. But it is usually possible to play outdoors,

1 辯論. 2 本能. 3 熱心的. 4 體操.

動與發揮自己的思想了。自然的模倣大人並不壞，兒童如果選了那種形式的遊戲也許能學到很多的東西。他們還模倣着動物，機器，船，以及一切的東西。他們用自己的自然方法來遊戲。他們的遊戲有幾種確 勞苦的工作呢。等到他們年齡大一點，就常常變換他們的遊戲方式。他們做着更爲不同的各種遊戲和工作，他們也就更能多學到一點。這才是真正的教育呢。但是對於他們，它却是他們自己的自然而快活的生活。爲什麼人們在他們年輕時不該享受生活的樂趣像他們的成人時呢？尤其是那種方法也是將來生活的良好準備。

三 戶內和戶外運動

在健康一章之後已不需要辯論着戶外運動的重要了。年輕的人們也有像孩子般的發展他們的遊戲本能和他們的健康，於是對於一些運動非常熱心。那些太保持靜默的人和太少機會遊戲的人常常在他們獲得機會的時候很遲緩於起始遊戲。他們該重新成爲年輕。他們老得太快了。他們要使自己遊戲。如果他們起了頭，就會迅速地成爲熱心了。如果他們不覺得精力彌滿和強健，遊戲會把精力和強健給他們。這是一件使他們覺悟和發展他們的遊戲的事情。

現代學校的普通計劃是要每個學生每天一次或兩次參加運動，或體育訓練。如果一個學生沒有充分的體力和健康去玩足球，網球，以及類似的運動，體操立刻能使他能夠玩。中國一所巨大女子學校的校長說：當規定的體操開始時，疾病狀況的數目立即減少了很多，而運動興趣就增加。

戶外運動比戶內運動好。如果不能在戶外玩，那末就在戶內玩，在走廊上比較好一點。但是戶外運動常常是可能的，即

even in the snow or in the rain, if you are dressed for it. If there is not room enough for all to play every day, each one may have a turn every other day or twice a week. The big sports and swimming are the best; but the more different kinds of sports there are, the better. In Western schools a large number of young people play in little groups of two, three, or four. A boy takes a ball out of his *pocket*¹ at recess time and for a few minutes throws and catches with another boy not far away. One has a stick which he asks another to take away from him. One *vaults over a railing*², and others try to vault farther. One turns his face to the wall, and when someone give him a *spank*³ he tries to guess who it is, so as to put that one in turn against the wall. They *run races*⁴, *walk on stilts*⁵, have a *tug of war*⁶, jump, *pole-vault*⁷, *play leapfrog*⁸, *marbles*⁹, etc. "*Jackstones*¹⁰" is played in the West just as in China. "*Prisoner's base*¹¹" is a favorite in many schools. In "*tag on wood*¹²" you may be "tagged" by the one who is "it" if you are not touching wood; when you are tagged, you are "it."

All these forms of play are more or less organized. That is one reason they are good. One difference between civilized and uncivilized people is that the former have learned how to carry on organized activities. All these sports have rules and definite objects. There is the law of equality of opportunity. There is respect for rights. No *underhand*¹³ activity is allowed. The majority or the powerful leader does not suppress the minority or the weak. That is one reason sports are better than *idle gossip*¹⁴. That is one reason some would-be leaders do not go in for sports.

Another great value in sports is that they keep people youthful. The strength of a nation comes partly from the health, vigor, and training the men and women have received in the sports of her schools, and partly also from the continuance of sports long after leaving school.

1 衣袋. 2 欄杆. 3 一掌. 4 賽跑. 5 踏高跷. 6 拉繩. 7 撐高跳. 8 跳背. 9 彈石子. 10 拋石戲. 11 捉俘虜戲. 12 觸贏戲. 13 卑劣的. 14 閒話.

使在下雪下雨天，也只要你穿着合宜的衣服好了。如果那裏沒有足夠全體每日遊戲的房間，那末可以隔日輪次，或一星期兩次。大運動和游泳是最最好的；但是遊戲的種類愈多愈好。西洋學校裏大量的青年都兩個，三四個的成爲一小羣而遊戲。休息時一個孩子在袋裏拿出一個球來在數分鐘裏和相離不遠的另一個孩子拋接。一個孩子有根手杖，他叫別一個從他那裏奪去。一個跳過欄杆，於是別的嘗試跳得更遠。一個轉面向牆，有人把他拍了一掌，他就試行猜測誰在拍他，猜出了，就叫他轉面向牆。他們賽跑，踏高蹺，拉繩，跳躍，撐竿跳，跳背，彈石子，等等。拋石戲像中國般西洋也玩的。捉俘虜戲是在許多學校裏都是種恩物。觸贏戲，你也許給這個做“It”的人所追，如果你不觸着木頭；當你被追着了之後，你就是“It”

一切這些遊戲的方式都有或多或少的組織。那就是遊戲有益的一個理由。文明人和野蠻人的一種不同就是前者知道怎樣繼續有組織的活力。那些運動都有規則和一定的目標。那兒是機會均等的法律。那兒是權利的尊重，不准有卑劣的動作。多數和有權力的領袖不能壓迫少數與弱者。那又是運動勝於閒話的一個理由。那也是一些候補領袖不去運動的原因。

運動的另一種偉大價值是保持人民的青年。國家的力量一部分是來自男子和女子從學校裏接受得來的健康，活力，和訓練，一部分也是來自他們離校後的不斷的運動。網球可以老年

Tennis may be played by old men as well as by small boys. To keep oneself young by continuing to play not only keeps the body strong and well but also keeps one eager and able to learn. Do not let yourself grow old too fast. Stay as young as you can—as full of life and as ready to learn new things as possible. Love of sport for its own sake is a wise and wholesome thing.

4. Public Playgrounds

Schools encourage sports because they have learned to appreciate their value and the rights of young people. What of the children who are not in school or who go to day schools which have no space for sports? In modern cities playgrounds are provided for such children. In a village every home has an open space for the children to play in. Clean grass, fresh air, and sunshine are the least that every children should demand for its play place. In crowded cities these cannot be provided. For the sake of their children, therefore, people should either move to the villages or demand that the city authorities provide playgrounds. Clean, grassy lawns for the children are far more important than *potted flowers*¹ and *tea houses*² for the grown people. Such places can be provided, and they are provided as soon as the people demand it. The city authorities may say it will take money. Is money more important than children? The rights of the children are not yet *fully recognized*³. There are people in all countries who still give you the argument of money against the rights of the children. Such people ought never to have any children. Let us take up the children's cause against them. Here is one of our future wars to fight. Forward for the children!

5. Protection of Children

Even a wild animal will fight to its death to protect its young. If you wish to *start trouble*⁴, strike somebody's

1 盆果。 2 茶室。 3 充分承認。 4 引起糾紛。

人玩也可以小孩子玩。以繼續遊戲保持一個人的青年不但保持他身體強壯與健康，並也使他熱心和讀書得力。不要讓你自己老得太快。盡力像個年青人般活着——生命充足，盡力預備學習新的東西。爲愛遊戲而遊戲是一種聰明的和健全的辦法。

四 公共體育場

學校鼓勵運動，因爲他們已曉得重視運動的價值，和青年們的權利。那末不入學校的孩子們或是在日校裏的孩子那裏沒有運動場所，將如何呢？在現代城市裏爲這種兒童預備了體育場地。在村上家家有一匹空地，足供孩子們的遊戲。清潔的草地，新鮮的空氣，和日光是每個孩童對於它們遊戲場所的最低要求。在擁擠的城市裏，這些東西不能供給。爲了他們孩子的緣故，所以人民應不是搬到鄉間去，就是要求城市裏的當局準備一個遊戲場。清潔的草地對於孩子們其重要遠過於盆景和茶室之於成人。這種地方都能開辦了，並且一要求就開辦。城市當局也許說這要費錢。錢比孩子更重要麼？孩子們的權利至今還沒有充分地承認。所有國家都有人以金錢的理由來和你辯駁，反對孩子們的權利。這種人該應永遠沒有孩子。讓我們拿起孩子的理由來抵抗他們。這兒是我們要奮鬥的未來戰爭之一。爲着兒童前進罷！

五 保護兒童

就是野獸也要死命奮鬥以保護它的孩子。如果你願意引起糾紛，只要打人家的孩子便了。誰不該防衛和保護一個孩子？

child. Who would not defend and protect a child? There are now many modern laws for the protection of children. They are, for example, protected against *kidnaping*¹, which in many countries is classed among the three or four greatest crimes. Even a father or mother may be *fined*² for treating a child badly. If a father whips his son cruelly, the father may be *arrested*³ and punished. If parents neglect their children, they may be fined or imprisoned and the children may be taken from them to be cared for by the government. If parents cannot care for a child, they may, by *legal process*⁴, give the child over entirely to some good and responsible people, who adopt it, and the child then becomes the son or daughter *in full standing*⁵ in its new home.

One of the hardest fights for the children has been that against child labor. Again it is money against the child. The factory owner *prefers*⁶ children in many jobs because they are cheaper. Cheaper! Ask him how cheap his own children are. How much money will he take for them? He will kill other children for a few dollars. What is the price of his own? Moreover, the parents want the money the children earn. The children not knowing their own needs and rights, are willing to work. It is wrong to make children support themselves or their parents. If people cannot support children, they should not have them, or else the community should take care of them.

A little work every day in good light and air is not bad for a child; it is good for him if it is the right sort of work and is varied. But work for too long a time—even such healthful work as watching the water buffaloes out on a hill—is bad for a child because it keeps him out of school. Work of only one kind, even if not long at a time, is dulling to a child's mind and often causes *uneven*⁷ or wrong development of his body, which the varied work about a home does not do. Work in bad light or close work of any kind, such as *needlework*⁸ or making

1 被拐。 2 處以罰金。 3 逮捕。 4 合法手續。 5 完全資格。 6 選擇。 7 不勻。 8 針線工作。

現在有許多保護兒童的法律。例如保護兒童的被拐，許多國家把它列入三四件大罪惡之一的。就是父或母也要因虐待兒童而受罰金錢。如果父親殘暴地鞭撻他的兒子，他就要逮捕與處罰。如果父母忽視他們的孩子，他們就得罰金或是拘禁，並且把孩子取去由政府照顧。如果父母不能照看他們的孩子，依合法的手續他們可以把孩子完全拋棄，給於良善和負責的人，過繼給他，那末這孩子就成爲它新家庭裏有完全資格的兒子或女兒了。

爲兒童奮鬥的最艱難一件事就是反對童工。這又是金錢跟兒童作對。工廠主人有許多事情寧可揀選孩子們，因爲他們便宜一點。便宜！問他自己的孩子怎樣便宜。他把他們換多少錢？他爲了很少的錢却殺死了別人家的孩子。他自己的孩子值多少錢？還有父母要得孩子賺來的錢。孩子們不知道他們自己的必需和權利，就願意去作工。叫兒童自己養自己或養他們的父母是錯誤的。如果人們不能養活他們的孩子，他們就不該有孩子，或者由社會照顧他們。

每天在良好的光線和空氣裏作一點輕微的工作對於兒童並無害處；如果這是正當的工作而又隨時調換則對於兒童正有益處。但是工作時間太長久——即使是種健康的工作，像看管上山的水牛——却對於兒童有害，因爲工作把它擠出了學校。單做一件工作即使時間不長，也能遲鈍兒童的心思，常常引起身體發育不勻或畸形發展，如果是家裏各種隨時調換的工作就不會如此了。在不良的光線下工作，或是做任何一種密接的工作，好像精細的針線生活或是做紙花，有時孩子因爲目力過度使

paper flowers, is sometimes such a strain upon the child's eyes as to bring on blindness. Work that keeps children away from the fresh air and sunlight, work that makes them stand for a long time, work that exposes them to dust or steam, work that begins early or continues into the night, work that requires a certain speed, work that puts the child in danger from wheels, knives, poisons, and the like,—all this is cruel and *inhuman*¹. Against it we must carry on our war for the liberty of the children.

In Western countries one of the most prominent of the many organizations for such warfare is the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children. This organization has members and branches far and wide. It makes contributions to support secretaries and carry on many activities for the protection and care of those who cannot protect themselves. This sort of work has done much to develop popular opinion against child labor. One country after another has *passed*² such laws as the following:

No child under sixteen can legally be employed in any mine or *quarry*³ at any time; no child under fourteen can legally be employed at any time and no child under sixteen more than eight hours in any workday, more than six days in any week, or before 6 A.M. or after 7 P.M. in any mill, *cannery*⁴, workshop, factory, or *manufacturing establishment*⁵.

When citizens have grown up to be men and women after being healthy, happy, vigorous, protected, cared-for, and educated children, the country is both happier and stronger. It does not pay, even in dollars and cents, to let the children work instead of growing and studying. Most of the work open to boys and girls is a "*blind alley*"⁶. It leads nowhere. Soon this worker is grown and out of a job, and with no preparation for a life work. He has lost the enjoyment of life as a child and made no preparation for the enjoyment of life as an adult. With your aid China in time will have laws to protect its children.

1 不人道論。 2 通過。 3 石礦。 4 罐頭廠。 5 製造廠。 6 死路。

用，而漸致失明。使兒童離開新鮮空氣與陽光的工作，使他們站得長久的工作。使他們曝露在灰塵蒸氣下的工作，早上開始，繼續到夜的工作，需要某種速力的工作，把兒童放在危險裏，例如輪軸，刀子，毒藥和相類的東西——一切都是殘暴和不人道的。我們必定要繼續我們的戰爭反對它，爲了孩子們的自由。

在西洋各國許多爲兒童作戰的組織中最大的一個是虐待兒童預防會社。這個組織的會員和支會遠而且廣。他們的會費全仗捐款。爲了保護與照管不能自己保護的兒童而繼續做着許多的活動。這一類的工作對於發揮輿論反對童工方面已做了許多的事。一國又一國的都通過了如下的法律：

十六歲以下之兒童任何時間不能合法受雇於任何鑛或坑中；十四歲以下之兒童在任何時間不能合法地受雇於任何磨坊，罐頭廠，手工業廠，工廠或製造廠中，十六歲以下則任何作工日不得超過八小時，每星期不得超過六日，或於六時之前，七時之後工作。

由健康，快樂，強健，受保護，受照拂和受教育的兒童而長成爲男子和女子，那末國家也將更快樂與更強健。讓兒童以工作代替生長與讀書，即使一元，一分，也並無代價可言。大多數爲男女孩子所開闢的工作是一條『死路』。這條路是不通的。不一會工人們長成了，却失了業，對於終生工作並無準備。他已失去了孩子般生活上的娛樂，等到成人也沒有生活上娛樂的準備。仗着你們的幫助中國終有保護兒童法律的日子。

6. What One Nation is doing for its Children

Here are a few of the things which one modern nation has done or is doing for its children:

1. It has made hundreds of laws to protect and help them. It takes more than a thousand pages of a *closely printed book*¹ to give the most important state laws about child labor.

2. Every year thousands of books are written especially to entertain children and young people.

3. Special boys' and girls' magazines are printed every month.

4. Millions of dollars are spent each year for schools. Many of the schoolhouses are the finest buildings that skill and money can *devise*². Ancient men of wealth did not live in such great *luxury*³ as do many pupils in their *magnificent*⁴ steam-heated schoolhouses, with their beautiful pictures, attractive assembly halls, convenient lunch rooms, and *tiled bathrooms*⁵. There are special schools and homes for children who are blind or *dumb*⁶ or handicapped in other ways.

5. All large public libraries and most small ones have separate reading-rooms and separate lists of books for children. Special librarians are ready to show children how to get information from books and to give them any other needed help.

6. All large *museums*⁷ have *attendants*⁸ to show children the treasures of art.

1 精密地印就的書。 2 計劃。 3 奢侈。 4 華貴的。 5 瓷磚鋪的浴室。 6 聾
 啞。 7 博物館。 8 招待員。

六 一個國家保護它的兒童是怎樣的

這兒有幾件事爲現代國家爲了兒童已做或正在做的：

1. 制定幾百條的法律以保護和幫助他們。關於童工精密地印就幾千頁厚的書以說明最重要的法律。
2. 每年著有數千種的書籍專供兒童與青年的閱讀。
3. 按月出版專供男女孩子閱讀的雜誌。
4. 每年支出數百萬元的學校經費。許多的校舍都是最精緻的建築，利用了金錢與技術的計劃。古時富人都不像許多學生般的享受極大的奢華，他們住在華貴而裝水汀的校舍裏，配着美麗的圖畫，動人的會堂，舒服的餐室，瓷磚鋪的浴室。有專供盲，啞，或別種殘疾兒童的學校和宿舍。
5. 所有大的公共圖書館和最小的圖書館都要分開專供兒童的閱書室和分開的書目。備有專員以指導兒童如何從書中得到知識，並給予他們任何別的需要幫助。
6. 所有大博物館都有招待員以藝術之庫指示給兒童。

7. Many artists of great ability give all their time to painting pictures for children to enjoy.

8. There are playgrounds and parks for children in every part of the country. Cities tear down *whole blocks*¹ of *tenement houses*² to make room for a playground. When they cannot do this they shut off traffic from certain streets and say, "No wagons, no automobiles, only children allowed."

In one river there is a Children's Isle. On the coast there is another children's island that has been used as a vacation home for *crippled*³ children.

9. There are separate hospitals for children, and separate wards for them in regular hospitals. There are children's specialists who give all their time to studying and curing children's diseases. School have school physicians to examine the pupils and to tell them how to take care of their health. Some cities now have school nurses who go into the homes of pupils to tell the parents how to prepare the right kind of meals for their children.

10. The government has a special Children's Bureau that gives all its time to studying the needs of children and planning ways of helping them.

11. There are children's courts, where young *offenders*⁴ may be heard without having to appear in courts where old offenders are tried.

7. Youth comes to the Front

Not only is the world now doing more for the young people: the young people are doing more for the world.

1 整排. 2 召租房屋. 3 殘廢的. 4 犯罪者.

7. 許多極有能力的藝術家以全部時間爲兒童的娛樂而繪圖。

8. 國中各地都有兒童的遊戲場和公園。城市把召租房屋拆毀，以得空地爲遊戲場之用。當他們不能做到這件事的時候，就在某幾條街上斷絕車輛來往，說：『貨車汽車不准通過，只許兒童入內』。

一條河中有一個兒童島。在岸上有別一個孩童的島，用作殘廢兒童的休假的家鄉。

9. 要有專供兒童的隔離醫院，在正式醫院裏有分開的監護所。有兒科專家以所有的時間研究與醫治兒童之疾病。學校有校醫以檢查學生，並告訴他們如何當心他們的健康。有幾個城市現在已有學校看護，他們跑到學生的家裏去，告訴父母怎樣爲他們的孩子準備合宜的飲食。

10. 政府設立兒童局，以所有之時間研究兒童之需要與計劃幫助他們的方法。

11. 有兒童法庭，年輕的罪犯不必在成人受審判的法庭裏受審。

七 青年到前線去

不但世界現在爲青年做了更多的事：青年也爲世界做了更

We saw in Chapter XI how boys and girls can even serve their country. In China we have seen the students take a share in the great political struggles of their times. Those struggles are not over. After outside enemies cease to endanger the nation, inside enemies will be all the more difficult to overcome. It is the history of every republic. Strong but selfish or ignorant men try to get and hold power for their own purposes. Good laws are defeated or *set aside*¹. Money is collected for public works and then put into the pockets of a few officials. Schools are robbed of their support. Rich people are protected in return for money payments or else robbed of their money, while poor people are left to do the best they can, which may be to get poorer and poorer. In all these dangers there must be heroes to do battle for the good of China. They will grow up from among the young people of today. Yes; and the young people themselves are already in the battle. They make public opinion on the right side. They educate people to higher ideals for their children. They open schools for poor children. This sets a good example for government officials and for wealthy people. They work for more playgrounds, and help to develop better games among the smaller children.

Recently some of the more progressive cities in China have opened great parks for the use of the people. They are beautiful green spots where children may play and grow in the open air instead of being *huddled*² together in the narrow, dark streets. Why should not every city *throughout the entire length and breadth of the Republic of China*³ have many such playgrounds? Students have organized many processions. It might be well for them to advertise and promote a movement to get playgrounds for the children. All the children in a city would want to join such a procession. They would carry banners saying.

We are one third of "the people."

Tomorrow the nation is ours.

1 擱置。 2 擁擠。 3 全中國。

多的事。我們在十一章裏看到男孩與女孩甚至能夠爲他們的國家服務。在中國我們已曾看見學生們在當時的，偉大的政治鬥爭上盡他們的本分。那些鬭爭並沒有過去。在外敵停止危害中國後，內敵却更難於克服。這是每一個民主國的歷史。強悍而自私與愚蠢的人爲了他們自己的目的而謀取政權和把握政權。良好的法律被敗壞或被擱置了。爲了公衆事業而聚集的金錢，那時候放到少數官員的袋裏去了。學校的經費被侵削。富人付了錢才能得到保護，否則就侵削他們的錢，窮苦的人只好任所欲爲，結果是愈弄愈窮。一切的危險一定要有英雄爲了中國的利益而作戰。他們就從今天的青年中生長起來的。是的；青年自己已預備參加作戰了。他們使輿論站在正確的方面。他們爲了人民的孩子把高尚的理想教育他們。他們爲了窮苦的孩子開學堂。他們爲政府官吏和富人立了個好榜樣。他們爲要更多的遊戲場而工作，並且在較小的兒童之間幫助發展較好的遊戲。

最近中國幾個最進步的城市已開闢大公園以供人民之用。裏面有美麗的碧綠的草地，兒童們可以在室外空氣裏遊戲長大，以代替一起擁擠在狹小黑暗的街上。爲什麼中國全國還沒有許多這種遊戲場呢？學生們組織了許多遊行隊。如果他們宣傳和推進爲兒童們獲取遊戲場的運動不是更好麼？城市裏的全體兒童都該願意參加這種遊行的。他們要擡起這未說的旗子：

我們是人民的三分之一。

明天的國家是我們的。

Help us to grow strong.
 We want sunshine and fresh air.
 Give us playgrounds and protection.
 No child labor. *Schools for all*!

8. A Nation with an Educational Tradition²

Fortunately we do not need to persuade China that the education of her young people is important. We are happy in living in a land with an ancient and strong educational tradition. All the people know that education is a good thing. Every village wants a school. Every teacher is respected. Every father and mother would like to have the children educated. These *sweeping statements*³ are true in almost every corner of China. We are fortunate in being in a land with a strong belief in learning. Many a place in the world is different. Many a family in other countries despises an education for even one of the children.

China's heroes have almost always been men of learning. Long before there was much science to study, when there was only literature or history, learning was held in high honor, and men were promoted to the highest positions on the basis of learning. China in her new day, therefore, is not one *whit*⁴ behind the most advanced nations in her respect for education. She is establishing great universities. She has built wonderful libraries. She has a plan for schools in all grades and reaching into every village of the nation.

It is necessary, however, to keep in mind that China's educational task is the greatest the world has seen or will ever see. It is so enormous that it must be accomplished gradually. There are many *faults*⁵ in the present work. There are sure to be many weaknesses for a long time to come. We must, then, keep the problem constantly before us, and do all we can to promote education.

1 普及教育。 2 傳統。 3 概說。 4 些微。 5 缺點。

幫助我們發育強壯。

我們需要陽光和新鮮空氣。

給我們遊戲場和保護。

廢止童工。普及教育。

八 有教育傳統的國家

有幸地，我們不需要勸說中國，說她的青年教育是重要的。我們很樂於住在一處地方，那裏有一個古老而堅強的教育傳統。所有的人民都知道教育是一件好事情。每個村上要一所學校。每個教師要受尊重。每個父親和母親該歡喜教他們的孩子受教育。這些綜說是在中國的每個角落都真正如此的。我們有幸地居在對於學問有強固信仰的國土裏。世界上有許多地方是不同的。別國有許多家庭藐視教育，甚至一個孩子也不讓他讀書。

中國的英雄差不多總是個有學問人，遠在有這末多的科學可以研究之前，那時只有文學和歷史，學問握有極大的光榮，人們以學問的基礎漸漸推進至於最高的地位。中國現時在尊重教育上並不比大多數的先進國家稍微落後。她在創設偉大的大學。他已建設可驚的圖書館。她有各級學校的計劃，和把它們推行到國內每個村落的計劃。

無論如何，這是需要記好的，中國教育事業是世界上空前絕後的最最巨大的事業。它是這樣的巨大，必定要慢慢兒的才能完成。現時工作上有許多缺點。就是在遙遠的將來也一定有許多的弱點。那末我們必定常要把這個問題放在我們的面前，和盡力推進教育。

9. Does Education Pay?

The United States is one of the countries which values highly the education of all the people. Any boy or girl who has the mental ability and can provide food, clothes, and shelter can get *free of charge*¹ an education through primary, middle, college, and university grades. Many other Western countries are rapidly moving in that direction. Modern nations believe that it pays to put money into schools.

In China a man can be hired to work all day for a few cents. This is because he has never learned to read or write and has never been trained to do any skilled work. He is actually worth only a few cents a day. Education would increase his *money value*² as well as his enjoyment of life.

No better or quicker way of getting skilled hands and trained brains has yet been found than through the schools. Because some great men had little or no schooling, some people have said, "Schools are not necessary." But these great men probably studied harder by themselves than most boys do in school. It does not prove education is useless. In fact, most of the famous men of history spent many years in study. Can you recall a few heroes whom you admire, and see if they were educated men and women?

10. Schools help to build Bridges and Railways

For every large bridge, building, railroad, and dam that we make, *scores*³ and hundreds of young men have had to spend months with pencil and paper, figuring, figuring, figuring. Without the schools behind them the bridge, the railroad, the dam, would be impossible. All of the architects, *civil*⁴ and electrical engineers, and other skilled workers, now engaged in the planning and developing of Nanking as the new national capital of China, have been *school-trained*⁵.

1 免費。 2 金錢之價值。 3 多數。 4 土木。 5 受過學校訓練。

九 教育能夠贖還麼？

美國是一個把全民教育的價值估得很高的國家。任何男女孩子，如有精神上的能力，並能自給衣，食，住的就能享受免費教育，從小學，中學，學院，而至大學。許多別的西洋國家正很快地向這個方向移進。現代國家相信投資於學校能夠贖還的。

在中國一個人因為很少的錢而受雇工作全日。這就是因為他從不曾學過讀書寫字，並且從不曾受過做任何巧妙工作的訓練。他確是只值幾分一天。教育能夠加增他的金錢之價值，並可增加他生活上的樂趣。

關於獲得技巧的手和受過訓練的腦直到現在還不能找出比經過學校更快和更好的方法。因為有幾個偉人，學校教育受得很少，或是從不曾進過學校，有幾個人曾說過，『學校是不需要的。』但是這些偉人顯然自己力學比大多數學校裏的孩子所做的要辛苦得多。它不能證明教育為無用。事實上，歷史上大多數的名人都費了好多年去求學。你能想起幾個你所崇拜的英雄麼，看他們是不是受過教育的男子或女子？

十 學校幫助建立橋樑和鐵道

因為我們所有的每座大橋樑，房屋，鐵道和水閘，許多的青年費掉年月用着鉛筆和紙張打樣，打樣，打樣。沒有學校作後盾，橋樑，鐵道，水閘都要造不成的。所有現在受聘計劃發展中國首都南京的所有建築家，土木工程師和電氣工程師，和別的技巧的工務員都是受過學校訓練的。

The following story will show how schools help to carry out many building projects. On September 16, 1917, a hundred *reporters*¹ from the large newspapers in Canada and the United States were sent to Quebec. Before daylight the next morning these men had left their hotels and stood waiting with thousands of others on the bank of the St. Lawrence River. All eyes were turned toward sixty-five thousand tons of iron that had been *wrought*² into a huge *span*³ to form the center of a great bridge which was to cross the St. Lawrence River. This lay on six big steel boats. At a given *signal*⁴ huge machines slowly started to raise this mass of iron. At twelve o'clock the reporters telegraphed their papers that it had been moved eight feet. When night fell, the iron still hung in *mid-air*⁵. Not until noon of the next day was the news *flushed*⁶ over the wires that the span was finally in place. Hundreds of men in both the United States and Canada had worked for years on this bridge, which is one of the largest in the world.

One of the men who helped build the bridge had spent nineteen years in school in the United States—seven years in *grammar school*⁷, four years in high school, four years in college, four years in the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. He was paid a salary of eight thousand dollars a year, although he was still a young man. When someone asked him *what* studies had most helped him to gain success he said: "In my position I must be able to figure speedily and with absolute accuracy. Not a minute that I ever spent over *arithmetic*⁸, algebra, and *geometry*⁹ was wasted. Why, see here," and he pointed to a great pile of *sheets of paper*¹⁰, "one single example covers twenty-five sheets and probably has about fifty thousand figures. This whole pile represents only one *truss*¹¹ of the bridge. Any boy who wants to build with his hands or plan buildings of any kind must keep at his figures." Public schools offer to every boy the same start that this young man had.

1 訪員。 2 鑄成。 3 架樑。 4 信號。 5 半空。 6 電達。 7 小學。 8 算術。
9 幾何。 10 紙張。 11 一部分。

下面的故事可以表示學校怎樣幫助實施許多建築計劃。一九一七年十月十六日加那大和美國的報館派了上百的訪員到魁白克去。次日早上天明以前這些人都離了旅館和幾千個別的人一起在聖勞倫河岸上等待着。所有的眼睛都向着六萬五千噸的鐵看，這些鐵已鑄成巨大的架徑，作為橫跨聖勞倫河大橋的中心。這個中心放在六只大鋼船上。等到信號一舉，巨大的機器慢慢地開始舉起這一大塊鐵。在十二點鐘訪員們打電報給館中說它已搬起了八尺。天夜了，這塊鐵仍舊挂在半空中。不到次日午間新聞從電線上傳去說這個架徑終於安放了。美國和加拿大的幾百工人為這座橋——這是世界最大的橋樑之一——做了幾年的工。

其中有一個幫助築橋的人，他在美國學校裏讀了十九年——七年小學，四年中學，四年專門學院，四年在麥撒區散次的工業研究院裏。他的薪俸是每年八千美金，雖然他還是個青年。當時有人問他，所學習的什麼東西最幫助他獲得成功。他說：『在我的地位我必定要能夠迅速地並且絕對準確地打樣。我們費於算術，代數，幾何的時間沒有一分鐘是浪費掉的。為何呢，看這兒。』他就指着一大捆的紙張，『單是一個樣子就要二十五張，二十五張裏確有五萬個圖。這整整的一捆只代表橋的一部分。任何個孩子要用他的手建築，或者為任何種類的建築計劃必定要遵守圖樣。』像這個青年起首的工作公立學校能同樣給予每個孩子的。

11. Useful Citizens are more Necessary than Famous Men and Women

The world needs few famous men, but it must have millions of useful citizens. The woman who can keep house without *wastefulness*² and can make a home happy and efficient, the man who can take care of his family and make his soil yield the largest possible crops—such women and men are the ones on whom the prosperity of the nation depends.

All that the nation asks of its school pupils is that each will train himself to do his best. The "best" of one boy will be to become a skilled locomotive engineer, who with clear brain and *steady hand*² will guide long trains of precious freight through wind and rain and darkness, never *faltering*³, never shirking. Another boy's "best" will be to learn to use *carpenter's*⁴ tools and to build houses that are as strong as faithful work can make them. The "best" of one girl may be to save lives by skillful nursing in home or hospital; another girl will do her "best" by cheerfully caring for the children at home and serving her neighbors as she has opportunity. The motto that might well be written over the door of every schoolroom in the land is, "Prepare here to do your best, whatever that may be."

Of course, then, even the smallest village should say, "We will give all our children the very best chance we can to develop in each one his best abilities. Perhaps even here we may have among our children a future *world-renowned*⁵ engineer, a skillful nurse, a great lawyer, a distinguished inventor or a farmer who will make his fields produce far more than they have ever produced before."

12. The Schools give an Equal Chance to All

Neither the parents nor the towns can tell how valuable a man and woman each boy and girl will become, so all children must be treated as if they might some day

1 浪费. 2 颤抖的手腕. 3 畏缩. 4 木匠. 5 世界闻名的.

十一 有用的公民比之男女名人更爲需要

世界需要不多的名人，但它一定要有幾百萬個有用的公民。女子能夠治家沒有浪費，使家庭快樂和有效率，男子能夠照管他的家庭使他的土壤能產生最大可能的五穀——這種男子和女子就是國家財富所倚恃的人。

國家向學生所要求的一切就是每個人要訓練自己。就他的特長做去。一個孩子的特長可以成爲一個技術高明的火車頭的機師，他有清楚的頭腦，和鎮靜的手腕能夠駕駛裝有珍貴貨物的長列車穿過風雨和黑暗，決不畏縮，決不躲避。另一個孩子的特長是去學習運用木匠的器具，並且以誠實的工作盡量把房屋造得堅固。一個女孩的特長也許是以巧妙的看護法在家庭裏或醫院裏救人性命；另一個女孩子就她特長所做的事，愉快地在家裏照顧兒童們，並且如有機會就爲她的鄰里服務。國內每只教室門上應該寫着這個座右銘，『在這裏準備就你的特長作事，不管特長是什麼。』

那末當然就是最小的村莊也要說，『我們要把最好的機會給予我們所有的孩子去發展他們最好的才能。也許就在這兒我們的孩子當中有一個未來的世界聞名的工程師，技術高明的看護，一個大律師，一個著名的發明家，或是一個能使他的田地生產量遠過以前他們所有生產量的農人。』

十二 學校把平等機會給予全民

不是父母也不是這個鎮集能夠說出每個男女孩子將來能夠成爲怎樣的一個有價值的男子和女子，所以一切的孩子都該以

be at the head of the government of the nation. Perhaps some boy just beginning the study of *chemistry*¹ in the middle school will, many years from now, make an important discovery that will benefit the whole world. Many men have spent their lives searching for a cure for that dreaded disease, cancer. No one has yet succeeded, but in some schoolroom today there may be a boy or girl who will keep on into the middle school, from middle school will go to college, from college will go to medical school, and then after years of patient search will make the great discovery for which the world is *anxiously*² waiting.

The American schoolmaster who, a hundred years ago, taught Cyrus H. McCormick how to multiply *mixed fractions*³ probably never dreamed that one day his pupil would invent the reaper and become one of the world's great inventors and manufacturers. When, more than forty-five years ago, Dr. Sun Yat-Sen was quietly studying in a medical school, no one knew that he would be the *founder*⁴ of the Republic of China. It costs a great deal of money to provide school buildings and teachers for all the boys and girls of a country. In each generation few of these students become famous, yet it pays to give them all the best possible training. The services which men like McCormick and Sun Yat-Sen have rendered each to his people have paid, many times over, for every dollar spent on the schools.

13. Education is becoming Compulsory⁵

Compulsory education means that parents are obliged to send their children to school. The reason for this is to give everybody a chance to succeed and to become an intelligent and useful citizen. Some fathers think they are too poor to send their children to school. Others think that because they have wealth their children do not need to learn arithmetic and his'tory. But the people who make the laws know that neither ignorant poor boys

1 化學。 2 切望地。 3 混合分數。 4 手創者。 5 強迫。

未來的國家元首對待他。也許有幾個孩子正在中學裏開頭讀化學，過了幾年，成功一件重大的發明可以利及世界的。許多人畢生找尋一種可怕的癌病治療法。至今沒有一個人成功，但是在今日的教室裏也許有一個男孩或女孩，他在中學裏讀上去，從中學到專門學院，從專門學院到醫學研究院，在幾年耐心的找尋之後，就造成了這個世界切望着的大發見。

百年以前，一位美國的教師麥克可兒密克混合命分的乘法，顯然決不會夢想有一天他的學生會發明割稻機，並成爲一個世界的大發明家和大製造家。約在四十五年前孫逸仙博士靜靜地在醫學院裏讀書，沒有人知道他會成爲中華民國的手創者。爲了國內所有的男女孩子預備下宿舍和教師是需費許多金錢的。在每一代裏只有很少幾個學生成爲有名，但是學校付了錢把最可能的訓練給與全部的學生。像麥克可兒密克和孫逸仙博士般貢獻給本國人民的服務，已數倍於學校所費了。

十三 教育將成爲強迫

強迫教育的意義是父母必須送他們的孩子上學。它的理由是把成功的機會給予每個人，使他們成爲一個有知識與有用的公民。有幾個父親以爲他們太窮了，不能送他們的孩子上學。別個人以爲他們有財產不需要學算術和歷史。但是制定法律的人知道不論愚昧的窮孩子和愚昧的富孩子都不能成爲有用，或

nor ignorant rich boys ever become very useful or successful. Most nations now have laws requiring parents to send their children to either public or private schools or to teach them at home. A parent may be fined or *jailed*¹ for failure to send a child to school when he is of school age.

A great problem in compulsory education is how long children should be kept in school. One fact is that we should like to give each child as *advanced an education*² as possible. Another fact is that the country cannot build schools or train teachers fast enough to carry the great mass of children beyond a *certain point*³ every year. Some must stop for lack of room and let the new ones come in *at the bottom*⁴. Still another fact is that people in general still believe in only a certain amount of education for a boy and, as a rule, less for a girl. They must, *accordingly*⁵, themselves be gradually educated to a higher ideal. Then there is the further question of finance.

14. Education in a Republic

Only a short time ago people entirely failed to see what we today think was as plain as the nose on one's face that if they expected all the men and women in a nation, not just a selected few, to be useful citizens, they must train all the children, not just a few. If they trained only a few boys and a few girls, twenty years later they would have a nation with small groups of trained men and women, and all the others would be like sheep, to be led or driven as the few desired. Even the sickly children and those who are crippled or blind or deaf are an important part of the people, because they too will be citizens. We must remember that in a few years all this great land passes over, *little by little*⁶, into the hands of those who are now its boys and girls. What becomes of it—whether it advances or declines, whether it remains free or not, whether some seize the rights and property of the others or all have equal justice—these questions depend upon the character of its future citizens and

1 拘禁。 2 高深教育。 3 某種限度。 4 低一班。 5 因此。 6 漸漸的。

成功的。現在大多數國家制有法律要求父母送他們孩子到公立或私立的學校去，或是在家裏教導他們。父母因為沒有把學齡兒童送上學就要罰金或拘禁。

對於強迫教育的一個大問題是孩子就學年數應該多少長。我們該歡喜把最可能的高深教育給予每一個孩子，這是事實。另一件事實是國家年年建築學校，訓練教師以教育所有的孩子，如果其數超出了某種限度之外，那末就要不夠快了。有幾個必得要因為缺乏空額而停止，以讓新生從低一班進來。還有別的事實是一般人民仍舊相信男孩只能受某種定量的教育，照例女孩子更要減少。因此，他們必須慢慢的自修以達到較高的理想。於是更進一步的問題就是財政了。

十四 一個民主國家的教育

只在很短時期以前，人民完全不能明白我們今日的思想，正像在臉上看鼻子一般的清楚；如果他們希望一切國內的男和女子，不是選出來的幾個成爲有用的公民。他們必定要訓練一切的孩子，不只是不多的幾個。如果他們只訓練幾個男孩或幾個女孩，二十年後他們的國家將只有小羣的受過訓練的男子和女子，其餘一切的人都像綿羊，任這少數的人隨意領導和驅使好了。即使是害病的孩子和那些殘廢的，盲啞的，聾的都是人民中一個重要的分子，因爲他們也將成爲公民的。我們必得記好，在不多幾年裏所有巨大的土地都要漸漸地交付與現在的男孩或女孩的手裏。它將成爲什麼現象呢——不管興盛，或失敗，不管其能自由存在與否，不管幾個人把別人的權利財產抓去，或是全體有平等的公理——這些問題在於未來公民的品

therefore upon the training which the boys and girls of today receive.

If China is to be a republic no further argument is necessary—she must have *popular education*¹. That means education of all the people. Every boy and girl is to be a citizen; the citizens are to govern the country; then every boy and girl must be educated. How can a citizen *vote*² *intelligently*³ if he does not understand the government, if he does not read the news, if he does not know such things as you are reading in this book? Every citizen must read and understand the newspapers, especially the *editorials*⁴. He should read on both sides of every question. He should read two or three *opposing papers*⁵, and also books upon public questions.

Information is not enough. The *citizens of a self-governing nation*⁶ must be honest and intelligent. They must be trained to think clearly and accurately and to weigh matters and judge justly. Good judgment and honesty are even more important than information, for honest and intelligent people may choose good representatives even if they cannot solve the political problems themselves.

It is not only as voters that citizens must act with understanding and good judgment and patriotism, but also in the many ways already mentioned in this book. Good order, laws, safety of property, sanitation, improvements, thrift, and investment—all such things depend upon the education of the people. A few educated leaders and great scientists cannot do anything unless they are supported by the citizens. The work must be done by intelligent workers; it will be paid for only if people understand its value, and it will be *approved*⁷ and appreciated only by an intelligent public opinion.

15. Mass Education⁸ Movement in China

One of the most hopeful signs of progress in new China is the *nation-wide*⁹ movement for the education of the

1 民衆教育。 2 投票。 3 聰明地。 4 社論。 5 相反的報紙。 6 自治國家。 7 贊賞。 8 大眾教育。 9 普及全國的。

格，和在於男孩與女孩今日所受的訓練。

如果中國之爲民主國不需辯論，那末她必需有民衆教育。那個意義就是全民的教育。每個男孩和女孩都要成爲公民；公民是要治理國家的；那末每個男孩和女孩必定要受教育。如果一個公民不明瞭政府，如果他不看新聞，如果他不曉得像你在這本書上讀到的這種東西，他怎麼能夠聰明地投票選舉呢？每個公民必定要看新聞紙，並且要了解它，尤其是社論。他該把每個問題的兩面都看過。他該看兩三種相反的報紙，和關於公共問題的書。

消息是不夠的。自治國家的公民必須要誠實和有理解。他們必該有思想清楚和準確，量事與判斷公平的訓練。良好的判斷和誠實甚至比消怠還要重要，因爲誠實和有理解的人民可以選擇良好的代議人，即使他們自己不能解答這個政治問題。

在做選民時不但公民必要以明瞭，良好的判斷及愛國行事，就是這本書上所說的許多東西也該有的。好秩序，法律，財產的安全，衛生，改進，節儉，投資——所有這種東西都在於人民的教育。幾個教育領袖和大科學家除非得到公民的扶助他們不能做任何一件事。工作必要由有理解力的工人去做；只要人民了解它的價值，它是可以贖還的，並且只由於聰明的輿論它將被贊賞與重視。

十五 中國的大衆教育運動

新中國進步的一個最有希望的象徵就是普遍全國的大衆教

masses. It is heartily supported by all public-spirited officials, leading citizens, educators, and students. It is eagerly appreciated by the masses of people themselves. There are millions of children of school age who are not in schools. There are millions and millions of *adolescent*¹ boys and girls, young men and women, who have never had a chance to go to school, or whose schooling is not sufficient to make it useful. There are many millions of adults who cannot even read or write but are not too old to learn. In the leading countries of the world, the percentage of *illiteracy*² (lack of ability to read or write one's native language) is seldom more than 8 or 9 per cent, but in China it is estimated at 80 per cent. That means out of the 400,000,000 people about 320,000,000 cannot read or write Chinese.

Fortunately "*People's Schools*"³ are rapidly increasing in number all over China, in villages as well as in cities. These schools aim to teach the people how to read and write the commonest *characters*⁴ of the Chinese language. In studying this *vocabulary*⁵ they learn simple lessons in personal and public hygiene, *civic*⁶ virtues and duties, knowledge about common objects and affairs, new ways of thinking and doing things, etc. There are special *text-books*⁷ as well as "*follow-up*"⁸ books, newspapers, and magazines for city people, for village people, for soldiers, and for *overseas Chinese*⁹. These *publications*¹⁰ often sell for only two or three cents a copy. School hours are arranged so as not to interfere with the regular work of the people. *Tuition*¹¹ is free. Most of the teachers in these schools are patriotic students from middle schools and colleges who gladly volunteer their services.

The *removal*¹² of illiteracy is only a first step. The Mass Education Movement is carrying on work to show village people how to improve agriculture, to better living conditions, and to secure richer community life. This is a great task that calls for the best consideration and attention of all patriotic citizens of China. Let us spread the good news of the Mass Education Movement, raise

1 年少的, 2 文盲, 3 民衆學校, 4 文字, 5 語彙, 6 公民的, 7 教科書, 8 民衆學校畢業後繼續閱讀的書籍, 9 華僑, 10 出版物, 11 學費, 12 掃蕩。

育運動。這個運動內心地爲一切有公益心的官吏，市民領袖，教育家和學生所扶助。這個運動爲人民大眾自己所熱烈地重視。有幾百萬的學齡兒童沒有上學。有幾百幾千萬的少年的男女孩子，青年男女，他們永無入學的機會，或是他們所受的教育不夠，不足應用。有好幾百萬的成人甚至不能讀或寫，但是學習起來並沒有太老。世界上幾個先進國家，文盲的百分比（缺乏讀或寫本國文字的能力）很少比百分之八或九更多的，但是中國計算起來却有百分之八十。就是四萬萬人民中約有三萬二千萬人不能讀或寫中文。

有幸地民衆學校在全中國迅速地增加它的數目，村中城中一般地增加。這些學校的目的是教導人民怎樣讀和怎樣寫中國文字中最普通的字。在讀這種語彙時，他們還學習關於個人和公共的衛生，公民的道德和責任，關於普通事物的知識，思想和實行的新方法等等的簡單功課。有特種教科書，也有民衆學校畢業後繼續閱讀的書籍，新聞紙，和供城市人民，供鄉村人民，供兵士，供華僑閱讀的雜誌。這些出版物常常只賣兩三分之一份。學校鐘點排得不至妨礙人民的規定工作，學費是不收的。這些學校裏的大多數教師都是愛國的專門學院和中學的學生，他們快樂地自動服務。

掃除文盲只是第一個步驟。這個大眾教育運動還要繼續工作，要指示村民怎樣改良農業，改良生活狀況，保有較富裕的社會生活。這是個巨大的事業，要喚起中國全部愛國公民的詳細考慮和注意的。讓我們傳佈大眾教育運動的好消息，籌款資

money for its support, volunteer to teach in these schools, and to do everything we can to help the movement.

16. Public Opinion

Public opinion is a powerful thing, as the young people in China have already learned. It has made and destroyed laws and customs, schools and armies, *commercial intercourse*¹ and even government itself. But public opinion does not always take a wise and beneficial course. It is often blind and foolish. It often destroys what is good and true and sets up in a high place what is false and useless or harmful. It is like fire, water, or wind: it may either serve you or destroy you. It must be tamed and trained. It must be made intelligent. Every boy or girl that is truly educated is a step in that direction, and also an agent for the more rapid education of public opinion.

How is public opinion made in your school? Is it made by the best students? Do you do your part to make it right on every question? Are you brave enough to stand up for good *sportsmanship*², for cleanness, for the honor of the school, for the protection of school property, for fairness, for an equal opportunity to everyone, for the weak against the strong, for the "*under dog*,"³ for the rights of the minority, for justice to the one who may be accused by the group? It takes courage to make the right sort of public opinion. What could be more valuable to China now than that sort of courage? It ought to be developed in your school by practice. The real hero is the one who *stands for the right*⁴, no matter how strong the crowd may be against him.

The newspapers are the greatest makers of public opinion for the province or nation. "*The press*"⁵ is an enormous power in every country. The first *periodical*⁶ ever printed is said to have been the old official *gazette*⁷ of China; but thirty years ago there were still only about 20 Chinese newspapers and magazines in all China, while the number of periodicals in North America, for example,

1 通商。 2 體育精神。 3 戰敗的人。 4 扶助正義。 5 印刷物。 6 定期刊物。
7 官報。

助它，自動在這些學校裏執教，和盡力做着各種事情以幫助這個運動。

十六 輿論

輿論是很有權力的東西，這是中國青年已經知道了的。它能造成或破壞法律與習俗，學校與軍隊，通商或甚至於自己的政府。但是輿論並不總是向聰明與有利的方針走的。它常是盲目與愚蠢。它常常破壞有益和真實的東西，它立論於很高的地方，而却是虛偽，無用或有害。它正像火，水，風，它也許能為你服務，也許會把你燬了。它必得要加以馴養和訓練。必得要使其有理解。每個男孩或女孩真正受過教育的是那個方向的一個步驟，並為使輿論教育更為迅速的代理人。

你的學校造成的輿論怎樣呢？是不是由最最好的學生造成的呢？你有充分的勇氣爲了良好的體育精神，爲了清潔，爲了學校的榮譽，爲了保衛學校的財產，爲了公正，爲了要人人有平等機會，爲了鋤強扶弱，爲了戰敗的人，爲了少數人的權利，爲了被一羣人所控告的人的公平而站起來麼？造成正當的輿論要有勇氣。中國現在還有什麼比那種勇氣更有價值呢？這種勇氣應該在你的學校裏實行發展。真正的英雄就是扶助正義的人，不管羣衆怎樣強硬地反對他。

新聞紙是一省或一國的輿論製造者。印刷物在各國都是一種巨大的力量。所曾刊行的第一種定期刊物據說是中國的古老的政府官報；但是三十年以前全中國還只有約計二十種的新聞紙和雜誌，而例如北美的定期刊物，其數就有一萬五千種。可

was probably about 15,000. Since 1900, however, and especially since 1911, the number of papers in China has greatly increased. There are now over 1200 *registered*¹ at the post office. There are still no Chinese papers which have a *circulation*² of 500,000, as some papers in the West have, and there are still no great popular magazines in China; and yet the influence of the press in making public opinion is already very great. This means that in the *owning and editing*³ of papers and magazines there is need for character and true patriotism, for honesty, courage, and fairness.

17. The Salvation⁴ of "White Cloud Village"

See how it works. "White Cloud" is a little village in a valley among the hills; it might be almost anywhere in China. "White Cloud" is poor. The houses are in bad condition; the streets are dirty; the people are weak with sickness; the roads are in bad repair; robbers are always present; business is poor; the government is ineffective; there is no public spirit or public opinion. When you ask what is wrong at "White Cloud," one says there is no educated public opinion or public spirit. Another declares that this is because there are no schools and the people are ignorant, weak and discouraged. Another says, "Yes, but this is only because the streets are *unsanitary*⁵, the houses *leak*⁶, the food is poor, and the people do not save anything against the times when it is needed." Then it is declared that all this is merely the natural result of poor business conditions: no money is being made at "White Cloud." But this in turn, they say, is because the roads are broken up and the robbers are bad. But why aren't the robbers caught and the roads made suitable for commerce? It is because there is no good government at "White Cloud." But why not? Because there is not enough general intelligence, public opinion, and public spirit—and that is where we began. We have gone round in a "*vicious circle*."⁷ Is there no way out? At what place is it easiest to break this circle?

1 登記。 2 銷路。 3 發行和編輯。 4 救濟事業。 5 不衛生的。 6 破漏。 7 不真的圈子。

是從一九〇〇年起，尤其是一九一一年中國報章的數目已大大地增加了。現在郵局登記的在一千二百種以上，中國報紙仍沒有日銷五十萬份像西洋有幾種報紙般，並且中國仍沒有十分流行的雜誌；可是印刷物製造輿論的力量却已很大了。這是指報紙，雜誌的發行和編輯，必須要報格和真正的愛國，爲了誠實，勇敢和公正之故。

十七 白雲村之救濟事業

看它的工作怎樣。『白雲』是小山之間山谷中的一個小村落；這樣的村落中國差不多到處都有。『白雲』是貧窮的。房屋的情形不佳；街道污穢，人民衰弱和害病；道路修理得很壞，強盜常常光臨，商業不振，政府無力；那裏沒有公益心與輿論。當你詢問白雲的錯處是什麼的時候，一個說因爲那裏沒有受過教育的輿論和公益心。另一個宣稱說這是因爲那裏沒有學堂，而人民都是愚昧，衰弱和消極。另一個說，『是的，但是這不過是因爲街道的不衛生，房屋的破漏，食物不良，而人們不肯儲蓄以供必需的時間。』於是宣稱一切的情形都只是商業不振情形的自然結果；而白雲村沒有錢賺。但是他們說回來了，這是因爲道路破壞，盜賊可惡。但是爲什麼強盜不能被捕而道路不能築得適合於商業呢？這是因爲白雲村上沒有良好的政府。但是爲什麼沒有呢？因爲那兒沒有充足的一般理解力，輿論和公益心——而那就是我們起頭的地方。我們在這『不良的圈子』裏亂兜。沒有方法出去麼？在那一處最容易打破這個

If the government of the province will *step in*¹ and establish order in this village and compel the people to repair and develop the roads, that will probably break the circle—start business, increase savings, improve conditions, and make it possible to open a good school. This general change for the better will after a time probably develop public opinion and general intelligence, but the change itself will be difficult and slow as long as it works without or against public opinion.

There is another way to break the circle, with or without the government's aid. Somebody in "White Cloud" sends a son or daughter away to school. The young man or woman gets an education and, in a fine spirit of loyalty and service, returns to "White Cloud," becoming the center of life and light and hope and public service. A little school starts of *its own accord*²; it sets an example of repair and cleanliness; it teaches health and sanitation; it brings play and good *cheer*³; it gathers the people together for *conference*⁴ and coöperation; it shows them things worth living for and saving up for; it develops public spirit and public opinion—and the old circle is broken from within. "White Cloud" is filled with pride and ambition. One boy or girl has built the right public opinion.

18. An Inspiring Story

Does the story of "White Cloud Village" seem too good to be true? Here is one about a place that you can go to visit. *Ting Hsien*⁵ is a district about six hours' train ride from Peiping. There are about 400,000 people living in about 400 villages in that district. The leaders of the Mass Education Movement have gone there to live, to work, and to coöperate with the people in order to make the district a *model*⁶ for all China.

This is how they began in one of the villages. They discovered that one of the village elders had been to Japan and naturally had some progressive ideas. They told him about their plans to improve the life of his

1 干涉. 2 自動. 3 娛樂. 4 開會. 5 定縣. 6 模範.

圈子呢？如果省政府加以干涉，在村上建立秩序，強迫人民修理和發展道路，那就顯然能打破這個圈子了，——商業起始，儲蓄增加，情形改良，並使它能夠開一只良好的學校。這個一般情形的改良隔了一時顯然就會發展輿論和一般理解力，但是這改變自身將是困難而緩慢，如果沒有輿論或是違反輿論。

另外還有一個方法去打破這個圈子，或者得到政府的幫助或者不。幾個白雲村裏的人派一個兒子或女兒出去上學。青年男女受到教育，以良好的忠誠和服務精神回到白雲村去，成爲生活，光明，希望，和公益的中心。自動開辦小學校；它安放了一個修補與清潔的例子；它教導健康和衛生；舉行遊戲和良好的娛樂；聚集人民開會與合作；它指示他們生活的和儲蓄的價值；它發展公益心和輿論——那末這個老圈子就從裏面打破了。『白雲』於是充滿了榮譽和希望。一個男孩或女孩能夠建設起輿論來。

十八 一件奮勵的故事

這件『白雲村』的故事看來不是太好了，難以置信麼？這兒是一個你能夠去參觀的地方。定縣距北平只有六小時的火車行程。約有四十萬人住，在縣內的四百村裏。大衆教育運動的領袖跑到那兒去，住着，工作着，並和人民合作謀使本縣成爲中國的模範縣。

他們在其中一個村上的開始工作是這樣的。他們發見村上長老有一個曾到過日本，本來有一點進步觀念。他們把改良村

people. He became enthusiastic and went at once to convince the other elders. A committee of ten elders was organized to be responsible for the whole affair. A mass meeting of the village was called, and the elders and the leaders from outside spoke, explaining to the people how every one, young or old, man or woman, could learn to read and write if they would open a "people's school." The people responded immediately. They set aside the village primary school—for they had one—and part of the temple to be used as classrooms. The primary school teacher volunteered to teach at night without pay. Some contributed oil for light. Others gave wood and coal for fire during the winter. A large number of people *enrolled*¹, and each paid only twelve cents for the four books used in the course. The success of this school made the people in this village as well as in others want more "people's schools." There are now over 200 of such schools, with nearly 10,000 students in that district. The number is rapidly growing.

But only to learn how to read and write is not enough. The people must get a better living. So a *demonstration farm*² was established, and experts went to study how scientific methods might be applied to Chinese agriculture. They have improved the farm tools—the old Chinese plow, the *harrow*³, the *planter*⁴, the *water-wheel*⁵, etc. For example, the old water-wheel takes two men to run it and can water only one MOU of land; but the new one takes only one man to run it, can water three MOU of land, and costs \$2.00 less than the old. They have also been working to improve crops by seed-selection, and chickens, *hogs*⁶, and sheep by proper breeding. The results of the demonstration farm are always shown to the *alumni*⁷ of the "people's schools" first. Then they go back to their own farms and show them to the other farmers.

The graduates and alumni of the "people's schools" are organized into "*alumni associations*⁸." They are very active in promoting all kinds of public welfare work. They kill flies, plant trees, build roads, organize clubs, carry on *inter-village athletics*⁹, *stage modern plays*¹⁰, and

1 報名。2 農事試驗場。3 耙。4 播種器。5 水車。6 猪。7 畢業生。8 畢業同學會。9 村際運動會。10 出演現代新劇。

民生活的計劃告訴他。他甚為熱心，立即去說服其餘的幾個長老。就由十個長老組織了一個委員會，以負一切事務的責任。召集了個全村會議，長老和外面的領袖開口向人民說明每個人，不論老幼男女都要學習讀書寫字的理由，問他們要開辦一所民衆學校麼？這班人民立即答應。他們除了村上原有小學之外——因為他們有一所的——一部分的廟宇都用作課堂。小學校的教師自動義務教夜課。有幾個捐助點燈的油。有幾個捐助柴和炭以供冬天的向火。大量的人民來報名只要付一角二分錢，就可買四本教科書。這所學校的成功使村上的人民和別村上的人民都要更多的民衆的學校，那縣裏有二百多這樣的學校，相近一萬的學生。這個數目還在迅速地增加。

但是只學習怎樣讀書寫字是不夠的。人民必要獲得較好的生活。所以農事試驗場就成立了，並有專家來研究怎樣把科學的方法應用到中國的農事上。他們已改良了農事器具——陳舊的中國犁，耙，播種器，水車，等等。例如，陳舊的水車要兩個人來轉動，却只能灌溉一畝的地；但是新式的只要一個人來轉動，却能夠灌溉三畝地，其價反比老的減少兩元。他們因為種子的選擇而做改良收穫的工作，並且以合宜的畜養法改良雞，豬，羊。這個農事試驗場的結果總是最先給民衆學校的畢業生看。於是他們回到自己的田裏，把它們給老農看。

民衆學校的畢業生組織了畢業同學會。他們對於增進一切公益事宜的工作甚為活動。他們殺死蒼蠅，種植樹木，建築道路，組織俱樂部，進行村際運動會，出演現代新劇，還組織一

even organize a *self-defence unit*¹ against *bandits*². The whole life of the people has been changed, because a group of educated young people went there in a spirit of service. Many of them had studied education, agriculture, medicine, engineering, etc., in foreign countries and have received the Ph.D. degree. Yet they have gone "back to the masses" to work, to serve, and to live. If all this can be accomplished at Ting Hsien, why can't it be done all over China? Who will do the work, if not those who enjoy such educational opportunities as you now do?

19. Higher Education

The stories of "White Cloud Village" and Ting Hsien, you will say, show that the higher education of a few is important as well as the general education of the many. Yes; we have already discussed the great importance of scientific and professional education. Between general elementary education and professional training there is a great middle ground that may be called higher general education or lower *technical*³ education. Here the teachers of the elementary schools are educated for their important work. Many of those who are leaders in their communities, such as business men, officers, clerks, agents, are educated here. Some go to college and become editors, officials statesmen. Some go on to professional schools of medicine, engineering, etc.

It is sometimes necessary for a family to make a sacrifice so that one of their number can go on to a higher education. Perhaps several must *bow lower*⁴ to lift one up. That is the meaning of the picture called "Getting an Education by somebody's Sacrifice." What a return of love and service should be made to the family and community where the sacrifice was made!

In a certain home there were two boys, ten and fourteen years old, and a girl of twelve. The father was dead. The mother wanted all the children to have a middle-school education; but this was impossible, for they were

1 自衛團。 2 寇盜。 3 專門的。 4 屈身。

個自衛團以禦寇盜。整個的村民生活都改變了，因為一羣抱着服務精神的受教育的青年跑到了那裏。其中許多是在外國學過教育，農事，醫藥，機械等等，而得有博士的學位的。可是他們回到大眾去工作，服務，與生活。如果一切的東西在定縣都能完成，那末爲什麼不能行之於中國各地呢？誰將做這個工作，如果像你一般享受這樣教育機會的人不去做？

十九 高等教育

『白雲村』和定縣的故事，你將要說，可以表示對於少數人的高等教育和多數人的一般教育有一樣的重要。是的；我們已經討論過科學和專門教育的巨大重要性。介於一般初等教育和專門訓練之間有一片很大的中間地，那也許可以喚作高等一般教育或低級的專門教育。初等學校的教師在這裏受教育，以備他們出去做重要工作。其中有許多是他們社會上的領袖，例如商人，職員，書記，代理人都是在這兒受教育的。有幾個進專門學院，成爲主筆，官吏，政客。有幾個進醫藥，機械等等的專門學校。

有時需要一個家庭的犧牲，才能使家庭裏的一個人得以受高等教育。也許要幾個人屈着身體以抬高一個人。那張圖畫的意義稱爲『以幾個人的犧牲而獲得一個人的教育。』對於這個受犧牲的家庭和社會應該怎樣以愛和服務爲報答呢！

在某一家庭裏有兩個男孩子，十歲和十四歲，一個女孩子十二歲。父親死了。母親要所有的孩子都受中等教育；但是這却

poor. So she told them that they must decide which one should be sent away to school. The girl and the ten-year-old boy decided that the older brother should be the one to have the chance.

20. Elementary Education

The sacrifice of the many who will never receive more than an elementary education makes us all the more eager to make that elementary education our first object. The old saying is that it must be chiefly reading, writing, and arithmetic. These subjects are, of course, the foundation, both for *everyday general intelligence*¹ and for further study. We must try to make the reading such that a pupil after three or four years of study can really read and enjoy reading. Writing must be such that the pupil can write letters that are clear and correct. Arithmetic must prepare the pupil to make really useful *calculations*². His education, however, must give him far more than the ability to handle words and figures. When he reads, he should read something interesting and instructive. He must know about his own people and his own locality—its business, its needs, its history, its progress. Above all, he must obtain a knowledge of how to live and to keep well and to be of use.

The elementary schools are the hope of China's success as a republic. Are they important? They are to be centers for the spread of ideas and the brightening of the community. Are they useful? They are to be the channel through which public opinion will be formed and the character of each new generation be developed. Can we neglect one of these elementary schools? Do we believe in *patriotism*³? Well, here are the centers of patriotism. Do we believe in the *uplift*⁴ of the nation? Well, here are the means for that uplift.

1 日常普通智識。 2 計算。 3 愛國信念。 4 興起。

不可能，因為他們很窮。所以她告訴他們一定要決定一個送進學校去。女孩子和十歲的男孩決定大哥哥該是享受這個機會的一個。

二十 初等教育

許多永未受初等以上教育的人的犧牲使我們更熱心於以初等教育為我們的第一個目標。老古話說初等教育裏最主要的是讀書，寫字，和算學。這幾個科目當然是基礎，對於日常普通知識和進修上都需要的。我們必定要使讀的情形這樣，一個學生讀了三四年之後能夠真正的閱讀和得着閱讀的樂趣。寫的情形必定要這樣，學生能夠寫清楚與準確的信札。算術必定要讓學生能夠做確實有用的計算。給於他的教育必定要遠超過手頭文字與數字之上當他閱讀的時候，他必得讀有趣和有教育意味的書。他必定要知道他自己的人民和土地——它的商業，它的需要，它的歷史，它的進步。最要緊的，他必要得到怎樣生活，怎樣衛生，怎樣得用的知識。

初等學校是中國的希望，因為她是民主國。它們重要麼？它們將成為傳佈理想和光明社會的中心。它們有用麼？他將成為貫通造成的輿論和發展新時代特性的運河。我們能忽視這些初等學校中的任何一所麼？我們有愛國的信念麼？好的，這兒就是愛國信念的中心。我們有興起我們國家的信念麼？好的，這兒就是興起的方法。

21. Who will do the Work?

There may be as many as 100,000,000 boys and girls in China today who are or who should be in an elementary school. If we allow one teacher for every 25 pupils, we need 4,000,000 teachers. If every pupil in every elementary school now recognized by the government should become a teacher, it would not give the required number. How many of them will teach? How difficult is our problem of *supplying*¹ teachers?

There must be more schools. Let us demand more schools. Let us fill the land with the patriotic cry of "More schools!" Let us make life miserable for any official or citizen who is so blind and unpatriotic as to oppose or neglect the schools. Schools must be supported. Teachers must be paid well, and paid regularly and *promptly*². Villages and cities must be required by law to provide schools for all children just as fast as they can find teachers for them. Parents must be persuaded and even compelled to support the schools and send their children. One question is, Who is going to push this matter of schools? Another is, Who is going to teach in the schools? Young citizens of China, what is your answer? Is there any more patriotic service you can render than setting an example of public-spirited devotion by giving yourself to the development of some school and the teaching of some group of our boys or girls?

22. Women and Education

We have said that all the people ought to be educated—this *includes*³ girls as well as boys. We have said that all the citizens ought to work for the development of education throughout the land—this includes women as well as men. We have suggested that all of you ought to be ready to do your part in teaching—this includes the girls even more than the boys. Girls make good teachers. They are *high-minded*⁴ and *earnest*⁵ and have a natural liking for children. In America the education of the boys

1 供應. 2 迅速. 3 包括. 4 思想高尚. 5 誠懇.

二十一 誰做這個工作？

中國今日也許有一萬萬之多的男女孩子已進或該進初等小學。如果我們承認每二十五個學生要一個教師，那末我們需要四百萬教師。如果每所政府承認的小學校裏的每個學生都成爲教師，恐怕還不到所需要的數目。他們之間有多少將來教書的呢？關於供應教師的問題是怎樣的困難呢？

必定要有更多的學校。讓我們要求更多的學校。讓我們以愛國的呼聲『更多的學校』充滿大地！對於任何盲目與不愛國的，反對或忽視學校的官吏與公民，讓我們使他們得到悲慘的生活。學校必應扶助。教師待遇要好，付薪要依規定和迅速。村和城市必要以法律制定爲所有兒童準備學校同時爲他們聘定教師。必要勸導父母，或甚至強迫父母扶助學校和遣子女入學。一個問題是誰去推進學校事業呢？另一個問題，是誰到學校裏去教書呢？中國的青年你們的回答是什麼？獻身以發展學校，獻身以教育我們男女孩子中的幾小羣，這是熱心公益的好例子，難道你還有更愛國的服務麼？

二十二 婦女與教育

我們曾說過所有人民應該都受教育——這裏面包括女孩子和男孩子一樣的，我們曾說過所有的公民應該爲全國教育之發展而工作——這裏面包括女子和男子一樣的。我們曾建議你們全體應該預備在教導上盡你的本分——這裏面包括的女孩子也許更比男孩子多。女孩子能成爲良好的教師。他們是思想高尚和誠懇，並且對於孩子有天然的愛好。在美國男女孩子上至中

and girls up to the high school is almost entirely in the hands of women. Some of the highest educational officials are women. For the sake of education in China there ought now to be just as many girls in school as boys.

Intelligent women are especially interested in education. Many a man's fortune and fame have been made by the patient *insistence*¹ of his mother that he go on studying. In some Western countries women were given the vote first upon educational matters. They have been put upon *school boards*² and employed as inspectors and *supervisors*³. In many places they have more to do with educational affairs than have the men. They urge the people to put more into the schools. They keep the government from forgetting education. They insist upon school taxes, and they watch to see that the money is well spent. They can talk and they can write and they can vote; therefore attention has to be paid to them. We speak of patriotic women—here in education is one of the greatest fields for the patriotic service of women to enrich and ennoble life in China.

"Woman's place is in the home" is an old saying. There is much truth in it, but woman's place is wherever she is needed.

We have said that one of the greatest fields of patriotic service for women is in education. Women are needed as teachers, *matrons*⁴, principals, *promoters*⁵, *superintendents*⁶, supervisors, and as voters and *taxpayers*⁷. That is one great reason why the women of China must be educated. But there are many other reasons.

Educated women are needed to do a large part of all the work for China that we are discussing in this book. They choose foods wisely, prepare them properly, keep them free from disease germs. They understand clothing, home-furnishing, sanitation, protection of health, nursing. They work for public-health laws, the protection of children, order and justice. They make homes happy and good. That is the greatest patriotic service. They

1 堅持。 2 校董。 3 監督員。 4 保姆。 5 贊助人。 6 管理員。 7 納稅員。

學的教育差不多完全在女子手裏。有幾個最高級的教育官是女子。因為中國教育的緣故現在學校裏女孩子的數目應該和男孩子一樣。

有知識的女子尤其對於教育有興趣。許多男子的財產和名譽都由於他母親的忍耐的堅持使他繼續求學而成的。西洋各國的婦女最先在教育事業上有選舉權。她們被委爲校董，或雇用爲視學員，和監督員。在許多地方她們所辦的教育事業比了男子們要多。她們激勵人民多捐錢給學校。她們使政府不要忘掉教育。她們堅決要求學校稅，她們監視着把金錢用得正當。她們能夠談話，她們能夠寫，並且她們能夠選舉；所以人家就對她們注意了。我們說到愛國婦女——這兒在教育上就是爲婦女富強與升高中國生命的愛國服務的最大園地。

『婦女的地位在家裏』是一句老話。這句話裏很有不少的真理，但是婦女的地位却在無論那裏需要她的地方。

我們已曾說過婦女愛國服務的最大園地之一就是在教育上。像教師，保母，校長，贊助人，管理員，監督，又像投票人，納稅員都需要婦女。那就是中國婦女應受教育的一個大理由。但是還有許多別的理由。

需要受過教育的婦女爲中國做一切工作中的大部分，我們在這本書上已討論過了。她們聰明地選擇食物，合式地做菜，使食物沒有黴菌。她們懂得做衣服，家庭佈置，衛生，保護健康，看護。她們爲公共衛生法律，爲保護孩子，爲秩序，爲公正而工作。她們使家庭快樂而優美。那是最大的愛國工作，她

do a thousand small things that develop good communities to live in. They support useful institutions. They even manage large business affairs. They work for better towns and cities. Girls and women are half of the people. There is every reason why they should be educated and given a full half of the nation's work to do.

The binding of girls' feet ties them to their own homes. It not only makes them suffer and prevents them from playing outdoors and growing up to be strong and healthy women, but it also keeps them from going out into the world to do what women can do as citizens and workers. Foot-binding is an injury to the nation. So, too, is the neglect of the health and education of girls. When they are not sent to school, it is like binding their growing minds. This also keeps them too much in the house. Their minds are tied to a little circle of home duties and small talk. They cannot do their work in the world. Even if that work is in the home only, it ought to be done in an intelligent and *broad-minded*² and patriotic way. China is now making laws that prohibit foot-binding and the neglect of the education of girls as well as boys.

23. Lend a Hand¹!

A man struggling in the water cries, "Help! lend a hand!" Would any man, woman, or child be so cold and *hard-hearted*³ as to refuse? Even a dog will often *leap*⁴ to the rescue. A man who would refuse or hinder the poor fellow in *distress*⁵ should be punished as a criminal and scorned as unworthy of any respect.

* The schools in China are struggling like a man in deep water. They lack teachers, they lack good books of many kinds, they lack buildings and equipment, they lack encouragement and money. Do you think often of how you can help your school? If you help one school, you help education in China. If you can write a good story for children, you may help a thousand schools. In many ways a student can help education by helping his

1 大量的。 2 援手。 3 硬心腸。 4 跳下去。 5 困難。

們做上千種的小事件，以發展良好的社會，使人民住着。她們扶助有用的建設物，甚至她們管理大商業。她們爲要使鎮集城市更好而工作。女孩子和婦人是人民間的一半，那就是爲什麼她們該受教育和把國家的一半工作給她們做的一切理由。

纏女孩的足而把她們縛在屋裏。這不但使她們受傷害和妨礙她們作戶外遊戲以至妨礙她們生長爲強壯與健康的婦人，並且還使她們不能到世界上去像公民和工人般做婦女能做的事。纏足是一種國家的傷害。忽視女孩的健康和教育也是一樣。如果不把她們送進學校，這就是束縛她正在生長的思想。這把她們留在家裏太過分了。她們的思想只縛於家庭責任和細微談話的小圈子裏。她們不能在世界上做她們的工作。即使那工作只限於家庭，也該以有知識的，大量的，和愛國的方法去作成這些工作。中國現正在制定法律禁止纏足和忽視女孩的教育——男孩子和女孩子一樣。

二十三 援手

一個人在水裏掙扎喊着，『幫助！援手！』任何男子，和婦人，或是孩子會這樣地冷酷和硬心腸來拒絕他麼？就是狗也常會跳下去救助的。一個人拒絕或妨礙一個在困難中的人，該像罪犯般處罰，和受人藐視，不值得尊敬。中國的學校恰像一個人在深水裏般正在掙扎。它們缺乏教師，缺乏各種良好書籍，缺乏建築物，和設備，缺乏鼓勵和金錢。你常常想到怎樣幫助你的學校麼？如果你幫助一所學校，就是幫助中國的教育。你如果能爲孩子們寫篇良好的故事，也許就是幫助了上千所的學校。一個學生能以許多方法幫助教育，由於他幫助自己

own school. Many a school in China has been almost destroyed by the students themselves. A *school strike*¹ is a dangerous thing. It usually destroys interest and confidence in the school, discourages those who work for the school, makes it difficult to get teachers and officers, and keeps away good students. It is impossible for the students to manage a school, because they change too much from year to year both in personnel and in ideas. Now when education is struggling so hard, let us students and teachers *confer*² together as to how we can cooperate to make our school better. Let us be the last ones on earth to do anything to discourage or destroy a school, our own or even a *rival school*³.

24. How we can help our School

1. We can do our best in athletics and drills, so that our school will be in fine health and vigor.

2. We can do our best in all public sports or on other occasions, so that our school will have as high a place as possible among schools.

3. We can *conduct ourselves well*⁴ on the streets and wherever we go, so that people will say that it is a good thing to put money into a school like ours.

4. We can study, so that the result of our life will be good and people will appreciate our school.

5. We can do our best to protect school property, so that the school will not waste any time or money or be hindered in its progress.

6. We can keep things clean and orderly, so that the school will not be put to expense and so that its appearance will always be pleasing to ourselves as well as to visitors.

7. We can observe the rules, and conduct ourselves properly, so that the teachers and officers can devote themselves to their work and not have to spend valuable time and energy in *discipline*⁵.

1 罷課。 2 商議。 3 仇視的學校。 4 舉止端正。 5 訓育。

的學校。中國有許多學校差不多被學生自己破壞的。罷課是一件危險事。它往往破壞學校的利益和信用，使爲學校服務的人灰心，使它難以獲得教師與職員，並且使良好學生他去。學生管理學校是不可能的，因爲在全體人數和思想上他們年年的變動太大了。現在當教育辛苦掙扎的時候，讓我們學生和教師一起商議，怎樣我們合作以謀學校之進步。讓我們是做沮喪或破壞學校諸事的——我們自己的或即使是敵視的學校——地球上最末一個人吧。

二十四 我們怎樣能幫助自己的學校

1. 我們在運動和體操上盡力，使我們的學校有良好的健康和體力。
2. 我們在一切公開運動上或別的機會上盡力，使我們的學校在各校間有很高的位置。
3. 我們在街上和我們所到的地方妥舉止端整，使人們說道，捐錢給像我們般的學校是好事情。
4. 我們要勤讀，那末我們一生的結果可以良好，而人們也重視我們的學校。
5. 我們要盡力保護校產，那末學校可以不消耗時間和金錢，或是在進步中受阻礙。
6. 我們要保持事物的清潔和秩序，那末學校可以不浪費，並且它的外觀可使我們自己和參觀者喜悅。
7. 我們要注意校規，舉動都按照它，那末教職員就可致力於他們的工作，不必費有價值的時間和精力於訓育上。

8. We can be cheerful and friendly, so that school life will run smoothly and all may be encouraged.

9. We can talk things over with our teachers and officers, frankly but sympathetically, so that all can work together in full understanding under the leadership of the school.

10. We can discuss these nine methods now, deciding upon a tenth and maybe many more.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. Who was Rousseau? What service did he render to humanity?
2. Describe a favorite outdoor game so that one who has never played it can understand it.
3. Write a few paragraphs on the value of recreation.
4. Tell why child labor is an evil.
5. Why should cities provide playgrounds for the children?
6. Tell of a few of the things that the United States has done or is doing for its children.
7. Explain how education builds bridges.
8. Discuss the value of compulsory education.
9. Do you know of any "White Cloud Village"? What do you suggest to improve conditions there?
10. Discuss the statement "The elementary schools are the hope of China's success as a nation."
11. Name a few of the patriotic services that educated women can render to the Chinese nation.
12. Can you think of any other ways besides those mentioned in the text in which you can serve your school?

8. 我們要愉快和親愛，那末學校生活可以順利地進行，而一切都可以積極推行。

9. 我們要和教職員坦白地但是同情地討論事情，那末大家可以在學校的領袖下充分了解地一起工作。

10. 我們現在要討論這九條，並且還有第十條可以從事或者更多。

問題和練習

1. 誰是羅騷？對於人類他有什麼貢獻？
2. 描寫一種可愛的戶外運動，使沒有玩過的人也能明白。
3. 以娛樂的價值為題，寫一篇短文。
4. 陳述童工為一種罪惡的理由。
5. 為什麼城市要準備兒童的遊戲場？
6. 陳述幾件美國為兒童所做的已成的與正在做的事情。
7. 說明教育如何能造橋？
8. 討論強迫教育的價值。
9. 像『白雲村』一樣的村莊，你知道嗎？對於改良那邊的狀況，你有什麼建議？
10. 討論：『中國成為國家，其希望在於初等小學。』
11. 舉幾樁受過教育的婦女能為中國效勞的愛國事業。
12. 除了課本上已提及的外，你能想出別種方法，服務你的學校嗎？

CHAPTER XVI

LIBERTY, LAW, AND ORDER

1. The Tenth of October¹

*Independence Day*² means Liberty Day. October 10 is the day on which we *celebrate*³ China's freedom from the rule of the *Manchus*⁴. When the word "liberty"⁵ is used in China it usually means freedom from the control of the Manchu *emperors*⁶ and *empresses*⁷. The Chinese people *threw off*⁸ that rule and became independent. They *gained the right to disobey the orders of the Manchus*. They cut off their *queer-looking queues*⁹, and stopped wearing the old official hats and gowns. They no longer paid respect to the yellow-dragon flag, and they refused to have Manchu officials appointed to rule in the capitals of the provinces. They decided, after long centuries of Manchu power, to found a republic ruled by themselves and based on the *consent of the governed*¹⁰. This was indeed a remarkable forward step in the history of the country.

These, however, are small matters after all. What change of importance was brought about by the establishment of the Republic? Was it only that a Chinese ruler was put up in place of a Manchu ruler? That might or might not be a great change, depending upon the characters of the rulers. The great change was that all over China there was established the idea that the people are not ruled over by anybody but themselves. They are free. They have won their liberty. The fight has been hard, and many sacrifices have been made. Recall what we have already read about the heroes of the Revolution.

1 十月十日。 2 獨立的日子。 3 慶祝。 4 滿洲人。 5 皇帝。 6 皇后。 7 推翻。 8 奇怪的辮子。 9 統治者的同意。

第十六章 自由，法律與秩序

一 十月十日

獨立的日子就是自由的日子。十月十日是我們從滿洲的統治下慶祝中國自由的這一天。當時中國應用『自由』兩字的意義就是脫離滿洲皇帝和皇后的管理。中國人民推翻那個帝制統治而成爲獨立。他們獲得反抗滿洲命令的權利。他們割去看起來很奇怪的辮子，停止穿戴古老的官帽和官袍。他們不再尊重黃龍旗，他們拒絕由省城裏的滿洲官吏來統治。在滿洲勢力之下，經過幾世紀後，決定根據被治者的同意從事建立一個由自己統治的民主國。這真是國史上顯著的進步。

可是，這些事情還是小的。由於民國的建立而帶來的重大改革是什麼呢？是否只是把中國統治者放在滿洲統治者的地位上麼？那或許是或許不是大改革，要倚仗着統治者的品格如何的。這個大改革却是在全中國建設了一個觀念，就是除了由人民自己統治以外不受任何人的統治。他們是自由的。他們已贏得他們的自由。這個奮鬥曾經甚爲艱苦，造成了許多的犧牲。記起我們所曾讀過的關於革命英雄們的事。

2. Every Citizen should value Liberty and use it Properly

Every Chinese must love the liberty that has been won for him.

To love liberty means to value it properly. You have learned that the foundation of the Republic of China is liberty. Therefore, if a citizen learns only one lesson well, it should be how to use the liberty that is given him.

Liberty is far more *precious*¹ than dollars. It is never given to little children, and to older ones only *bit by bit*² as they learn what it is. Boys and girls do not have full liberty until they are twenty-one; even then many of them cannot safely be trusted with it. The one who has to be watched to see that he studies, the one who cheats unless the teacher's eye is on him, the one who takes advantage of the teacher's absence to waste school materials or damage property, the one who gets permission to go to one place and then goes somewhere else,—these students have not yet learned to use liberty. If you want to test yourself to find out whether you can be trusted with liberty, see whether you need to be watched.

But earning the right to have liberty for yourself means something more than being honest. It means being able to use it properly. A four-year-old child must not have liberty to eat what it pleases. A child must learn a great deal before it knows enough to be trusted with freedom. Before you can spend all your time as you please, you must learn what kind of work and what kind of pleasures will be best for you. These cannot be learned in a few weeks.

Thoughtful men have declared that in order to judge a person you must know how he spends his *leisure*³; that is, his hours and days of liberty. The superintendent of a large shoe factory once said that he did not like holidays because the workmen made more bad mistakes the following day than at any other time. "I think it must be

1 珍貴的。 2 漸漸地。 3 閒暇。

二 每個公民該尊重自由和適當地運用它

每個中國人必得愛自由，那為他們贏得的自由。

愛自由的意思就是適當地尊重它。你已經知道中華民國的基礎就是自由。所以，如果一個公民只學得一種好教訓，它該是怎樣使用給予他的自由。

自由的珍貴遠過於金錢。決不能把它給與小孩，就是較長者，也要他們慢慢地懂得自由是什麼之後才給他們。男孩子和女孩子不到二十一歲不能有充分的自由；就是到了二十一歲有許多人還不能安全地把自由信託給他們。要人家監督他讀書的人，除非教師眼睛射牢就要懶散的人，乘教師不在的時候浪費學校的東西或損害校產的人，准許他到一處地方去却跑到別的地方去的人——這些學生還沒有學得如何使用自由呢。如果你願意試驗自己，找出你是否可以受自由的信託，只要看你是否要受監督好了。

但是為自己獲得享受自由權利的意義除了誠實之外還有更多的事呢。它的意義是有適當地使用它的能力。一個四歲的孩子必不能有隨意飲食的自由。一個孩子在知識足以受自由的信託之前必要多多學習。在你能隨意支配時間以前，你必得知道什麼種的工作和什麼種的娛樂對你最為有益。這些東西不能在幾個星期裏學習的。

有思慮的人曾宣稱過要去判斷一個人，就必定要知道他怎樣消磨他的空閒時間；那是他自由的鐘點和日子。一個大鞋廠裏的盤工員一次說道，他不歡喜放假，因為工人們在下一天要比任何別的時間多做不好的錯事。『我以為必定由於他們不知

because they don't know how to make the best use of their spare time. They come back tired instead of rested." Thousands of people have never learned how best to enjoy a holiday, or even a leisure hour. They did not begin to learn when they were young.

Many a business man can and does spend every day in the week doing exactly as he pleases. But what he pleases is to plan out carefully both his work and his pleasures. The persons who value liberty most are those who make the best use of it. These are your learning days. Remember that often the most important difference between a person who stays poor and one who becomes prosperous is that the one knows how to use his liberty (which is often called opportunity), and the other does not. Liberty does not mean letting chance use you—is means *doing away with*¹ chance.

3. What is Liberty?

So many people have a wrong idea of what liberty is that we must be sure that we have it clearly and correctly in mind. Some people think that liberty means only that we are not ruled over by anyone from the outside, that the official is a native. Many a little town has refused to have a good man *fill*² an office simply because he was not born in that town. That is not the real meaning of liberty. In some of the most modern and advanced cities in the West the people do not hesitate to send to some other city and employ a manager to come and control their city for them. They do not care where he was born if he gives them good service.

Some people think liberty means that the officers are elected, and that the people vote on every question; but, as we shall see in the next chapter, the most *despotic*³, unjust, and dangerous rulers are sometimes the result of that kind of government. Voting is not freedom, and freedom *may or may not*⁴ come through voting.

1 廢除。 2 充任。 3 專制的。 4 不一定。

道怎樣使用他們的閒暇。他們回來時是疲倦，而不是休養。』幾千個人民從不曾曉得怎樣是享受假日的最好方法，或甚至於空閒的鐘點也不知道。他們在年青的時候沒有開頭學習過呢。

許多商人能夠或是實行在一星期內十分隨意地消磨他的每一天。但是他所謂隨意者就是仔細地計劃他的工作和他的娛樂。頂尊重自由的人就是頂善於使用它的人。現在是你們求學的日子。常要記好，一個人貧窮和致富的最重要的分別就是一個知道怎樣使用他的自由（這件東西有時稱為機會），而別一個却不知道。自由的意思不是讓機會利用你——它的意思是廢除機會。

三 自由是什麼？

有這樣許多的人民對於什麼是自由有很錯誤的觀念，我們必要確知自己所抱的觀念是清楚而正確的。有些人民以為自由的意義只是我們不受外面的任何人的治理，官吏該是本地人。許多小鎮集拒絕一個很好的人充任本鎮的官吏，簡單地只因為他不是生於該地的。那不是自由的真正意義。西洋有幾個最最現代的與前進的城市，人民並不阻止委派別城市的人，或請一個幹事來為他們管理市政。如果他能為他們認真服務，他們也不管他誕生在那裏。

有些人以為自由的意義就是官吏民選，人民在每件事務上都要投票表決；但是我們看到下一章，最最專制的最最不公平的和最最危險的統治者有時就是這一種政府的結果。投票不就是自由，而自由也不一定經過投票。

Some people think that liberty means no control—that a free person is one who can do as he pleases, that he is not like a horse or an ox in being held back or pushed forward or turned this way or that. If liberty means license, the chance to do as you please, then there is no such thing as liberty in all the world. In a state of *anarchy*¹, with no laws, police, or government, you may come or go, work or *loaf*², steal or kill, but you have no real liberty. You are in constant fear that someone may stop you or rob you or even kill you. In a savage land where there are no rules of any kind, or on a lonely island where there is no one to oppose you, your liberties are almost all lost; you can do nothing worth while; your circle of freedom is useless because it is so small. On the other hand, one's opportunities are greatest in some place where government is strong and laws are many and officers are strict. Liberty, then, is not license. License is the opportunity to act regardless of other people; liberty is the opportunity to act in such a way as not to interfere with the opportunity of others. When license increases, liberty decreases. It is, then, very important that all people should understand and value liberty, but fight against license and the disregard of the rights of others as they would fight against a cruel invader.

4. How is Liberty Secured?

Liberty has two sides: a *negative side*³ and a *positive side*⁴. In a certain town there was no protection of liberty. A man one day took a bag of coins from his home and started for a bank. He was stopped by a group of men who took his money away from him. He went on to the bank. There he was told that even if he brought money it could not be invested for him, because business was too uncertain. That man had neither the liberty to keep his money nor the chance to use it. He lacked both protection and opportunity. He might have bought a *gun*⁵ and thus protected himself, but that would not have made it possible for him to carry on business or enjoy the

1 混亂。 2 游蕩。 3 消極方面。 4 積極方面。 5 槍。

有幾個人以爲自由的意義是沒有管理——就是說一個自由人可以任所欲爲，那末他才不像一只馬或是一只牛般的可以牽後，拚前，轉到這條路又是那條路。如果自由的意義是放縱，任你的機會去隨意做些什麼，那末全世界早沒有自由這樣東西了。一個混亂的國家，沒有法律，警察，或政府，你可來可去，工作或游蕩，盜竊與殺人，但是你沒有真正的自由。你在永久的恐怖中，也許有人來阻攔你，劫掠你，或甚至殺死你。在野蠻的國土裏那裏是沒有任何的規則的，或是在孤寂的島上，那裏沒有人來反對你的，可是你的自由却差不多完全喪失了，當時你不能做有價值的事；你的自由的範圍是無用的，因爲它太小了。相反的方面，在政府強固，法規很多，官吏嚴格的地方，一個人的機會（自由）就是最大的了。於是自由不是放縱。放縱就是舉動不顧別人的機會；自由是以不妨礙別人機會的方法而行動的機會。放縱增加，自由就減少。所以這是很重要的，一切人民該了解和尊重自由，可要和放縱及不顧別人權利的行動作戰，好像和殘暴的侵略者作戰一樣。

四 怎樣能保衛自由？

自由有兩方面：一個是消極的方面，一個是積極的方面。在某一個鎮集裏那裏沒有自由的保障。有一天一個人拿了一袋錢從家裏向銀行出發。他被一羣人攔住，他們拿了他的錢去了。他仍跑到銀行去。那兒有人告訴他就是他帶錢來也不能爲他投資，因爲商業太不穩定了。那個人既沒有保守他的金錢的自由，又沒有使用它的機會。在保障和機會上，兩方面他都缺乏。他可以買一枝槍來保護自己，但是在他繼續做生意時這是不可能的，並且也不能使他享受社會與財產應該供給他的機

opportunities that his community and his wealth ought to have furnished.

How is this double liberty to be secured?

In a certain city there was a *vacant lot*¹ just the right size for small boys to play football on. All the small boys in the neighborhood were at liberty to play there every afternoon. Some boys would begin to *kick*² a ball back and forth east and west on the lot. Other boys would come in with a ball and begin to play north and south. Then there would be *confusion*³ and argument and waste of time. Sometimes there would be a fight, and all playing would have to stop. Stones were thrown from one part of the field to another, and the field became *rough*⁴ and dangerous. Parents began to refuse to let their sons go there to play. Gradually the use of the field was lost to all except a few big rough boys, and they could get up only a very poor game. Finally one day a young man called together some of these boys and said, "Why not let some boys play on the field one day and the others the next?" One fellow answered, "Because we all have the liberty to use it every day, and, besides, suppose it rains on my day." Then the man answered: "No, it is very clear that you have lost the liberty to play on it, for you never have a good game. You not only lose the field when it rains but also when it does not rain. *Furthermore*⁵, even when you play you cannot get up a really good game." The boys agreed that this was correct and asked, "But how can you help it?" The answer was: "Three things are necessary. We must form teams with *captains*⁶; we must make rules about when each team is to play; and we must coöperate, as a group of all the boys in this community, to keep the rules and to clear off all the stones and put up *goal posts*⁷." Needless to say, this was all quickly done, and the liberty to use the field was enjoyed to the full. Notice that three things—organization, *restrictions*⁸, and coöperation—were necessary to secure real liberty, and that each of them was first a sacrifice of some liberty. By sacrificing small liberties, these boys

1 空地. 2 踢. 3 糾紛. 4 不平. 5 進一步講. 6 隊長. 7 球門. 8 約束.

會。

怎樣才能保衛這雙重自由呢？

在某城市裏有一塊空地，其體積恰夠小孩子在上面玩足球。所有鄰近的小孩在每個下午都可自由去玩，有幾個孩子鬧頭。在場上把球踢前踢後，向東向西。還有別的孩子也進來把球踢向南，踢向北。那末就有糾紛和辯論，並且浪費了時間。有時會引起作戰，於是一切遊戲就此停止。石子從場的這一面丟到那一邊，這個場也就不平均和危險了。父母起始不准兒童到那裏去遊戲。逐漸這塊場地的用途已消失了，除了幾個既大又野蠻的孩子在那裏做些卑劣的遊戲以外。終於有一天一個青年召集這幾個孩子，說道『爲什麼不讓幾個孩子這一天在場上玩，另外的幾個在下一天玩呢？』一個傢伙回答，『因爲我們大家有每天使用這塊地的自由，並且除此以外，也許在輪到我一天下雨呢。』於是這個青年說道：『不是的，這是很清楚你已失掉在場上玩的自由了，因爲你永不會有一個良好的遊戲。你不但在下雨時失掉了這塊地，就是不下雨也失掉了。進一步講，即使你是在那兒玩，你也不能達到真正的良好遊戲。』這個孩子承認這句話是對的，就問道，『但是你怎樣能幫助它呢？』這個人的回答是：『三件事情是必需的。我們必要成立有隊長的球隊；我們必要制定每隊玩時的規則；我們必定要合作，正如社會上所有孩子中的一羣，要遵守規則，掃除石子，豎立球門。』不用說，這些事都很快地做成了，於是應用場地的自由才能充分享受。注意這三件事情——組織，約束，合作——是保衛真正自由所必需的，而這幾件事在最先都要犧牲一點自由的。犧牲小自由，於是這些孩子們才能保衛大自由。

were able to secure a great liberty. If this is the secret of securing liberty, let us look into it more fully.

5. Organization

An organization is a group of people having certain *aims*¹ and certain rules. It may be an organization of boys to buy a boat, or of robbers to steal the boat, or of police to catch the robbers, or of citizens to pay and encourage the police. It may be an organization of girls to learn more English, or of teachers to help them, or of a school to help both, or of citizens to support the school. It may be good or bad, large or small, wise or foolish, old or new, for business or against business, but it is working together for certain purposes which can be attained better by group effort than by working *separately*².

You may say that this is true of a man's body or of an engine, both of which are made up of parts working together for certain purposes. Certainly it is the way of the world. The same principle of organization is in everything that grows and everything that men develop. You may say that civilization is the increasing and developing of more and more *effective*³ organizations.

Strange to say, the more the world of men and things is organized, provided that the organizations are wise and efficient, the more liberty has the individual. Science has discovered wonderful things; but organizations have spread that science, have published the facts about it, have made it useful, have brought it to the people, and have taught the people the best ways to enjoy it and have protected them in its use. Just think how many things we can do today that our grandfathers could not do. We can talk to people at a distance; we can send a message across the ocean in a few minutes; we can read about what happened all over the world only yesterday; we can ride at a mile a minute; we can go from one end of the country to the other in a few days; we can fly through the air and go under the sea; we can send money

1 目的。 2 分離地。 3 有效的。

如果這是保衛自由的祕密，讓我們更充分地注意它。

五 組織

所謂組織就是一羣有某種目的和某種規則的人民。它也許是孩子們買船的組織，也許是盜賊竊船的組織，或是巡警捕盜的組織，或是公民獎賞與鼓勵巡警的組織。它也許是女孩們要多讀一點英文的組織，或是教師幫助她們的組織，或是學校兩方面都予幫助的組織，也許是公民扶助學校的組織。它也許是有益的，或是有害的，大的或小的，聰明的或是愚蠢的，陳舊的或是新穎的。爲了商業的，或是反對商業的。但總是爲了某種目的而共同工作，而這個目的之達到一羣人的工作較勝於各個分開工作。

你可說組織關於人體和機械是同樣地真實的。這兩種組織都是爲了某種目的，由各部分的共同工作而成立的。確然，就是世界的組織也是這樣。各種東西的生長和人所發展的各種東西都可同樣應用這組織原理。你可說文化就是愈弄愈多的有效率組織的增加和發展。

說也奇怪，人和事物所組成的世界愈多，假使這些組織是聰明與有效的，個人的自由也愈大。科學曾發明奇怪的東西；但是組織却傳佈科學，把科學的事實刊行出來，使它成爲有用，把它帶給人民，並且把最好的方法教導人民享受它和保障人民的應用。想想看有多少東西我們今日能做的，而我們的祖父便不能。我們能夠和遠距離的人們談話；我們能夠在幾分鐘內把消息送到外洋去；我們能夠閱讀昨天全世界發生了什麼事情；我們能坐車每一分鐘走一哩我們能夠在幾天之內從世界的這一端到那一端；我們能夠飛行空中，潛行海底；我們能夠由電報上送錢；我們能夠只費幾分錢便可寫一封信送到世界的另一

by telegraph; we can write a letter and send it to the other side of the world for a few cents. There is no end of wonderful things we can do, and organizations have made these possibilities ours.

6. Why are Rules Necessary?

On the bank of the famous West Lake in Hangchow there used to be an old, beautiful pagoda. It was called the "Thunder Hill Pagoda"¹. It had an unusual form and an impressive appearance. People generally regarded it as one of the beautiful *sights*² in that region. It was so old that its bricks were somewhat *loosened*³. Tourists who went to see it often carried away small pieces of brick from the bottom of the pagoda as *souvenirs*⁴. Recently the pagoda lost so much of its support that it fell to the ground. Future tourists can never see the "Thunder Hill Pagoda" again. Probably each tourist thought that it did not matter to take away a tiny piece of brick. If there had been a rule against this from the beginning and somebody to enforce it, the pagoda would have lasted much longer.

When a person enters a modern museum he usually sees a large sign, "All Umbrellas and *Canes*⁵ must be Checked." Here you are not left to obey the rule or not, as you please,—a *man in uniform*⁶ stands at each door to prevent you from disobeying it. You can easily understand why the library authorities would not want wet umbrellas carried about, but what harm could a dry umbrella or a cane do? The fact is, museums and *art galleries*⁷ have learned that things are so often injured by people who point at and touch things with canes and umbrellas that these dangerous articles must now be left outside. Most rules have a *common-sense*⁸ reason back of them even if we do not at first see it. Rules are not made to hinder people but to help.

The people who took bricks away from the pagoda and the men and women with umbrellas and canes were not

1 雷翠塔。 2 風景。 3 鬆動。 4 紀念品。 5 手杖。 6 穿制服的人。 7 美術館。 8 常識。

邊。我們所能做的奇事沒有完畢之日，而組織使這些可能的東西都成爲我們所有。

六 爲什麼需要規則？

在杭州著名的西湖岸上，那裏以前有一座古舊而美麗的塔。喚做『雷峯塔』。它有一個不平凡的形式，和一個使人感到印象的外貌。人民大都把它視爲該地美景之一。它是這樣地古老，它的磚塊已鬆動了。旅行的人去看它的往往在塔底下抽出一小片的磚塊作紀念品。最近這座塔失掉了這樣多的支持物，就倒在地上了。未來的旅行者永不會再見這個雷峯塔了。顯然每個旅行者以爲拿掉一小片的磚塊必無妨礙的。如果有一種規則在起頭就不准如此，又有幾個人來強迫實施，這座塔就可以存在得較久了。

當一個人走進一所現代的博物館他通常總看見一個巨大的標識：『傘與手杖禁止攜入。』在這裏不讓你隨意遵守或不遵守這條規則。——一個穿制服的人站在每一個門口，以防止你的不遵守。你可以很容易地了解爲什麼館中當局不願意濕的傘帶進來，但是一把乾的傘和手杖能做什麼有害之事呢？這個事實是博物館和美術館已曉得有些東西往往因人民用手杖或傘來指點或觸碰而被損壞，所以這些危險的東西現在必定要留在外面了。大多數的規則其背後都有常識上的理由的，雖然我們在最先不能明白。規則不是做來阻礙人民而是幫助人民的。

從塔上拿掉磚塊的人們和帶着傘和手杖的男子不是愚昧。

ignorant They were careless and thoughtless. But carelessness and thoughtlessness will often do as much harm as ignorance or *maliciousness*¹. A *poke*² from the umbrella of a thoughtless person will spoil a painting as quickly as a poke made by someone evil enough to want to injure it. Whether a boy drops a valuable vase through carelessness or because he wants to destroy it, the result is the same. A person who is thoughtless enough to throw a *lighted match*³ near a gasoline tank is as sure to cause an *explosion*⁴ as the person who intentionally does so. Because there are so many careless, thoughtless people, we have to have a great many rules.

7. Rules prevent Trouble

You would be astonished to discover how many rules every town and city has. We usually call them laws, but "law" is only another name for rule. Many Western cities have rules connected with certain kinds of sicknesses. If a pupil has *scarlet fever*⁵ or diphtheria, or any other contagious disease, he must stay at home and see no one but the nurse and doctor until he is perfectly well again. Even if neither the boy nor his parents understand the reason for the rule, it is for the good of all their friends and neighbors that they obey it.

At one time in a crowded *suburb*⁶ of a city several children were ill with diphtheria. The doctors had red warning signs *tacked*⁷ on the doors of these houses. They also warned the families that neither the sick children nor anyone who had been *exposed*⁸ to the disease should leave their homes until further *notice*⁹. But the relatives of the sick children went to work and to school as usual. When the townspeople learned this, policemen were sent to guard the houses and to enforce the rule. If this had not been done, the disease might have spread to hundreds of people. As in this case, it is often necessary to compel people to obey rules.

1 懷惡意。 2 碰。 3 燒着的火柴。 4 爆炸。 5 猩紅熱。 6 郊外。 7 釘。 8 遭受。 9 通知。

他們僅是不小心和少考慮罷了。但是不小心和少考慮常常造成很多的害處，和愚昧及惡意破壞一樣。一個少考慮的人把傘來一觸會損壞一張畫，其速與心懷惡意特意損害它的人的一觸一樣。一個孩子擲碎一個有價值的花瓶，不管由於他的不小心，或是因為他有心破壞它，其結果總是一樣的。一個少考慮的人把一根燒着的火柴丟在汽油桶旁邊，其引起爆炸當然和有意這樣做的人一樣。因為有這末多的不小心與少考慮的人民，所以我們該有很多的規則。

七 規則防止擾累

你發見每個鎮集和城市有這末多的規則也許會驚愕的。我們通常稱之為法律，但是法律也只是規則的另一名詞。許多西洋城市有關於某種疾病的規則。如果一個學生患猩紅熱或白喉，或別的傳染病，他定要住在家裏除了看護和醫生以外不見一個人，直到他痊癒之後。就是也許這個孩子或他的父母不明瞭這條規則的理由，這是為他們所有的朋友鄰里的安全，如果他們遵守這條規則。

在某個時期一個城市的熱鬧郊外有幾個孩子患着白喉。醫生在他們的房屋上釘着紅色的警告牌。他們還警告這些家庭這個患病孩子和接近這病的任何人在下次通知以前不得離開家庭。但是這個病孩子的親屬和通常一樣地出去工作和上學。當鎮民曉得了的時候，就派警察去守這所房屋強迫遵守規則。如果不這樣做，這種疾病就要傳佈到數百人之多。照這種情形看來，是常需強迫人民服從規則的。

There are several other words that might be used instead of "rules" or "laws." One of these is "helps." Most rules are intended merely as helps. In one school this rule is written on the blackboard of each room:

When Entering or Leaving the School, Pupils must move in *Single File*¹. There must be No

Crowding or Pushing on the *Stairs*².

The only reason for this rule is to help the pupils. It was found that when they did not go in single file, they could not go quickly. Before this rule was made, the younger children were often tripped by the older pupils, who crowded past them in a hurry to get to their seats first.

In China there is a very helpful rule: that all persons and vehicles should keep to the left of those they meet and to the right of those they overtake and pass. If there were not such a rule, thousands of persons would be accidentally killed every year. *As it is*³, accidents occur⁴. But suppose that there were no such rule. On a narrow road or crowded street if two automobiles were hurrying in opposite directions, neither could tell which way the other would turn. They would have to slow down and signal to each other. Even then one might misunderstand the signal. It is a great time-saving and accident-saving help to have as a rule of the road, "Keep to the left." It is the same in England, but in the United States the law is "keep to the right." It does not matter which way it is so long as there is a definite rule followed throughout the country.

8. Homes have Rules

In most homes you will not see printed rules tacked on doors or walls, but nevertheless rules are observed there. When each person gets up in the morning he washes and dresses himself so that the meeting at breakfast may be pleasant for all—this is a rule. Breakfast, lunch, and supper all come at certain times—more rules. At the table each person waits until all are present—another

1 單行。 2 樓梯。 3 雖是如此。 4 發生。

還有幾個別的字可以用來代替『規則』或『法律』的，一個是『幫助。』大多數的規則其意向僅在於扶助。在一所學校裏。每間教室裏都在黑板上寫着規則：

上學散課，學生應單行行動。在樓梯上不得擁擠或推搡。

這條規則的唯一理由是幫助學生。如果他們不列單行，就看出他們不能很快地走。在這條規則制定之前較幼的孩子常常被年長的絆倒，因為他們匆促地擠着過去要先去搶着位子。

在中國有很能有助的規則：例如所有行人車馬如兩者相遇須靠左走，如同方向而超過或經過另一行人車馬則須靠右走。如果沒有這樣的規則，就會有幾千個人每年意外地被殺。雖則是如此，意外仍是難免。但是如果沒有這種規則呢。在一條狹窄，或擁擠的街道上，如果二輛汽車朝相對的方向匆忙開駛，彼此都不曉得別一輛車轉到那條路上去。他們必須慢下來，彼此打招呼。就是這樣也許仍有一個誤會了這個招呼。這可以幫助大大的節省時間和減少意外。如果路上有這一條的規則，『靠左邊走。』在英國也是一樣的，但是在美國，這條法律是『靠右邊走。』不管它是靠那一邊，如果成爲定律而全國通行的話。

八 家庭要有規則

大多數的家庭裏你不會看見有印刷的規則釘在門上或牆上，但是不管怎樣在那裏觀察起來也有規則的。當一個人早上起身的時候，他要洗臉穿衣，那末早餐的會食可以人人愉快——這是一條規則。早餐，午飯，夜飯要在一定的時間開出來——又是一條規則。在桌上每人要等着大家到齊——另一條規則。

rule. All these rules are useful to every member of the family. Suppose that the fifteen-year-old member of this family wanted his supper at five o'clock instead of at six. Either he would have a poor supper or those who ate at six o'clock would have an unsatisfactory meal. Vegetables that are just right at five o'clock cannot be just right at six o'clock. Meat that is being cooked for a six-o'clock supper will not be ready to serve at five o'clock. A home that fails to live by good rules faithfully kept is losing a great deal. A home that is well regulated is one where life is pleasantest.

Although many people do not know it, everybody likes the help of rules. Even men who live alone make rules for themselves. A student who was tramping for his health lost his way and wandered about for days in a large mountain forest. He finally came upon a hut in which lived an old man. For three years this man had not seen a *human being*¹. His nearest neighbor, he said, was forty miles away. There were no people and no rules or laws to limit his liberty. But, strange to say, on the wall was a piece of paper on which the hermit had carefully written, in a clear hand, the following sentences:

1. Read one good poem every day.
2. Improve my *cabin*² a little every day.
3. See one beautiful sight each day.
4. Be sure to take a bath every day.
5. Eat only at meal times twice a day.
6. Do a little mending every day.

When the young man spoke about these rules, the hermit replied: "I found the rules of towns *irksome*³. I wanted to be free, so I came up here. It seemed like heaven at first. But I soon found that I neglected to clean my cabin. *Holes*⁴ came in the roof. I worked a little when I felt *in the mood*⁵, but some of my dishes were always dirty.⁶ My clothes were always *frayed*⁶ somewhere. I even neglected to bathe every day. After a time I came to my senses and realized that unless I wanted to become a mere animal I must make *rigid*⁷ rules for myself and live by them. Now I get up at sunrise, no matter what

1 人類。 2 茅屋。 3 可厭的。 4 漏。 5 高興。 6 破裂。 7 嚴格的。

所有的規則對於家庭裏各個人員都有用的。如果家裏的十五歲那一個要在五點鐘吃夜飯，不等到六點鐘，那末不是他的夜飯餸壞，就是在六點鐘吃飯的人菜着不夠了。在五點鐘正好吃的菜蔬，在六點鐘就不好吃了。煮來預備六點鐘夜飯的肉，在五點鐘是不能煮熟的。一個家庭不能以忠實遵守規則為生活，就將損失許許多多。一個整飭的家庭就是生活愉快的家庭。

雖然有許多人民不知道規則，可是每個人都歡喜規則的幫助，就是單獨生活着的人也要為自己定規則。一個學生因為要強健身體而去徒步旅行，他迷了路在一座大山林裏遊蕩了幾天。他最後到了一所茅屋裏，裏面住一個老人。這個人已三年不見人類了。他的最近的鄰居，他說在四十英里之外。那裏是沒有人民，沒有規則和法律來阻止他的自由。但是說也奇怪，在牆上有一張紙，上面是這位隱士小心地用清楚的筆跡寫着如下的句子：

1. 天天讀一首好詩。
2. 天天把我的茅屋加以些微的改進。
3. 每日看一次美麗的風景。
4. 天天確要洗澡。
5. 每天只於餐時進食兩次。
6. 天天做一點修補之事。

當這個青年說到這些規則的時候，這個隱士回答：『我覺得城裏的規則討厭。我要自由，所以我到這兒來了。起先我看來好像天堂。但是我立即找到我忘掉清潔我的茅屋了。屋頂穿了洞。當我覺得高興工作的時候，就稍微做一點工作，但是我的碗盆總有幾只常是污穢的。我的衣服常常在有些地方破裂了。甚至每天忘掉洗澡。過了一時我覺悟了，明白除非我願意只成爲一只動物，我必得為自己制定嚴格的規則，並依之爲生活。現在我在日出時起身，不管氣候怎樣？我用溫水和肥皂

the weather. I wash every board in these two rooms with warm water and soap each day, and also do some simple thing that will make the cabin stronger and more *home-like*¹. No city house has more convenient little devices than this now has. Some of the rules I change each week. Last week my first rule was: 'Read a good story every day.' Soon I shall add a seventh rule: 'Cut a little *fire-wood*² every day,' for I must begin on my winter's supply."

9. Another Name for Rules is "Regulations"

Still another name for rules is "regulations." All factories, stores, railroads, and offices have to have regulations. At one of the largest shoe factories in a Western country the great gate is shut and locked exactly at 7.30 every morning. No employee who is outside the gate at 7.30 can enter at all that morning. And, of course, he loses a half-day's pay. This seems a harsh rule, but the managers found that without it sometimes a third of the machines would be idle for the first half hour. This meant that about one thousand *fewer*³ shoes would be made than when all the employees began work promptly at 7.30. The factory-owners have to know exactly how many thousand pairs of shoes they can *turn out*⁴ in a day. Otherwise they cannot keep their promises to the dealers. And broken promises will spoil any business. It is therefore for the good of the factory that every worker be at his machine *on time*⁵. It is also to the advantage of the worker, for each additional hour of work means money in his *pay envelope*⁶.

No business house can long prosper without regulations of the right kind. Suppose the only rule of an office is that all employees must work eight hours a day. Nothing is said about when they shall begin work. Perhaps one *stenographer*⁷ likes to lie abed mornings, and does not appear at the office until ten o'clock, while the man whose letters she writes gets in at eight. The telephone girl may prefer not to work mornings at all, but is perfectly will-

1 安適的。 2 薪。 3 較少的。 4 製出。 5 準時地。 6 工資袋。 7 速計員。

天天洗濯這兩間屋子裏的木板，並還做一些使茅屋更堅固，更安適的簡單事情。再沒有城裏的屋子能比這座茅屋現在所有的小佈置更為安適了。有幾條規則我每星期換過。上星期我的第一條規則是：「天天讀一篇好故事。」不久我將加上第七條規則：「天天斫下一點木柴，」因為我必要開始準備我的冬季供給了。」

九 規則的另一個名字叫『章程』

規則還有一個名字叫『章程。』所有工廠，店舖，鐵路，和各行家必要有章程。西洋國家中有一家最大的鞋廠，它的大門天天在早上準七時三十分關閉與上鎖。七時三十分還在門外的工人沒有一個能在整個的上午中進來。那末當然他損失了半天的工資。這條規則看來太嚴厲了，但是這位經理知道如果沒有這一條規則，有時在開頭的半個鐘點裏有三分之一的機器攔着沒人做工。這就是要減少上千雙鞋子的製造，如果和一切工人準時上工的成績來比較。這個廠主已準確地知道他們每天能做出幾千雙鞋子。除了這個方法以外他們不能遵守與商人所訂的合同了。而破壞合同可以破壞任何一種商業的。所以爲了工廠的利益每個工人該要準時上工。這也是有利於工人的，因爲每個增加的工作時間就是他的工資袋裏的金錢。

沒有一家商店能夠發財，如果沒有正當的章程。如果有一家辦事處，它的唯一規則是一切雇員每日必須做八小時的工作。何時開始工作沒有說起。也許一個速記員歡喜早晨躺在床上，不到十時不會在辦公室裏出現，同時要她寫信的人却八點鐘就到了。管電話的女孩子也許寧可整個早上不做事，却願意

ing to stay at the office from noon until eight in the evening. But everybody else leaves at five, so for three hours this girl has nothing to do. Such an office would be *topsy-turvy*¹.

To prevent such an unpleasant *situation*² all offices have certain rules, or regulations, which employees must observe. Schools also have similar regulations. If pupils could come to school at any time of day, there would be hopeless confusion, and waste of time and money. Perhaps the arithmetic class *recites*³ at ten o'clock every morning. If some pupils should not come to school until eleven, either they would miss the arithmetic altogether or the lesson would have to be repeated for them. Anyone can readily see that school must begin for all pupils at the same time and that classes must come at specified hours. Not to have regulations would be foolish.

Railroad *time-tables*⁴ are merely sets of regulations. If, for *instance*⁵, you wish to go from Shanghai to Nanking, you must take one of the trains that are indicated on the time-table. You can go only at the *stated times*⁶, not when you please. Neither can the engineers and conductors start their trains when they please. The railroad managers have drawn up a set of rules for engineers and other trainmen and for passengers. The figures of the time-tables are merely a shortened form of these rules. Hopeless confusion and hundreds of accidents would result without such rules, or regulations.

10. No Person is above the Law

Everybody believes in the "*square deal*." That is, there must not be a rule for one person and not for another. If we prevent one person from spitting on the street or in public places, we must prevent all persons from doing it. There is no person who is above the law. The highest official, just like the humblest person, must obey all the laws. In the army and navy, no matter how rich or famous his father may be, every boy must

1 糟糕的。 2 局面。 3 演算。 4 時間表。 5 例如。 6 限定的時間。 7 公平交易。

留在辦公室裏從上午直到晚上八時。可是別人都在五點鐘離去的，那末就有三小時之久這個女孩子無事可做了。這樣一個辦事處是要糟糕的。

爲防止這樣個不愉快的局面，所有辦事處都有一定的規則，或章程，每個雇員都要注意的。學校也有類似的章程。如果學生能夠在日間隨時上學，那必致於無希望的糾紛，並且浪費時間和金錢。假使算術課定在每天早上十時演算，如果有幾個學生不到十一時不到校的，那末不是他缺課，便是這課功課須爲他們而覆教。任何人能夠容易地明白全體學生應該同時開始上課，而功課也必要在一定的時間上。不要章程，便成愚蠢。

鐵路時間表也只是一串的章程而已。例如你要從上海到南京去，你必定要乘表上所列的一班車。你只能在限定的時間上去，不能隨你的意。就是機師和查票也不能隨意開車。鐵路管理者爲機師和別的車務員，爲乘客們訂定一串的規則。時間表的數字只是這些規則的縮短。如果沒有這種規則或章程，其結果就是無希望的糾紛和幾百件的意外危險。

十 沒有人超於法律之上

人人相信「公平交易。」那就是說沒有一條規則是專爲一個人而與另一個無涉的。如果我們防止一個人在街上或公共地方吐痰，我們也必得防止所有的人做這件事。沒有人能超於法律之上。最高長官，也只像最卑下的人一樣，定要服從一切的法律。在陸軍和海軍裏面不管他的父親怎樣的豪富和有名，每

obey the rules. In the World War the sons of kings and presidents and *millionaires*¹ fought side by side with poor boys and obeyed the same rules.

One day a military officer was traveling with his wife on a train from Shanghai to Hangchow—a railroad owned by the central government. He did not buy any tickets because for many years some *corrupt*² officials and military officers had been able to get “free rides”³ simply by *ignoring*⁴ the conductor. The railroad management was too weak to enforce its rules. But recently the National Government, in its effort to “clean up”⁵ the government, made it known that it would not allow this sort of thing. The conductor demanded that this officer produce two tickets or buy them, but he *stubbornly*⁶ refused to do so. The conductor reasoned with him for a long time, finally *threatening*⁷ to arrest him. The passengers on the train *backed up*⁸ the conductor, and trouble ended when the officer paid for two tickets and also a small fine for not buying them until after he got on the train. Rules and laws that are intended for everybody must be obeyed by all. Public opinion should be on the side of enforcing on all people alike.

11. Respect for Laws

We have said all this about rules and regulations because it is important that citizens respect both the laws and the government that enforces them. It is a dangerous thing for a boy at school to get into the bad habit of talking disrespectfully about the rules and the school officers. Such an attitude frequently leads to disrespect of the laws and authority of one's locality or country and finally to crime and prison. The law of the land must be respected and *upheld*⁹.

Suppose there is a law that goods or other obstructions may not be placed on the *sidewalks*¹⁰ or in the streets, and then suppose some man puts things out for sale on the street. Perhaps he shows a double disrespect for the

1 大富豪。 2 腐敗的。 3 免費。 4 不睬。 5 整頓。 6 頑固地。 7 威脅。 8 作後盾。 9 擁護。 10 人行道。

個兵士必定要服從規則。在世界大戰時，國王，大總統和大富豪的兒子和窮苦的兒郎們肩並肩的作戰和服從同樣的規則。

有一天一個軍官和他的太太坐上海到杭州的車去旅行，一一條中央政府所有的鐵道。他一張票也不買，因為好多年來一些腐敗的官吏和軍官都能夠得到免票，簡單地就用不睬查票的方法。這種鐵路管理太軟弱了，不能強迫施行它的規則。但是最近國民政府致力於整飭政府，宣告不准再有此類情事。這個查票員要求這個軍官拿出兩張票來，或是買兩張，但是他頑固地拒絕照辦。這個查票員花掉很長的時間理喻他，結果以逮捕為恐嚇。車上的乘客們都做查票員的後盾，這場糾紛是軍官付了兩張車票的錢和少許的補票罰款而了結。規則和法律其意向在於人人必須服從。輿論必須扶助法律的實施，使人人遵行。

十一 尊重法律

我們已曾說過關於規則和章程的一切了，因為公民尊重法律和實施法律的政府兩者都是要緊的。學校裏的孩子變得一種不敬地談論規則和職員們的惡習慣是一件危險的事情。這種態度常常馴至於不尊敬法律和地方或國家的當局，而最後犯罪，至於入獄。國家的法律必定要尊重和擁護。

假使有一條法律說貨物或別種障礙物不得置於街上的人行道上，假使其時却有一個人把東西放出來在街上售賣。假使他把一點東西給與巡警使他「友好。」這表示他對於法律的變重

laws by giving the policeman something to make him "friendly." This soon causes other people to do the same thing. A *blow*¹ has been struck at the law, and it is beginning to weaken. It now becomes harder and harder to secure obedience to that law. Soon that street is crowded and inconvenient. People prefer to go another way. Business is injured. There is loss to all because the law has broken down. And this has happened because respect for it was once weakened by a selfish and unpatriotic citizen, and perhaps by a corrupt policeman.

When that man first put the least bit of an obstruction on the street, the policeman should have told him to take it in. He should have said: "No matter how small an obstruction it is or how much it helps you, you must take it away. The important thing is the law. The fact that it is of advantage to you and of but *slight*² trouble to the passers-by is not the question to discuss. The question is respect for the law. If you break the law, others will break it also. If one law is disregarded, other laws will be. It is my business to see that laws are respected."

If a law is not a good one, the citizens should start a movement to have it changed; but as long as it remains, it should be respected. Laws should be published in a code or *catalogue*³, so that they may be known and studied and improved. It is the duty of citizens to know the laws of their country. There is an old rule: Ignorance of the law *excuses*⁴ no one. A guilty person is not excused because he did not know the law. He ought to have known it. How can citizens obey the laws and teach others to obey if they do not know them? They must know them, and they must hold them in high respect.

12. The Enforcement of Law

If honest people know and respect the laws and urge their neighbors to do the same, it is not difficult for the government to enforce them. It has then to deal chiefly with a few *lawbreakers*⁵ who can in time be caught and

1 打擊。 2 輕微的。 3 條目。 4 寬恕。 5 破壞法律者。

不敬。足以引起別人做同樣的事情。這是一種對於法律的打擾，而法律就會軟化。在那時法律就慢慢地難以使人民服從了。不久那條街擁擠而不舒服。人民寧可走別條路。商業是受損了。一切的損失都是爲了法律的破壞。而這件事的發生就是因爲尊重法律的觀念給一個自私的和不愛國的公民和一個腐敗的巡警所削弱。

當這個人第一次把最少數的障礙物放在街上時，這個巡警就該告訴他叫他拿進去。他該這樣說：『不管這件障礙物是怎樣的小，或是它能幫助你的是怎樣的大，你必得把它拿開。要緊的是法律。對你有利，對於過客只有輕微的困難的事實不是所要討論的問題。問題是在尊重法律。如果你破壞這條法律，別人也將破壞他。如果一條法律受了藐視，別的法律也將如此。監視人家尊重法律是我的職務。』

如果一條法律不好，公民們該發起一個運動以換掉它；可是在它存在的期間，還該加以尊重。法律該印在法典上或條目上，那末人家可以明瞭，研究與改進它們。明瞭本國的法律是公民的責任。有一條老規則說：不懂法律之人無一能被寬恕。一個犯罪的人並不因爲他不明瞭法律而受寬恕。他該知道法律的。如果公民不明瞭法律怎樣能夠服從它和教人家服從呢？他們必定要明瞭法律和尊重法律。

十二 法律的實施。

如果誠實的人民瞭解和尊重法律並且勸導他們的鄰里照樣地做，那末政府實施它們是不困難的。所以最主要的是和少許破壞法律的人打交道，有時把他們捉來關到監獄裏去，在那裏

put into prison, where they cannot continue to interfere with the rights of the people. If there is no general respect for the laws, it becomes impossible to enforce even the best and most important ones. The officers very soon say: "Why should we work so hard to enforce laws if nobody wants them enforced? We prefer to sit back and wait till something important happens." The enforcement of the law comes back to that respect for law which the citizens must have. When the citizens insist that the laws must be obeyed and that lawbreakers must be *punished*¹, when they themselves keep every law and insist that every law should be kept, then the government is pretty sure to enforce the laws.

People themselves must inform against lawbreakers. They must come to court and *testify*² honestly and boldly. This sort of *bravery*³ and patriotism is as good as that of the hero in battle. People themselves should resist robbers, fight them, catch them. When it is very easy to rob, many people are *tempted*⁴ to be robbers, but robbers are slow to attack a brave man or woman. We must help the authorities to enforce all the laws in every way we can.

It is sometimes easy to make laws, but of what use are they if not enforced? Policemen represent the enforcement of laws, although they have no authority whatever except to take to the *police station*⁵ one caught breaking a law, or to report anyone *suspected*⁶. Policemen must be carefully chosen and must be paid enough to make their position a respected one. It is more important still to honor the *magistrates*⁷ and police officers and properly to support them. All honest citizens should treat them as among the best friends the people have.

13. Justice for Every Person

Many a decision has gone to the one who gave the largest *bribe*⁸. Many a criminal has gone free because he had a friend close to the judge, and many an innocent

1 懲罰。 2 作證。 3 勇敢。 4 被誘。 5 警察局。 6 嫌疑。 7 審判官。 8 賄賂。

他們不能繼續干涉別人的權利了。對於法律如果沒有一般的尊重，那末就是最好的與最重要的一條也不能成爲實施的。官吏們立即說道：『如果沒有人要那些法律的實施，我們爲什麼辛苦地爲實施而工作呢？我們寧可坐在後面等要緊的事情發生罷。』法律的實施這樣又回到公民必定要有對於法律的尊重。如果公民堅持着法律一定要服從和破壞法律的人一定要受懲罰，如果他們每人自己遵守每一條的法律，並且堅持每一條法律必定要被遵守，那末政府確實可以實施法律了。

人民自己必定要告發破壞法律的人，和他們反對。他們必定要出庭，並且誠實地勇敢地作證明。這一類的勇敢與愛國的事情是和戰場上的英雄一樣地可嘉美的。人民自己該抵抗強盜，和他們作戰，捕捉他們。如果搶劫是很容易的事，許多人就會被誘而去做强盜了，並且強盜也不敢輕易襲擊一個勇敢的男子或婦女。我們必定要以各種方法盡力幫助當道實施一切的法律。

制定一條法律有時很容易的，但是如果不去實施又有什麼用處呢？巡警是實施法律的代表，雖然他們除掉把捕獲的破壞法律者帶到警局，或報告嫌疑犯之外，別無其他權力。巡警必須要小心地選擇，必定要有充足的月餉，使他們的地位受人尊重。還有更重要的事就是敬重裁判官，警官和適宜地扶助他們。所有誠實的公民該待遇他們好像人民的最要好朋友一般。

十三 公道是爲每個人的

許多判決都由行賄最大的人勝利。許多罪犯得到自由因爲他是法官的好朋友，許多清白的人處於犯罪者的地位而受到損害，因爲法官的愚笨或不細心。許多清白的人定了罪，因爲人

man has suffered in place of the guilty one because the officers of the law were *stupid*¹ or careless. Many an innocent man has been convicted because the people were angry with him. Many a decision has been wrongly made because the trial was not properly conducted. Justice is not an easy thing to give or to secure. *Injustice*² is all too common.

Justice is one of the tests of civilization. A nation, province, city, district, village, or person is judged partly by whether justice is given. If you say of a man, "He judges justly," you have *placed him high up in the scale*³. You could hardly say anything better of him. It is not only for the good of ourselves and our people that we want justice for every person in the country, but because this, more quickly than anything else, gives a nation the highest respect of the world.

The processes of law by which justice is secured are a well-developed science. No untrained man, however honest, can render just judgment in most *cases*⁴. The study of this science is classed among the professional studies. It requires years.

There must be a tradition of justice. People must value it and seek to honor the good judges. Thus they come to respect their own honorable records and to strive to maintain them. A man who attacks a just judge or accuses him of injustice is tearing at the foundations of society. We stand upon justice. Without assurance of justice we shake with fear. Justice leads to prosperity. Foreigners as well as Chinese all like to live and do business in a city where they feel sure of equal justice before the law for every person. Let us keep in mind that justice is both a test of civilization and a *cornerstone*⁵ of national prosperity.

14. Law and Order

One of the chief purposes of laws is to secure justice without the use of force. If a man owes you money and can pay, but refuses to pay, the law courts should make

1 愚笨。 2 不公道。 3 置於極高等級了。 4 案件。 5 基石。

民憤怒他們。許多的判決成錯誤，因為審判的手續不合。公道不是易於給與或保衛的。不公道的事是太普通了。

公道是文化的一種試驗。一個國家，一省，一城，一縣，一村乃至個人一部分是以公道是否實施為批判的。如果你說起一個，『他審斷公平，』你已把他置於極高等級了。你難以再說他還有更好的事。不只是爲了我們自己與我們人民的利益而我們要國人個個主張公道，却是因爲公道能使國家在世界上受最高的尊重，沒有東西能比它更快的了。以法律的程序保衛公道是一種甚爲發展的科學。沒有個未受訓練的人，不管他如何的誠實，能夠對於大多數的案件作公正的裁判的。關於這種科學的研究是列於專門研究之內的。它需要好多年的功夫呢。

必定要有公道的成例。人民要珍重它和尊敬良好的法官。這樣他們就會尊重自己的光榮紀錄，和竭力去維持了。一個攻擊公正法官或控訴他不平正的人就是把社會的基礎毀壞。我們都是站在公道上面的。沒有公道的擔保，我們就要恐懼而搖動了。公道可以引導到富強。外國人和中國人都歡喜住在一個城市裏並在那裏做事，這個地方使他們確實感到每個人在法律的前面都有平等的公道的。讓我們記好公道是文化的測驗和國家富強的基石。

十四 法律和秩序

法律的主要目的之一是不用強力而保衛公道。如果有人欠了你的錢，並且有能力還你，可是拒絕還你，那末法庭就該叫

him pay; but if you fail to get a just judgment against him, you find yourself greatly tempted to get your money by force. And yet it is easy to see that in a country where force might be used, no one would be safe. The law's first idea is to do away with the use of force and to use reason in the settlement of any difficulty, even of one in which force has already been used. Force outside of the law is the opposite of justice assured to all. It is justice for only the strong, if for any. The government *puts down force first*¹ and then applies the law to each person. Unless order is established there is no hope of enforcing the law. On the other hand, if the law is constantly enforced there is always good order and safety for everybody. The government has to use force to get order and to secure obedience to law, but every *application*² of the force is according to law already established by reason. If it is not, then the government itself is not legal. Under all good government the first object of the law is to insure order, which means security of life and property.

One of the greatest difficulties about revolution is that they naturally destroy the popular respect for government. After a revolution the citizens are sure to suffer from a *breakdown*³ of law and order. They must therefore make a special effort for years afterward to develop a respect for law and to insist upon its enforcement. This has been the history of France, America, and China. In some countries that you could name there has come to be a sort of habit of revolution. These have not yet been able to reestablish respect for and enforcement of law. Their condition is very serious.

15. The Reign of Reason⁴

When there is order, when the citizens are not afraid to come forward, when they are not busy protecting their lives and property, when they have confidence in the authorities, then they can discuss the problems of law

1 首先壓制武力。 2 應用。 3 破壞。 4 理治。

他還你；但是如果你不能獲得一個公正法官來處置他，那你便覺得要以武力來得到你的金錢了。並且這是容易明白的，一個國家裏面要常用到武力，那將沒有一個人會安全呢。法律的第一個觀念是解決任何糾紛廢除武力的使用而使用公理，就使有一造已曾用武力了。法律以外的武力是向大眾保證的公道的反面。如果武力可算公道，那末公道只是為強者的了。政府首先壓制武力，於是把法律應用於每個人身上。除非建立了秩序，就沒有希望實行法律。在另一方面，如果法律常能實施，那末人人能享受良好的秩序和安全了。政府曾用武力以獲得秩序及保衛法律的服從，但是每種武力的應用都是根據作理性成立的法律的。如果不如此，那末政府本身就不合法。在一切的良好政府之下，法律的第一個目標是確保秩序，其意義是保衛生命與財產。

關於革命一件最大的困難就是自然地破壞對於政府的普遍尊重。在一次革命之後公民們確要受法律與秩序破壞的痛苦，於是他們必定要以數年之久造成一種特別的力量以發展對於法律的尊重和堅持它的實施。這種情事在法國，美國，和中國的歷史上都有過。你能夠指出有些國家竟成爲有革命習慣的國家。這些國家至今還不能重建對於法律的尊重和實施法律。他們的情狀是非常嚴重的。

十五 理治

如果秩序確立，如果公民不怕前進，如果他們並不忙於保護他們的生命與財產，如果他們信仰當局，那末他們能夠討論

and coöperation. Reason can rule when force is under control. The people wish to do things,—to *carry on*¹ business, to make things and plant things and enjoy things, to travel, to build, to paint, to read, to work for the best progress and highest enjoyment of life—but first they must have order, then laws and organizations. Then they can use reason and science. They can cooperate to develop the country in all the ways they know.

This is the only way. Families, communities, the nations, and the world must work in this way: All the good things that we have mentioned—enterprise, thrift, investment, conservation, science, health, commerce, the enjoyment of life, education—depend upon order, upon coöperation and organization, upon good will and the reign of reason. We have said that it is an ancient principle in China that reason should rule, and not force.* Let us make it the method in China forever.

The last words of a *dying man*² are always carefully considered by those who know him. Here are the last words of the last public statement of one of China's greatest men, one who died in the summer of 1922:

Let me hope that my *compatriots*³, bearing in mind the errors of the past and difficulties of the future, will be guided by law and reason in settling national problems, and cease *strife*⁴ through *mutual trust*⁵ and *sincerity*⁶. And I *pray*⁷ that all may unite in a spirit of coöperation and *tolerance*⁸ to work for the good of the Republic and of Humanity.

WU TING-FANG

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. What is liberty? Can you think of anyone who uses his liberty well? of one who uses it wastefully?
2. Explain the difference between liberty and license.

1 經營。 2 將死者。 3 同胞。 4 爭鬥。 5 相互之信託。 6 真誠。 7 祈求。
8 寬容。

法律與合作的問題了。在武力被管理之後理性才能統治。人民是願意做事的——經營商業，製造物件，種植東西，和享用它們，去旅行，建築，繪畫，閱讀，作最進步的工作，和謀生活上的最高享受——但是第一他們必定要有秩序，其後才是法律和秩序。然後他們才能運用理性和科學。他們能夠以所知的各種方法合作起來，以發展這個國家。

這是唯一的方法。家庭，社會，國家，以及世界必定要照這方法做去。我們曾提及的一切好事情——企業，節儉，投資，保守，科學，健康，商業，生活的娛樂，教育——都倚靠着秩序，倚靠着合作和組織，依靠着良好的意志和理性的統治。我們曾說過，這是中國的古代原理，理性統治而非武力。讓我們使它成爲中國永久的方法吧。

一個將死者的最後言語往往爲知道他的人所鄭重考慮的。這兒是一位中國大偉人的最後公開狀裏的末幾句話，他死於一九二二年的夏天：

余希望余之同胞記憶過去之錯誤與未來之困難，依法律及理性之指導以解決國家之問題，並以相互之信託及真誠停止爭鬥。余祈求衆人皆應以合作及寬容之精神團結一致，爲中華民國及人類而工作。 伍廷芳

問題和練習

1. 自由是什麼？你能夠想到一個能夠善用自由的人麼？一個浪用自由的人麼？
2. 解釋自由與放縱的分別。

3. What is a rule? Give one rule that you have learned in arithmetic; one that you have learned in grammar.
4. Give an instance of how a rule prevented trouble.
5. Show that most rules are helps.
6. Have you a club at your school? *Draw up*¹ a set of regulations for it.
7. Should you like to go to a school where no one obeyed rules? What would such a school be like? Write a paragraph on "Why I respect a Law."
8. How does organization promote liberty?
9. Discuss the statement "Justice is both a test of civilization and a cornerstone of the nation's prosperity."
10. Explain the statement "Reason can rule when force is under control."

1 起草。

3. 規則是什麼？寫一條你在算術上學過的規則；舉一條你在文法上學過的規則。
4. 舉一規則防止擾累的例子。
5. 指出許多規則是有助的。
6. 你的校裏有一個俱樂部麼？試爲它起草一份章程。
7. 你歡喜到一所無人遵守規則的學校裏去麼？這樣個學校會像什麼？以『我爲什麼尊重法律』爲題寫一段短文。
8. 組織如何能推進自由？
9. 討論『公道爲文化的測驗及國家富強之柱石』這一句。
10. 解釋『當武力被管理時理性才能統治』這一句。

CHAPTER XVII

GOVERNMENT AND PUBLIC SERVICES

1. The Government is an Organization

We have just seen that organization are necessary to carry out people's wishes by coöperation. The government is the biggest organization of all. If a school has a tennis club or a *stamp-collectors' society*¹, these are organizations of only the few who are interested in tennis or in collecting stamps. There may also be a self government organization which includes every student. No one can be in the school and not be in that organization. In this case students do not go about asking, "Do you wish to join?" This is an organization of all. They are all *members*² from the moment the organization starts.

The government of a village, district, city, province, or nation is an organization of all the citizens for certain purposes. There are rules limiting the voters to those who are likely to be wise enough to vote properly; but all citizens are in the organization, to be controlled by it and to benefit from it. The purposes for which it *exists*³ are, first, to secure protection for life, liberty, and property, which means law, order, and justice; and, second, to help the people to work together for mutual benefit. We have already discussed the first of these two main purposes of government. In this chapter we wish to discuss the second.

In ancient times, and even now in *backward communities*⁴, kings and officials have often been people with power but with no idea of really benefiting the citizens. The result has been that citizens the world over are slow to believe that the government is really friendly and

1 集郵社。 2 會員。 3 存在。 4 落後的社會裏。

第十七章 政府和公共事業

一 政府爲一種組織

我們剛才明白，以合作來實現人民的願望，組織是必需的。政府是所有組織中最大的一個。如果一所學校有一個網球會或一個集郵社，這些只是幾個對於網球和集郵有興趣人的組織。那裏也許有一個包括全體學生的自治組織。在學校裏念書的人沒有一個能夠不參加這個組織。這種情形之下用不到問學生，『你願意加入麼？』這是一個全體的組織。從這個組織開始的一剎那間他們已都是會員了。

一村，一縣，一城市，一省，或一國的政府就是一個爲了某種目標的全民組織。有規則以限止投票者，只有那些其聰明足以適當地投票的人才有此權；但是所有公民都在這個組織裏，受它的管理，也享它的利益。建立政府的目標第一是保守生命，自由，與財產的保護，這就是法律，秩序和公道；其二是幫助人民爲了相互的利益而共同工作。我們已曾討論過政府兩大目標的第一個了。在這一章裏我們願意討論第二個。

在古時，甚至現在的落後的社會裏，國王和官吏對於國民極有權力，却沒有真正爲國民謀幸福的思想。其結果使全世界的公民難以相信政府是真正可愛，良好，有利和必需的。他們

good and beneficial and necessary. They are quick to oppose the government, to criticize a law, to scold an officer, to look down on a policeman or soldier, to refuse to serve under an official, to *evade*² the regulations, to escape from taxation. It is not strange that people feel this way, even that they scold and criticize the officers whom they themselves have elected. It is the result of long years of oppression and injustice and selfishness in high places. Now, however, the world has come to a new view of government. It is now considered an organization of the people themselves for their own mutual benefit.

2. Public Servants³

When the highest official of a modern government writes a letter to a citizen, he at times signs his name under the words "Your humble servant." This is not merely a very polite expression. He means he recognizes that he is the servant of the citizens. Although he rules over them, he does it only for their good and not for his own. He is employed by the citizens to do certain work for them. It may be to carry out their laws, even at times when many of them may have to be punished according to these laws. Because he is the servant of the whole people, not of just a part, he does not hesitate to punish even if there is a great *outcry*⁴ against him by many of the very people who elected him. He knows that even if a majority of the people suffer, it is his duty and service to uphold the law. The minority must be protected as well as the majority, and to preserve respect for the law is a service to all.

It is important that both officials and citizens should have clear and strong the idea of the public service—that every government official and clerk is a servant of the public. This does not mean that he is the servant of any individual citizen, that he must do as *directed*⁴ by anyone who calls upon him. He is not a servant of that sort. Like your father, he is working for you but not

1 不守。 2 公使。 3 叫喊。 4 指揮。

易於反抗政府，批評法律，譙詈官吏，卑視巡警和兵士，拒絕在一個官吏手下服務，不守章程，規避納稅。人民的感覺如此是無足驚異的，就使他們譙詈和批評他們自己所選的官吏。這是高位者的長年壓迫，不公道，與自私的結果。現在，可是世界對於政府漸進於新的見解了。現在已把政府當作一個為人民自己的相互利益的組織。

二 公僕

如果現代政府的一個高級官吏寫一封信給公民，他的簽名是用下面這幾個字『你卑賤的僕人』。這不但是很有禮的表示。他的意思是承認他是公民的僕人。雖然他統治着他們，他為了他們的利益而辦事，却不是為了自己。他是被人民所雇用為他們做某種工作。這種工作有時為實行法律而甚至有許多人依據法律而受到懲罰。因為他是全民的僕人，不是一部分的，所以就是有許多選舉他的人民大聲反對，他也毫不遲疑地處罰。他知道即使大多數的人民受害，而擁護法律却是他的責任和職務。少數和多數一樣要受保護，對於法律保持尊重，就是為全民服務。

這是很重要的，不論官吏和公民都該使其公衆服務觀念清楚而強固——就是每個政府官吏和書記是個公僕。這不是說他是任何一個公民的僕人，而他必得照任何要求他的人的指揮而辦事。他不是那一種僕人。正像你的父親，他為你而工作，可

under your direction. He must keep in mind that he is giving service to the people, and you must keep in mind that he is your helpful friend and not your enemy or *slave*¹.

We are very likely to think of our heroes as only those who have fought and died for their country or those who have gone through great danger to save life or accomplish some great task. We must not forget for a moment that there are thousands of men and women working for their country all the time. It is sometimes easier to die *gloriously*² than to go on working quietly day after day without much praise or appreciation. Are not those who faithfully labor for their government and for their people to be considered heroes also? Let us think of a public servant as one of the nation's heroes.

Think of the elementary-school teachers all over the country. They are often working against great difficulties. They are faithful day after day. They are patient, even though those they serve often criticize them very unkindly. They are training the boys and girls to support themselves, to enjoy their lives, and to serve and love their country. They are "*masters*"³ in their schools, but they are "servants" of the public, heroes in their country's battle against the enemy ignorance.

We have already discussed the service that the police and law courts render us. Let us remember how important it is to honor the judges and magistrates who *administer the laws*⁴, and let us remember every day to give honor and *good will*⁵ to the policeman on the corner. He preserves order for us, protects our lives and property, and even helps us to cross the street or find our way. He is a friend and helper.

3. International Service

One of the interesting things about the world today is the international character of so many valuable services. Not many years ago international committees

1 奴隸。 2 光榮地。 3 教師。 4 執行法律。 5 善惡。

不受你的指揮。他必得記好他是爲人民服務，你也得記好，他是你的益友，不是你的仇敵或奴隸。

我們大都以爲我們的英雄只是那些爲國戰爭或捐軀的人，或是那些經歷危險以救生命，或完成一些大事業的人。我們必不可一刻忘掉平時有幾千的男子和女子爲國服務。有時光榮地就死易於天天沈靜地進行工作而不受很高的贊譽與重視。那些爲政府，爲人民忠誠地工作的人難道還不算是英雄嗎？讓我們以一個公僕看作一個國家的英雄吧。

想想全國的小學教師罷。他們常常在大艱難之中工作着。他們天天很忠誠。他們是有耐心的，即使他們這樣地服務還常常受人家嚴酷的批評。他們訓練男孩和女孩自助，享受生活，爲國家服務與愛國。他們是學校的教師，可又是公僕，在國家反抗愚昧之戰中的英雄。

我們已曾討論警察和法庭給予我們的服務了。讓我們記好敬重法官和執行法律的長官是很重要的，我們每天要記好對於角落裏的巡警要給以尊榮和善意。他爲我們保持秩序，保障我們的生命與財產，甚至幫助我們穿過街道或找尋路徑。他是個朋友和救助者。

三 國際服務

現在世界上最有趣的一件東西就是許多有國際性質的有價值的服務。不多幾年以前國際委員會和組織是不知道的。現

and organizations were unknown. New religious and *philanthropic*¹ organizations, like the churches, the Red Cross, the Y.M.C.A.², and the Boy Scouts, extend their services to people of all lands. The American Red Cross in 1921 built eight hundred and fifty-six miles of roads in Shantung in addition to those built by the Chinese and others. The scientific societies welcome all men and women of ability to their meetings, and in their researches seek the aid of scientists of all nations. Rewards of honor are given by governments to men and women who have rendered service, no matter of what country they may be citizens. *The Nobel prizes*³, given every two years for the best work in several lines, are given to people of many lands. The Carnegie Institution at Washington is studying the *earth's magnetic laws*⁴, but its work is not in America alone. Its workers are not only Americans but also Chinese, British, and others; and its results are given freely to all nations. *The Rockefeller Foundation*⁵ has sent its doctors to develop a great medical school in Peiping and to help Chinese, British, Americans, and others in medical work in many parts of China. It has given money to Chinese colleges, to British colleges, and to others, as well as to American colleges. It has also attacked yellow fever in South America and Central America, and its doctors were Japanese, Cubans, or any others who were needed, regardless of *nationality*⁶. This same organization has rendered great service in Africa. In a recent year it spent over \$7,000,000 (gold) in such world-wide service. These are only examples of how public service has begun to be international. When the ship you sail on puts up a white flag with a square blue center, it means, "I am carrying an international pilot." You sail by lighthouses that guide all ships alike and are marked on maps that are for the use of all nation. Some article of food on

1 慈善的。 2 基督教青年會 (Young Men's Christian Association)。 3 諾貝爾獎金。由諾貝爾遺囑所設立之獎金，每年五個，每個有獎金八千金鎊，得獎之人共分五種。物理，化學，醫學，文學，和平之增進等。 4 地球磁性吸力。 5 洛克斐爾基金。是煤油大王捐出之基金用以增進全世界人類之福利。 6 國籍。

在宗教的和慈善的組織，如教會，紅十字會，基督教青年會，與童子軍，擴充他們的服務至於世界各地的人民。一九二一年美國的紅十字會在山東建築八百五十六里的道路，除開中國和別國所建的不算。科學社會歡迎一切有能力的男子和婦女入會，而找尋別國的科學家參加他們的研究。政府以光榮的獎品給予於人類有益的男子和女子，不管他們是那一國的公民。諾貝爾獎金每兩年一次給與對於幾種事業有良好成績的人，也是給與許多國家的人民的。華盛頓的卡尼基研究院研究地球的磁性吸力，但是它的工作是不限於美國的。它的工作者也不但是美國人，也有中國人，英國人和別國人；它的研究也自由地給予各國。洛克斐爾基金會派醫師在北平開設一所偉大的醫學院，並幫助中國人，英國人，美國人，和別國人之在中國各地做醫藥工作者。它捐錢給中國各學院，英國各學院，和別國的，像捐給美國學院一樣。它還攻擊南美和中美的黃熱病，它的醫師是日本人，古巴人或所需要的任何國人，不問他的國籍。這個組織對於菲州也曾有大貢獻的工作。最近幾年在這樣廣佈的服務上他費去了七百萬美金。這些僅是公益事業如何開始成爲國際性的例子。如果你行駛一只船，掛起白底藍方心的旗子，它的意思就是『我是載着一個國際的舵工』。你在燈塔旁邊駛過，這是以指導船隻，並在地圖上標明那是爲世界各國服務的。也許你桌上的食物有幾種是人們從世界各國帶來給你的，

your table was, perhaps, brought to you by men of many countries: picked by a Malay, sold by a Dutch merchant, carried by a French ship, bought by a British importer, *retailed*¹ by a Chinese shop. The ten-cent stamp you place upon your letter gives you the prompt and sure service of a multitude of public servants of many nations. The day has come when we think of the service rendered rather than the nationality of the man or woman who renders it. It is interesting to see Chinese and other foreign students in even a government military college in a Western country. In the World War there were French companies with British in them, American companies with Chinese in them, British companies with Americans in them, and so on. International services increased in importance until the League of Nations was formed. This is now undertaking many new lines of work that will bring into the world still more international public service.

4. Handling the People's Mail

In the handling of mail there is now almost complete world-wide coöperation. China is a member of the *International Postal Union*². The Chinese postal services are among the best and most extensive in the world. Mail service in China is quick, safe, and cheap. In some places a one-cent stamp will carry a letter a hundred miles and more. A four-cent stamp has carried it thousands of miles. If you carried it yourself or sent it by a *messenger*³, it would cost you perhaps hundreds of dollars, and your letter would not be so safe as it is in the hands of a public servant who is protected by special laws and checked and guided by a great system of supervision.

This great system reaches every part of the country. It *maps*⁴ out paths that carry letters to every district and to almost every village. Bringing mail from all these far-away places, it hands you letters at your door. The

1 零售, 2 萬國郵務會, 3 信差, 4 用地圖表出;

從馬萊採取，由荷蘭商人售賣，由法國船運輸，由英國進口商購賣，由一家中國店鋪零售。你貼在信上的十分郵票可給你敏捷而可靠的各國公僕的集合作。我們以工作本身的貢獻為對象，而不以做這件工作的男子，或女子的國籍為對象。這個日子已來了。中國人和別個西洋學生甚至在西洋國家的一所陸軍學院裏念書，說起來是很有趣的。在世界大戰中法國人和英國人在軍隊裏作伴，美國人和中國人在軍隊裏作伴，英國人和美國人在軍隊裏作伴，等等。等到國際聯盟形成國際服務遂會增其重要性。這個組織現在擔任許多新鮮的工作，並且將使世界更增多其國際性的公共服務。

四 辦理人民的郵務

辦理郵務現在差不多已完全世界合作了。中國是萬國郵務會的會員。中國的郵務是列為世界最良好與最普及的。中國的郵遞是迅速，穩妥和價廉。在有些地方一分郵票會把一封信送到百里以外或更遠的地方去。四分郵票會送到千里以外的地方去。如果你自己帶去，或派人專送，這封信也許會花掉你幾百塊錢，並且你的信不能像在『公僕』手中般地安穩，因為他們是受特別法律的保護，並且受偉大的監察制度的節制和指導。

這個偉大制度達於國中各地。在地圖上劃出送信到各縣和各村的路徑。從一切離開很遠的地方帶郵件來，把你的信送到

members of your own family are not so prompt and sure and regular in carrying your messages as are these official postmen.

A mounted courier service across the *Gobi Desert*¹ connects *Kaigan*² with *Urga*³ and *Kiakhta*⁴, the total distance of 3621 li (1206 miles) being done in eleven days.

From the present *terminus*⁵ of *Lsng-Hai Railway*⁶ in *Honan*⁷ a continuous chain of day-and-night couriers, for the most part mounted, runs through *Tungkwan*,⁸ *Sianfu*⁹, *Lanchowfu*¹⁰, *Ansichow*¹¹, thence *via Tihwafu (Urumtsi)*¹² to *Kashgar*¹³ on the borders of *Russian Turkestan*¹⁴. The total length of this line is 10,843 li (3614 miles), which makes it the longest postal courier line in the world. The time taken, when there are no delays, is forty days... The service of heavy mails through the *Yangtze gorges*¹⁵ to *Chengtú*¹⁶, the capital of *Szechwan*¹⁷, and on to *Tibet*¹⁸ shows no less enterprise. Before merchant steamers ventured up the river to *Chungking*¹⁹, a fleet of fast post boats was specially built to ply between *Chungking* and *Ichang*²⁰ through the dangerous *rapids*²¹. Even though full advantage is taken of whatever steam service there now is, thirty-two post boats are kept busy, carrying over twenty thousand bags of mail annually. *Wrecks*²² are not uncommon, but mails are nearly always recovered. For the sake of speed, light mails for *Chengtú* and the West are carried overland all the way from *Hankow* by day couriers and night couriers. *Hankow* letters are delivered in *Chongtu* (1023 miles) in thirteen days and in *Tatsienlu*²³ (1313 miles) in eighteen days.

1 戈壁沙漠。2 張家口。3 庫倫。4 恰克圖。5 終點。6 隴海鐵路。7 河南。8 瀘關。9 西安。10 蘭州。11 安西州。12 經過迪化(烏魯木齊)。13 喀什噶爾。14 俄屬土耳其斯坦。15 長江峽。16 成都。17 四川。18 西藏。19 重慶。20 宜昌。21 急流。22 沉船。23 打箭爐。

門前。你自己家庭裏的人爲你送信息也沒有這些郵差般的迅速，穩妥和合式。

一個騎馬的郵差，經過戈壁沙漠，連接張家口和庫倫，恰克圖的，全程計長三六二一里（一二〇六英里），在十一天之內任務完畢。

從河南的隴海鐵路終點，一串不斷的日夜郵差的鎖鍊，大部分是騎馬，他們經過潼關西安府，蘭州府，安西州，經過迪化（烏魯木齊），由此到俄屬土耳其斯坦邊界上的喀什噶爾。全程計長一萬零八百四十三里（三六一四英里），這一條路線爲世界最長的郵政路線。其時間如不耽擱爲四十日……對於重郵件的服務，經過長江峽到成都，（四川的省城）而達西藏，也足以表示一種勇敢的精神。在商輪敢溯江上重慶以前，一艘特製的快船經過危險的急流駛行於重慶和宜昌之間。就算現在已因輪船的服務而得到充分的便利，仍有三十二只船往來忙碌，每年要運載兩萬袋的郵件。沉沒是常有的事，可是郵件差不多總能取去。爲了迅速的緣故，運到成都和西部的輕便郵件總是從漢口由日夜的郵差從陸地送去。漢口的信到成都（一〇二三英里）在十三天之內收到，到打箭爐（一三一三英里）八日可

From Tatsienlu a line continues three hundred and seventy-five miles farther to *Batang*¹, the chief town of the Tibetan Masches. In normal times this is linked up with the Tibetan system by a line across the border to Chamdo, so that there is a direct overland communication from Peiping to *Lhasa*².

Think what a service is described in the quotation from the report given above. Think also of the growth of the service. Here are the figures for the numbers of articles of mail matter posted:

In 1901	3,500,000
In 1906	37,000,000
In 1911	125,000,000
In 1916	250,432,273
In 1921	446,686,018
In 1925	565,007,763

It is not only letters that are carried quickly for you but also newspapers, magazines, books, and small *packages*³ of all sorts. The quick distribution of newspapers, magazines, and books is a service of the greatest importance to the nation. How can a nation have unity unless the people share common purposes and interests? How can they have the same ideas and ideals and plans unless they read the same things? The Chinese post office is a binding force drawing together all parts of the nation.

1 巴塘. 2 拉薩. 3 包裹.

達。從打箭爐有一條路線繼續有三百七十五里之遠而達西藏的首鎮巴塘。在平時有一條路線經過邊境而到江達，以連鎖西藏的路線，所以從北平到拉薩有一條直接的陸道交通。

想想看，從上面引自郵務報告裏的一段看來這是怎樣的服務呀。再想想這種服務的增長。這兒的數字是中國歷年所送郵件的數目：

一九〇一	三，五〇〇，〇〇〇
一九〇六	三七，〇〇〇，〇〇〇
一九一一	一二五，〇〇〇，〇〇〇
一九一六	二五〇，四三二，二七三
一九二一	四四六，六八六，〇一八
一九二五	五六五，〇〇七，七六三

這不但信件可以很快地送給你，便是一切新聞紙，雜誌，書籍和各種小包裹都可以一樣。新聞紙，雜誌，和書籍的迅速分配是一種對於國家大為重要的服務。除非人民都分有共同的目的和興趣一個國家怎樣能夠統一呢？除非他們讀同樣的東西他們怎樣能有同樣的思想觀念和計劃呢？中國的郵政就是拉攏中國各地的團結力。

It is also important and exceedingly convenient to be able to send packages. If a man in Canton wants to sell ginger to a dealer in Hankow, he can mail him a *sample*¹ that will travel by the fastest steamers and trains and cost only a few cents. Exactly the same thing is true if he wishes to send the sample to a dealer in Chicago or Paris or *Liverpool*². He may wish to deliver to an agent in some distant city a valuable piece of *jade*³ or a picture or a bottle of medicine. It can be sent. It can be registered so that its presence will be checked at every place it is handled; the eye of this great system is on it. Its safe arrival can be made sure by a *return receipt*⁴ that comes all the way back to the sender. And all this service costs the sender only a few cents, because there is a well-regulated and supervised system and organization.

This service goes into the sending of money also. The receiving of packages alone is sure to make people want to send money, but there are many other causes for this demand. Therefore such a service is a wonderful convenience and a *stimulus*⁵ to business of all kinds. You go to a post office, pay in your money, receive an *order*⁶, mail the order to someone at the other end of the land, and, when he goes to his post office with the order, there is the money waiting for him.

The post office is an example of a great organization for rendering you service, not to make money for itself or anybody else. It does an enormous amount of work. About eight hundred bags and packages of mail on an average pass through or from the post office of one city in South China every day of the year.

When we see the postman coming, let us give him a cheerful word. Let us help him to realize his position as a part of a great and valuable organization working in the service of the country. Let us respect him as a valuable public servant.

1 樣品。 2 利物浦。 3 寶石。 4 回單。 5 刺激物。 6 匯票。

能夠寄遞包裹也是很重要而且大為便利的。如果一個廣東人要把畫賣給漢口商人，他可以寄給他一個樣品，只需費去幾分就可使其乘最快的輪船和火車送去了。同樣地十分可靠，如果他願意把樣品送給芝加哥，巴黎和利物浦的商人。如果他願意把很有價值的寶石或圖畫，或一瓶藥送給遠地城市的代理人，這也可以送的。它可要掛號，那末所送經各處都加檢查，看它是否存在；使這大制度的眼光都注意它。它的安穩到達以回單而確知，這張回單是經過來時各地而送到寄件人的手裏。一切這種服務祇須費他幾分錢好了，因為有一個章程完善和監察嚴密的制度與組織。

郵局還能夠匯錢。單單包裹的寄遞已可確使人民願意匯款了，但是這個要求還有許多別的原因。所以這種服務足以使人民大為便利，並且為一切商業的刺激物。你到郵局去，付了你的錢，接受一張匯票，把這張匯票寄給世界別一端的一個人，到時他帶了這張匯票到郵局去，那裏正有錢等着他呢。

郵局是一個為你服務的大組織的例子，不為自己或別人賺錢的。它做着巨量的工作。中國南方某處有個郵局每年天天平均約有八百袋包裹和郵件經手。

當我們看見郵差來時，讓我們以愉快的言語接待他。讓我們幫助他明瞭他的地位，是國家服務中偉大與有價值組織中的一部分。讓我們像個有價值的公僕般敬重他吧。

5. Wire and Wireless Service

Very much like the postal service is the telegraph and cable service. Here again are faithful public servants, some on duty during the day and others every minute of the night, ready to send or receive your messages. You write your message on a piece of paper, paying a small amount per word, and it is at once sent for you to any part of the world. Across the land and under the sea run the miles of wires. It is said that one telegraph company in a Western country has over a million miles of wire to take care of. Think of the men who have to *follow*¹ the lines and repair them—sometimes on dangerous high places, sometimes out on the ocean, sometimes in distant mountain forests. We are able to do a wonderful thing in sending and receiving messages because of a great public-service organization.

Very closely related to the telegraph and cable service is the telephone service. It usually begins with a city system, but it is easy to see that its usefulness increases with the extent to which it expands. Extending the telephone system into the rural parts of China will make village life far more attractive. A farmer will then be able to *call up*² a man a hundred miles away and *arrange*³ with him in a few minutes about a sale or some other business. The farmer's wife can call up a sister whose son is ill far away. Night and day someone is ready to do you service in *connecting*⁴ you with other people and ringing them up. Here, again, there are wires and apparatus to keep in repair—far more, as a rule, than in the telegraph companies. One company in a Western country is said to have twenty-five million miles of wire, enough to go around the world a thousand times. That keeps a great army of men busy. Such service helps people to succeed in business, to *live fuller lives*⁵, and to conduct a better government. By joining nations together it promotes friendly relations and shows us that we are all members of one great human family.

1 從事。 2 叫。 3 商量。 4 接線。 5 生活更充實。

五 電報和無線電的業務

和郵政很相像的是電報和海底電線的業務。這兒又是個忠誠的公僕，有的在白天服務，有的終夜服務，準備爲你接送消息。你把你的信息寫在一張紙上，每個字付一筆很小的費，於是它立即爲你送到世界的任何一處。電線經過陸地和海底好幾百里。據說西洋國家有一家電報公司要當心到百萬里以上的電線。想想這些從事電報業和修理電線的人——有時在危險的高處，有時要到海洋外面去，有時在遙遠的山林裏。我們對於接發消息上能夠做出異樣的成績來，就因爲有偉大的公衆服務組織。

和電報和海底電信有很密切關係的是電話的業務。它通常先由城市系統開始，可是它的用途也隨其擴充而加增其範圍。在中國的農村部分擴充這個電話系統將使農村生活更其動人。到了這時一個農夫能夠和一個百里之遙的人談話，在幾分鐘內和他商量好買賣或別的事情。這個農人的妻子就能問候一個遠道的姊妹，她的兒子正在生病。一天到晚，一夜到天明，總有人候着爲你服務，替你和別的人接線，和打鈴喚醒他們。還有，這兒的電線和機件要常加修理——譬如比之電報公司就要多得多了。據說西洋有一家電話公司有二千五百萬里長的電線，足可繞世界千匝。那種事業擁有好許多勞碌的人。它幫助人們在商業上成功，生活更充實，並還指揮一個較好的政府。因爲把國家聯在一起，它增長着友善的關係，並且向我們指示我們都是一個人類大家庭的一員。

The word "wire" was just becoming a verb when the word "wireless" appeared. Wireless telegraphy is a big new service. One of its great uses is to open *conversation*¹ between the land and ships at sea. This was of great importance in the World War, as was also similar communication between ships and airships and armies and moving trains. A ship in a *fog*² announces its location or the location of an *iceberg*³ or any other danger. Ships can publish the daily news all the way across the ocean. A ship in trouble sends out the letters "S.O.S."⁴ which in all languages are known to mean "Save us." And now the wireless telephone, or radio, has come as a new public service. News, lectures, music, and the like are sent out "*broadcast*"⁵ for the benefit of everybody who has a *receiving set*⁶.

All these means of communication work together to give us better newspapers and magazines, to promote business, and to make life more interesting in every way.

6. Another Group of Public Servants

Quite a different type of public service is that of aids to navigation along the coasts and rivers. Every channel must be charted and kept charted. Every dangerous rock and *bar*⁷ must be marked. Every important point on the coast must have a lighthouse, and every light must be kept burning at night and in exactly the way that the charts show it. One lighthouse, for example, shows a white light three seconds and then is dark five seconds. Any ship's captain who sees such a light knows exactly where he is, for the light always flashes in that way and no other light in that region ever does. The coast of China is said to be one of the best-lighted in the world. The Chinese Maritime Customs⁸ is the great organization that looks after this service. It keeps 192

1 通話. 2 霧. 3 冰山. 4 Save Our Ship 之羅萬. 5 廣播. 6 收音機.
7 淺灘.

當『無線電』出現的時候，『電線』兩字就成為動詞了。無線電報是一個巨大的新業務。它的大用途之一就是開闢陸地與海上船隻的通話。這在世界大戰時甚為重要，因為他同樣地是船，飛船，軍隊，和行動的火車之間的交通利器。一只霧裏的船可以報告它的地位和一個冰山的地位或別的危險。船隻能夠公佈渡海全程的每日新聞。一隻在困難中的船發出這幾個字母 S.O.S. 在各國文字裏這幾個字都知道它的意義是『拯救我們』。現在無線電話已漸成為新的公益事業了。新聞，演說，音樂，及相類的東西由電台廣播出來，爲了每個備有收音機的人的利益。

所有的交通方法共同工作把較好的新聞紙，雜誌，給予我們，以推進商業，並使生活各方面更多興趣。

六 另一羣的公僕

公益事業中還有形式完全不同的一種就是幫助沿海岸與河流的航行。每條水道必定要有記水道的圖，並要繼續繪圖。每處危險的礁石和淺灘必須記出。岸上每一重要的地點必須要有燈塔，並且每一盞燈必定要在夜間亮着，其方法須與航海圖上所示的絕對準確。例如，一座燈塔現出白光三秒鐘，於是暗黑五秒鐘。每個船上的船主看見了這種光就確切地知道他現在那裏，因為這個亮光常常照這種方法閃爍着，而在那個區域裏沒有別的燈光這樣做的。中國的海岸據說是世界最善用燈光的一個。中國的海關是保守這個業務的偉大組織。它管理着一

great lights, 5 *light-vessels*², 52 *lightboats*³, 276 *buoys*⁴, and 970 *beacons*⁵, which make a total of 1495 "aids to navigation," or devices for the protection of your life and property, on the seas and rivers of China.

Each harbor office must control the ships that come and go. They must be safe for passengers. They must start at the right time, follow the proper routes, give the proper signals, carry the proper lights, and so on. Ships bringing disease are stopped and held until free from it. All this is for the service and protection of the public. There are pilots examined and registered. No man who has not his "*papers*"⁶ may be the master or officer of a steamship. Even seamen are examined. Ships too are examined, and their engines and *life-saving apparatus*⁷ are inspected. In some countries there are life-saving crews always on the watch along dangerous coasts.

The weather bureau is an organization to gather information about the weather and to forecast the weather for the next day. It issues maps that show the general condition of the weather over the whole country and part of the sea. This indicates the probable conditions for a few days in advance. Ships on the sea, *planes*⁸ in the air, and farmers on the land all have great need for a forecast of the weather. The condition of the *tides*⁹ and water levels in the rivers is also an important matter carefully studied and reported upon. So also is the mere matter of time. For the sake of getting their latitude and *longitude*¹⁰ at sea, mariners must have places where they can find out the exact time and set their clocks.

During the terrible *typhoon*¹¹ in the region of *Suatow*¹¹ in 1922, lighthouses had their roofs blown off, while the rain poured in for hours; but the keepers stuck to their lights and kept them flashing properly and clearly through it all. There are heroes in all branches of the public service. All honor to them!

1 燈輪. 2 小燈船. 3 浮標. 4 標標. 5 證書. 6 救生器具. 7 飛機.
8 潮水. 9 經度. 10 暴風. 11 汕頭.

九二座大燈塔，五艘燈輪，五十二艘小燈船，二百七十六個浮標，九百七十個礁標，一共計有一四九五處的幫助航行的東西，或是在中國的海洋和河流上保護你生命財產的裝置。

每處海口管理局必要管理來去的船只。它們必定要使乘客安全。它們必定要在正確的時間開始，依照正式的路線走，發出合宜的信號，船上有相當的燈光等等。載着病人的船只必要停止，直到疾病消滅為止。一切的事情都爲了公衆服務與保護公衆。舵工要受考試和登記。沒有證書的人不能做船主或船員。就是水手也得受試驗。船只也得受試驗，船上的機器和救生器具都要受檢查。有些國家有救生團員常在危險的海岸上守望。

氣象局是一個收集關於氣象的通知和預測明天氣象的組織。它發行地圖，指明全國和一部分海洋的氣象情形。它還指出最近數天氣象進行的或然情形。海裏的船只，空中的飛機，地上的農夫對氣象的預測都有極大的需要。潮水的情狀和河流裏的水平也都是重要的事件，要仔細地研究和報告的。這樣又是時間的事件。爲要求得海裏的經緯度，航海的人必要有一個地方使他們能找出準確的時間和開準他們的錶。

一九二二年汕頭地方發生暴風時，燈塔的屋頂都吹掉，雨流進去好幾個鐘點；但是守塔者守着他們的燈光，使其照樣發光而且能穿過暴風雨。各種公益事業都有英雄。大家要尊重他們！

7. The Army and the Navy

Many of the greatest problems of a modern nation have to do with the army and the navy. A great modern navy includes the big *battleships*¹; the great fast *cruisers*²; the still faster but small *torpedo boats*³ and *destroyers*⁴; the river gunboats; the *submarines*⁵ and their mother ships, the *seaplanes*⁶; the *mine-layers*⁷; the *troopships*⁸; the hospital ships; and others. A navy is a big thing, a wonderful system, a great scientific organization, a powerful governmental machine.

In times of peace the capture of *smugglers*⁹, protection against pirates, and rescue of ships in distress are the chief *functions*¹⁰ of a navy at home, and these functions are very necessary. The reign of law and order upon the water is just as necessary as upon the land. The water offers a special temptation to robbers, because they can come and go quietly, and leave no tracks behind. For this water policing there are harbor police, but there must also be a navy for the more dangerous work. There, again, is a great public service. We must build up a modern navy, large enough to render this service, but not so large as to be a burden to the people. Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness often depend upon its service.

A modern army includes the *infantry*¹¹, the *cavalry*¹², the *artillery*¹³, the *air forces*¹⁴, the engineers, the miners, the service of communication, the medical and the surgical department, the *supply departments*¹⁵, the transportation departments, and others, with the great coordinating central staff which keeps all working together like a single great engine. Then there are *arsenals*¹⁶ and *magazines*¹⁷, placed at various points throughout the country, where many of the great cannons and rifles are made and stored until the need for them arises. The army is not often an engine of construction: it is usually an engine of destruction. Occasionally an army builds a permanent road or bridge. But almost always an army is an expensive thing, a dangerous thing, and a destructive thing.

1 戰艦。 2 巡洋艦。 3 水電艇。 4 驅逐艦。 5 潛水艇。 6 水上飛機。 7 水雷敷設艦。 8 軍隊輸送艦。 9 走私者。 10 職務。 11 步兵。 12 騎兵。 13 砲兵。 14 空軍。 15 軍需處。 16 兵工廠。 17 火藥庫。

七 陸軍和海軍

現代國家的許多最最大的問題都和陸軍和海軍有關係。一個巨大的現代海軍須包括大戰艦；大而迅速的巡洋艦；更快而小的水電艦和水電驅逐艦；淺水兵輪；潛水艇和他們的母艦，水上飛機；水電敷設艇；軍隊輸送艦；軍醫艦；和別的船。海軍是一個巨大的東西，一個可驚的系統，一個偉大的科學組織，一個有力的政府機器。

在和平的時候，捕捉走私者，防禦海盜，救助遇險的船是海軍在國內的主要職務，這些職務是極需要的。在水上的法治與秩序是和陸地上一樣地需要的。水上給予強盜以特別的引誘，因為他們可以安靜地來去，不留任何的痕跡在後面。爲了這種事有海口的巡警在水上巡行，但也必要有海軍來做更危險的工作。這也是偉大的公益事業。我們必定要建立一個新式的海軍，其巨大足以做這種工作，可不要大到成爲人民的一種負擔。生命，自由，和快樂的追求往往靠着它的服務。

一個巨大的陸軍包括步兵，騎兵，砲兵，空軍，工兵，地雷工兵，交通兵，醫藥及外科的一部分，軍需處，運輸處和別的，以及偉大的合作的中心參謀部，使一家像一架單純的大機器般地一起工作。那末還有兵工廠和火藥庫，位於全國的各要點，儲藏着直到對於它們發生需要爲止。陸軍不常是建設的工作；它通常是一架破壞的機器。偶而也有軍隊建築一條永久的道路或橋樑。但是陸軍差不多總是一種消耗的東西。一個危險的東西和一個破壞的東西。

8. Reduction¹ of the Army

It is said that in 1928 China's army numbered about two million, the largest standing army in the world. It has been a cause of long civil wars; it has dominated the civil authorities of the government; it has eaten up nearly all the country's annual income. The money we need for roads, railroads, dikes, mines, factories, and school has been put into this huge engine of destruction. Fortunately the National Government has recently made plans and taken steps to reduce greatly the size of the army and to turn the *disbanded*² soldiers into useful occupations. We must all support this movement, and public opinion will help it to succeed.

A modern nation does not need a large army. In case of war people can be *conscripted*³ by the government, trained, and added to the *regular army*⁴. After the fighting the army should be at once brought back to the smaller figure. This has been proved by the experience of Western countries in the World War.

An army has functions other than going to war. Why do the great nations have armies in time of peace? Why do they treat the soldiers with honor and respect? Why do they pay a soldier well, pay his family after his death, give him good food, clothing, *quarters*⁵, care, education, and special training? There are two reasons for having an army in time of peace: to have the basis for quickly developing a big army in time of war and to preserve law and order throughout the country. These two things are so important that it is necessary to treat the army well, respect and honor it, recognize seriously its worth and its patriotism, so that the nation shall have a good army. A nation suffers when its army is larger than necessary. It must always take care that the army is small and that it is in every respect a good one.

We wish our army to be small but *reliable*⁶. We want it to keep order over all the country. Wherever the police of a town, city, or district find they cannot put down disorder and capture criminals, and cannot increase

1 裁減。 2 解散的。 3 徵收。 4 正規軍。 5 住所。 6 可靠的。

八 裁減陸軍

據說在一九二八年中國的陸軍數目約有兩百萬，是世界上最大的常備軍。這是起由於長期的內戰；它支配政府裏的文官當局；它把國家的每年收入差不多吃完。我們需要用來築路，築鐵道，造壩堰，開鑛，開辦工廠和學校的錢都放進這個巨大的破壞機器裏去了。幸有地國民政府最近製就計劃，逐步大大的減縮陸軍的體積並把解散的兵士回到有用的職業上去。我們必須大家支持這個政府，而輿論也將幫助它成功。

一個現代國家不需要巨大的陸軍。在作戰時政府可以徵發人民，加以訓練，而加入正規軍。在戰後陸軍該立即回復到較小的數字。這在世界大戰時西洋各國的經驗都可證明的。

陸軍的任務不但是去作戰。爲什麼在和平的時候大國也有陸軍呢？爲什麼他以光榮和尊敬對待兵士呢？爲什麼他們給予兵士的錢很豐厚，在他死後就付給他的家庭，給他好東西吃，好衣服穿，好地方住，照顧他，教育他和特殊的訓練他呢？太平時要有軍隊的理由有二個：（一）在戰時有一個基礎，可以迅速發展成巨大的軍隊；（二）保持全國的法律和秩序。這兩個理由是這末的重要，所以必需待遇陸軍豐厚，敬禮和贊譽它，慷慨地承認它的價值和它的愛國，那末國家才有一個良好的陸軍。陸軍大於必需的數目常使國家受害。所以必得常常注意軍隊的數目要少而在各點上都要完善。

我們願意我們的陸軍要小一點但要可靠。我們要它維持全國的秩序。如果城市，鎮，縣的巡警覺得不能掃除擾亂及捕捉罪犯，並且不能增加本地的實力那末國家陸軍的省防隊必定

要幫助他們。如果地方或省的軍隊襲擊另一個地方或省，或是自己不遵守法律，那末國家的軍隊必要阻止其戰爭，而所發生的問題由法律和公理判斷，不能武力從事。以武力作審判該是不允許的，不論國內或是國與國之間。在一九二八年至一九二九年時有五十以上的國家簽一張和平公約，擔保只用和平方法解決將來國際所興起的任何意見不同或糾紛。這張條約的簽字國差不多包括世界上所有的國家，中國也是其中的一國。讓我們希望陸軍和海軍只是巨大的巡警隊而永遠不是戰爭的機械。

因為這種警務目的，政府的軍隊方面必須十分優良。讓我們努力使其優良。所謂優良的軍隊是指什麼呢？一個優良的軍隊是科學地造成與科學地管理的。它正像一架精緻的機器，裏面沒有無用的部分，沒有浪費的燃料，沒有不良的聯接，沒有無力的部分，沒有下等的質料，沒有缺少注意，每件東西都清潔，光亮，閃耀，並立即可以準備，和工作有效率；它是架可以驕傲的機器，並是架值得贊美和好好地照管的機器。

九 文武官員

在革命時武官在同時往往就是文官。但是一等到軍事結束，文官和武官就該立即有權限的分開。後者該為前者的隸屬。一個良好的軍隊就是完全處於民選文官管理之下的軍隊。它正像郵政人員，是公僕的一個組織，不是主人的或是私人的。人民的代表派它到那兒去，就得到那兒去，他們命令做什麼工作就得做，不管它有怎樣的危險，如果必須，為公共利益像

the local force sufficiently, the provincial section of the national army must help them. Wherever a local or provincial force attacks another locality or province, or does not itself obey the laws, the national army must stop the fighting, so that the questions at issue may be decided by law and reason rather than by force. Decisions by force should not be allowed, either within a country or between nation and nation. In 1928-1929 over fifty nations signed a peace *pact*¹, pledging themselves to use only *peaceful means*² to settle any differences or *disputes*³ that may arise between them in the future. The *signatories*⁴ of this treaty include almost all the countries of the world, and China is one of them. Let us hope that armies and navies will be only a great police force, and never *war-making machines*⁵.

For such police purposes the military side of a government must be thoroughly good. Let us do all we can to make it good. What do we mean by a good army? A good army is scientifically made and managed. It is like a fine engine which has no useless parts, no waste of fuel, no bad connections, no weak places, no poor material, no lack of attention, with everything clean, bright, shining, and ready for immediate and efficient work, it is an engine to be proud of, and one that responds to pride and good care.

9. Civil and Military Authorities⁶

In times of revolution military officers are often at the same time civil officials. But as soon as the campaign is over, there should be a separation of authority between civil officials and military officers. The latter should be *subordinated*⁷ to the former. A good army is one that is completely under the control of the civil authorities chosen by the people. It is, like the post-office army, an organization of public servants, not of masters or of private citizens. It must go where the people's representatives send it, do the work they order done, no matter

1 公約。 2 和平方法。 3 糾紛。 4 簽字國。 5 作戰的機械。 6 文武官員。
7 隸屬。

how dangerous it is, die as heroes for the public good if necessary. If an army does anything more than that, it is not a good army. If it *takes a hand*¹ in politics, if it takes up the work of the judges or the police, if it in any way interferes with the making or executing of the laws, it is outside its *rightful field*². Except as the civil authorities use it in such ways to enable them for a certain time to restore order, the army may not touch such affairs. If it does, it is the enemy of the nation and not its honored servant. A good army is one that loves its nation above all else, that is thoroughly patriotic, that will work and fight and die for the good of the nation,—not for some man or *clique or section of the country*³ but for the nation and its whole people. Let us have a small but splendid army that will love and honor the national flag it carries.

10. Paying for Public Service

A public-service corporation, such as a railway or a tram line or a telephone system or an *electric-light plant*⁴, usually works under a *franchise*⁵ given it by the laws of the community, but it collects directly from you the pay for the service it gives you. The money you pay on a tramcar pays not only for your ride but also for the regular and frequent opportunities offered you to ride day and night. So also with other such public services.

But how about the case of public service for which you do not pay directly? How is it paid for? The police give you constant service; who pays for it? Who pays for the teachers in the public schools, for the superintendents and inspectors, for the bureau of education, for schoolhouses, for streets and street lights, for the cleaning of streets and all health protection, for the water supply, for fire protection, for courts, for parks, for sewers, for the jails and *asylums*⁶, for the lighthouses, for the weather stations, and for all other forms of "free" public service? Some are local and some are national, but all must be

1 參預。 2 正當範圍。 3 國家的黨派。 4 電燈廠。 5 特權。 6 養育所。

英雄般去就死。如果軍隊所做的事更有多於此者，就不是個好軍隊。如果它參預政治，如果它奪取法官或警察的職務，如果用任何方法干涉立法與行政，它就跑出了正當範圍之外了。除非文官在某時用以幫助恢復秩序，軍隊不可與聞這種事務。如果如此，它就是國家的敵人而不是光榮的僕人。好軍隊是愛國超於一切的，那是澈底的愛國，將為國家的利益而工作，戰爭，與就死，——不是為了幾個人或國家的黨派而是為了這個國家和它的整個的人民。讓我們有一個小而光榮的軍隊，它將愛護和敬重它所攜帶的國旗。

十 公共事業的費用

公共事業團體，如鐵路，電車線，電話系統，或電燈廠，通常由社會的法律給予一種特權，但它直接向你收集為你服務的費用。你付給電車的錢不只因為你的乘坐却也為日夜供給你合式而繁多的機會而要你付錢。別的公共事業也是同樣的。

但是不要你直接付錢的公共事業的情形怎樣呢？如何付錢呢？警察為你永久地服務；誰付這筆費用呢？公立學校裏的教師，督學員，調查員，教育局，校舍，街道與街燈，清掃街道與一切衛生保障，水的供給，消防，法庭，公園，陰溝，監獄和養育所，燈塔，氣象台，和各式不收費的公共事業，誰付的錢呢？有的是國立有的是地方設立，可是都要付錢。它們為人

paid for. The people are served, so the people must pay. In the case of the postal service the people pay when they buy stamps, because that kind of service is easily measured and paid for, *piece by piece*¹. Even in that case it takes a great deal of time and money and management to collect all the money through the sale of stamps. This method would be impossible in some forms of public service and entirely too inconvenient in others.

Public service is usually paid for by taxes. If it were not for the tax collectors we could not have a government. We sometimes become very impatient with the customs officers who inspect our baggage and make us pay *import or export duties*², but we should remember that they also are public servants, and that these taxes are the financial strength of the government.

There are many ways of collecting taxes. It used to be a custom in some countries for each voter to pay a tax, but this was stopped because it taxed the poor man just as much as the rich man, and because it was a great temptation to sell one's vote to anyone who would pay the tax. *Taxing salt*³, which is an important taxing method in China, also taxes almost equally the rich and the poor. Which receives more benefit from the public services, the rich man or the poor man? Taxes on goods imported seem to make the foreigner pay our taxes; but really those who finally buy the goods for use are the ones who pay, as all the others who handle the articles merely add the tax to the price at which they sell. Some money is collected for the *registration of deeds and other documents*⁴, and some by the sale of *stamps*⁵ required to make checks, receipts, and other documents legal.

The chief source of revenue in most countries is the tax upon property. In China there is a special way to tax land. Each *landowner*⁶ reports to the government the value of his land and pays a tax according to a certain percentage. If he *overestimates*⁷ its value, he has to pay more. If the value he declares seems too low, the government may buy the land at his price.

1 一件一件的。 2 進出口稅。 3 鹽稅。 4 契據和別的文件의註冊。 5 印花。
6 地主。 7 濫量估計。

民服務，人民就得付錢。譬如郵政，人民在買郵票時付錢，因為那種服務容易估計，可以一件件的付錢。就是像這種情形，它也要費去很多的時間，金錢和管理以收集從售出郵票裏收進的金錢。有幾種方式的公共事業這種方法是不可可能的，因為對於別人太不便利了。

公共事業通常由稅收支給。如果不是收稅員，我們連政府也沒有了。我們有時很不耐煩海關人員，他們檢查我們的行李，叫我們付進出口稅，但是我們該記好他們也是公僕，而這些稅收是政府的財政力量呢。

收稅有種種方法。有些國家以前有一種習慣，就是每個投票人要付一筆稅，但是這個習慣廢止了，因為它對於貧人和富人一律徵同樣的稅額，並且足以引誘出售投票權於願意納這筆稅的人。鹽稅是中國的重要稅項，其稅額差不多也是貧富一律的。公共事業上的利益誰接受得更多呢？富人還是窮人？征收進口貨稅，好像是令外國人納稅，但是誰最後買這貨物來用的就是真正的付款者，所有別的經營這種物品的人不過在售賣時把稅額加在價格上而已。有些錢是由於契據和別的文件註冊而徵收來的，有的是因為支票，收據，和別的文件非貼印花不能算合法，由於售賣印花而來的。

大多數國家的收入主要來源是財產稅。在中國，征收土地稅的方法是特別的。每個地主把他的土地價值報告政府並依照百分比納稅。如果他把價值估高，他也得多付錢。如果他把價值報告得太低，政府可以照他的開價買進這塊地。

The *income tax*¹ is another important source of revenue. This is a tax which in some countries falls very heavily upon the people. In some the rich only are taxed; the richer a man is, the higher his tax *rate*². In some countries it falls heavily even upon the poor people.

Taxes in China have not been heavy. If a Chinese citizen compares his taxes with those of a Japanese or British citizen, he will find that his taxes are quite low. If they increase year by year, he need not be surprised. As the public services increase, the taxes also must increase, unless there is an increased source of revenue elsewhere or a great saving somewhere.

11. Sovereignty and Ability³

There are two forms of government by the people. Each has its advantages and disadvantages. One may be better under certain conditions, and the other be better under other conditions. The first may be called direct government. In small villages the people all come together at times to discuss and settle some matter. The elders are the leaders. Everyone in the village can attend and give his opinion on the subject. All sides of the question are discussed by people of different points of view. It may take a long time to reach an agreement, but when once it is reached, they are more likely to coöperate in carrying it out. This form of government does not always work so well. Its success depends on three conditions: the number of the people must be small, the problems discussed must be clearly understood and within the ability of the people to solve, and they must take an active interest in their *common affairs*⁴. If these conditions do not exist, this form of government has many weaknesses. At a meeting there may be a great deal of speaking, but no one really cares what is said. It seems that everyone present thinks that it is necessary for him to speak, and that this is the most important thing to do, because the speaker often goes

1 所得稅。 2 率。 3 權與能。 4 公共事務。

所得稅是國家收入的另一種重要來源。有幾個國家這一種稅很重地加於人民身上。有幾個國家只征收富人；這個人愈富，他的稅率也愈高。有的國家這種稅甚至很重地加於窮人的身上。

中國的稅收並不重。如果一個中國公民把他的納稅額和日本或英國的公民的稅額相比較，他就知道他的納稅額是很低的。如果稅額年有增加，他也不需驚詫。因為公共事業增加，稅額必定也要增加的，除非有一宗新增的收入來源或有些地方有大大的節省。

十一 權與能

民治政府有兩種方式。每種有它的利弊。在某種情形下一種形式較善，可是在別的情形下却是別一種形式較善了。第一種可以稱作直接政府。在小的村落裏人民在討論與解決事務時可以大家一起來。長老就是領袖。村裏的每一個人都能出席和對於這個主題發表意見。問題的各方面由觀點不同的人民加以討論。這也許需要長時期才能達到一致，但是當達到一致的時候，他們大都能合作以謀其實現。這一個形式的政府工作不能常常完善。它的成功倚靠着三種情形：人民的數目必要少，所討論的問題必要清楚地了解並要在人民能力範圍之內所能解決，對於他們的公共事務人民必需有活潑的興趣。如果三個條件不能成立，這種形式就有許多的弱點。在開會時有許許多多的說話，但是沒有一個人真的留心說些什麼。好像每個人的出席都以爲必需他說幾句話，並且這是要做的最最重要的事了，因爲這俚發言者一等說完了話立即出去喂他的水牛或和別人談

off to feed his buffaloes or talk to somebody as soon as he finishes his speech. The real question at issue is often forgotten or put aside. The meeting often breaks up without any decision, or a group of young fellows who have nothing to do *take charge of*¹ the close of it. Frequently a wrong decision is made. Perhaps the wise men and women have no chance to present the right side of the matter, or they may not be interested enough even to *attend*² the meeting. So this kind of government has many weaknesses even in a small village; in a big town or province or country it would, of course, be impossible.

The second form of government by the people is called *representative government*³. Because modern society has become very complex, government has become a very large and complex organization. It includes too many people to gather them into one place for debate. Its questions are so difficult that very few people can discuss them intelligently. *Law-making*⁴ and *law-enforcing*⁵ have become so technical that the wisest and best-educated men are required; so the people elect men with ability and honesty as their representatives and officials to make laws, to carry out the laws, to collect taxes, to run the government, and so on. The people do not rule themselves, but they do rule through their representatives. What is the duty of the citizens? They have one task, the most important of all, for the success of representative government depends upon this: it is the duty of voting for the right representatives. The citizens may not be able to solve the problems of government, but they can at least choose good men. They must elect wise, good, honest, public-spirited citizens to represent them. If this is done the government will be efficiently managed for the benefit of the whole people. Governments of modern nations are to a large extent representative

However, representative government also has some weaknesses. Some of the representatives and officials elected may turn out to be bad men. They may be

1 開始辦。 2 出席。 3 代議政府。 4 繁複的。 5 立法。 6 實施法律。

話，提出的真正問題却往往忘掉或擱在一邊了。這種會議往往沒有任何決議就破壞，或是一羣年青的人他們沒有事做就辦閉會的事。往往造成錯誤的決議。也許聰明的男子和婦女沒有機會提出這件事的正當辦法，或是他們連出席會議就沒有好興趣。所以這種政府就在小村上也有許多的缺點，當然大的鎮集，或省，或國家更其不可能了。

民治政府的第二個方式是稱作代議政府。因為現代社會已成為很繁複了，政府也已成爲大而繁複的組織。它包括的人民太多，所以難於聚集在一處地方議事。它的問題也這樣地困難，只有很少數的人民才能理解地加以討論。立法與實施法律成爲這樣地專門，只有最聰明和受最高教育的人才需要，所以人民選舉有能力的和誠實的人做他們的代表和官吏以制定法律，實施法律，征收賦稅，推行政府，等等。人民並不自己管理，可是他們經過他們的代表實行管理。公民的責任是什麼呢？他們有一種工作，是最最要緊的工作，因為代議政府之成功全靠着它的：這就是票選正當代表的責任。公民們也許不能解決政府的問題，但是他們只少能選擇良好的代表。他們必定要舉聰明，優良，誠實，和有公益心的公民來代表他們。如果這一點辦妥，政府就能爲整個人民謀利益而有效率地經營着了。現代國家的政府是大體用代議制的。

可是代議政府也有弱點。選出來的代表和官吏也許出了幾個壞東西。他們也許道德高尚，可是沒有能力和效率；或者他

morally good, but *incapable*² and inefficient; or they may not do the will of the people on a given question. There is no way to control them or to remove them from office until their *term*² is up. Sometimes the *pros*³ and *cons*⁴ of a public question are so *evenly*⁵ divided that the representatives do not know what to do unless they get a clear expression of popular opinion.

How can we combine the advantages of direct government and representative government and avoid their disadvantages? Dr. Sun Yat-Sen thought about this question carefully and suggested a *solution*⁶ for China. He made a distinction between "sovereignty" and "ability." Political power belongs to the people; government is conducted by specialists of ability. The government rules the people, but the people control that government through the exercise of four political rights. The first is *suffrage*⁷. That means the citizens elect by popular vote public-spirited specialists as their representatives and officials. The second is the *recall*⁸. If any of these representatives or officials are proved to be unworthy, they may be removed from office at any time by popular vote. The third is the *initiative*⁹. The citizens have the right to *introduce*¹⁰ and make laws directly if such have not been made by their representatives. The fourth is the *referendum*¹¹. The citizens have the right to approve or *reject*¹² decisions referred to them by the law-making body. The people must learn how to use these four political rights wisely.

Dr. Sun used the example of the owner of an automobile and his chauffeur. The owner has the power but no ability to drive the car; the chauffeur has the ability but no power. The people are like the owner, and the government is like the chauffeur. How can they cooperate? Consider what Dr. Sun says:

The people are the owners; they must be sovereign. The government are specialists; they must be men of ability and skill. We are, therefore, to look upon all the officers of the government as specially trained chauffeurs. If they are able men

1 沒有能力。 2 任期。 3 贊成者。 4 反對者。 5 平均地。 6 解答。 7 選舉權。 8 罷免權。 9 創制權。 10 提議。 11 複決權。 12 否決。

們在某種問題上不能照人民的意志做。那是沒有法子去管理它們，或是在任期未滿時撤換他們的。有時對於公共問題，贊成和反對分開得那末平均，使代表不知道怎樣才好，除非他們對於輿論獲得清楚的印象。

我們怎樣能聯合直接政府和代議政府的優點，而避免其劣點呢？孫逸仙博士對於這個問題曾詳加考慮，並為中國提出一個解答。他把『權』與『能』分開。政治上的權力屬於人民；政府以專門家的能力而行動。政府統治人民，但是人民經過四個政權的使用而管理着政府。第一是選舉權。其意義是依普選法人民選舉有公益心的專家做他們的代表和官吏。第二是罷免權。如果任何代表或官吏證明為不勝任，他們就可以普遍投票罷免他。第三是創制權。公民有直接提議和制定法律的權，如果他們的代表沒有制定這一種法律。第四是複決權。關於立法機關提交他們的議決案公民有贊成或反對之權利。人民必定要學習怎樣聰明地運用這四種直接政權。

孫先生把汽車主人和車夫做例子。車主有權但沒有駕駛車子的能力；車夫有能但沒有權。人民像車主，政府像車夫。他們怎樣能合作？研究孫先生的話罷：

「人民是車主；他們一定是有權的。政府是專家；他們一定是有能力與有技能的人。所以我們要把所有的政府人員看作受過特別訓練的車夫。如果他們是能幹的人，並且忠於國家，我們該很願意地把國家的主權交給他們的手

and loyal to the nation we should be willing to give the sovereignty of the state into their hands. We must not limit their movements, but give them freedom of action; then the state can progress, and progress with *rapid strides*¹. If, on the contrary, we attempt to take everything into our own hands or to *hamper*² our experts at every turn and not allow them freedom of action, the state can hardly hope to progress much and will move forward very slowly."

12. The Practice of Government in Schools

Although a school is not exactly like a nation, because a school is under the direction of those appointed by the educational officers or by the owners, and so does not in any case have more than a small measure of self-government, it gives us an opportunity to learn the principles of government. Do not attempt to decide every question by mass meetings. These are necessary for the purposes of encouraging or persuading the whole student body or expressing mass opinion; but they are often not the place for making final decisions or definite plans. It is much wiser to appoint committees and elect boards to make your rules and form your decisions (suffrage). Only in special cases should questions be referred to a mass meeting for a final decision (referendum). Sometimes students may send suggestions of new rules or important questions to the student government for *consideration*³ and *adoption*⁴ (initiative). It is important to elect good students as officers, and it is equally important to support them after they are elected. As a rule, abide by their decisions and give them a free hand. If you throw responsibility and confidence on your representatives, you make them stronger men. Only when there is definite *evidence*⁵ to prove the unworthiness of an officer, should the student body remove him from office (recall); otherwise it discourages good students from taking offices.

On the other hand, officers of the student self-government should be public-spirited, and must never

1 快步. 2 妨礙. 3 考慮. 4 採納. 5 證明.

裏。我們不要阻止他們的行動，却讓他們自由活動；那末國家才能進步，並且進步得極快。反之，如果我們企圖把什麼事都抓在自己手裏，或者在每件事裏妨礙我們的專家，不讓他們自由活動，那末國家難於希望有大進步，並且很緩慢地向前進了。』

十二 在學校裏的政府實習

雖然一所學校並不完全像一個國家，因為學校是受教育官吏所委派的人或是校主的指導的，所以無論如何不能越出自治會的小範圍以外。它給我們一個研究政治原理的機會。不要企圖以全體會議議決每個問題。爲了鼓勵或勸誘全體學生，或表明全體的意見的目的，開大會是必需的；但總不是造成議決案或確定的計劃的地方。指定委員會和選舉職員以制定規則以付表決（選舉權）是較爲聰明的。只在特別的情形下有些問題要提交大會作最後表決（複決權）。有時學生們可以把對於新規則或重要問題的提議送交學生會，請予考慮與採納（創制權）。選舉良好的學生做職員是很重要的，他們被選後去支持他們也是重要的。照例，要擁護他們的議決和讓他們自由辦事。如果你把責任和信念都丟在你代表身上，那你已使他成爲更強的人了。只能在有固定的證明，證明這個職員不能勝任的時候，才能由學生罷免他（罷免權）；否則使良好的學生灰心做辦事人員了。

在一另一方面，學生自治會的職員該有公益心，決不可爲自私的目的而工作。他們必定要保守秩序，服務大眾，在各種爭

work for selfish *ends*¹. They must preserve order, serve all alike, and give justice in all matters of dispute. They must see that rules are observed by all the students, and must always work for the general welfare of the whole student body. Let us determine in our schools to have self-government of a kind that our whole nation can *copy*.² The schools should teach good government and never bad government. The students in China have already done great things for their nation and its government. Here is another extremely important thing to do: to study and practice the right methods and principles of good government.

13. "Principles of National Reconstruction"

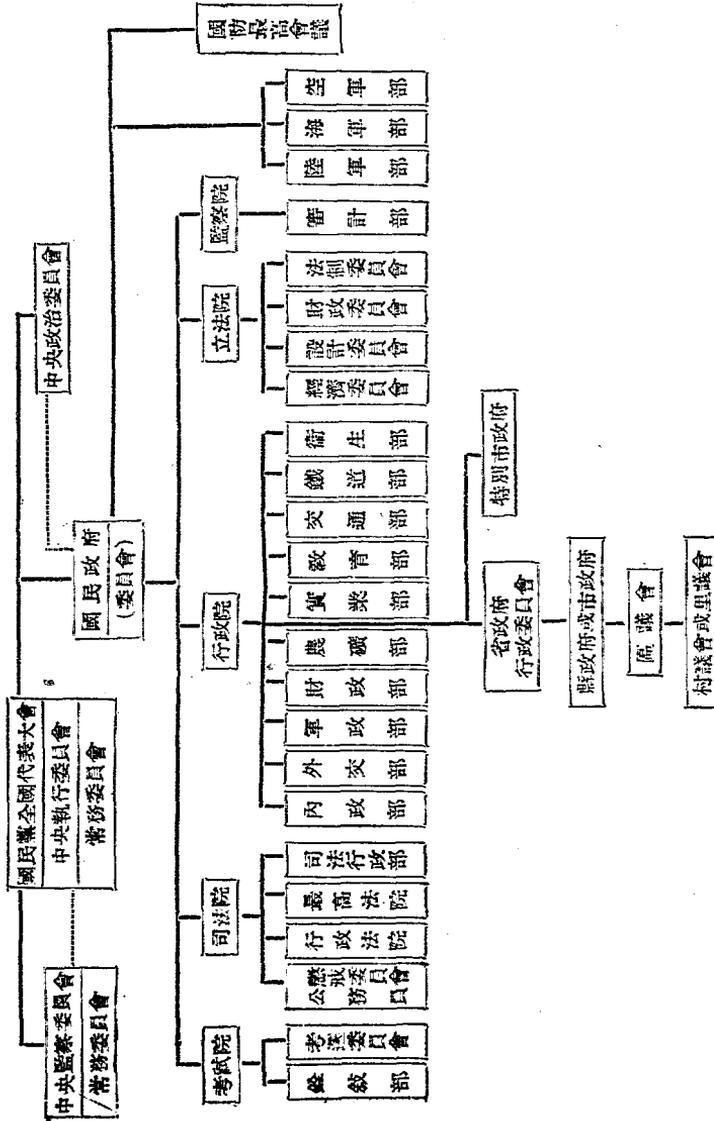
Not only must students in schools practice good government; the people at large must also learn the principles of self-government. An ancient monarchy cannot be changed into a modern democracy over night, although China is making progress at an *amazing*⁴ speed. Freedom, liberty, and political powers should be given to the people only as fast as they can learn how to use these wisely. They must be educated for a democratic government. Dr. Sun Yat-Sen outlined certain basic principles underlying this process of national reconstruction. He divided the process into three stages. The first is the *military stage*⁵, during which time all public affairs should be placed under a military government. The National Government should conquer all *opposition*⁶ and *unify*⁷ the country by military force. It should also convince the masses of the ideals of the People's Revolution. Since the Revolution has succeeded in bringing about a unified China, the military stage is over. The second is the *educative stage*⁸, during which time the National Government should develop natural resources, industry, and agriculture in order to improve the *livelihood*⁹ of the people, and at the same time should teach the people how to govern themselves until they are able to elect representatives and officials to make and carry out laws. The unit of self-government is the district. In a fully

1 目的。 2 取法。 3 藍圖大綱。 4 可驚的。 5 軍政時期。 6 反動。 7 統一。
8 訓政時期。 9 生計。

端上主持公道。他們必定要明白規則是爲全體學生所遵守的。他們必要常常爲全體學生的福利而工作。讓我們決定在本校設立一個自治會，其組織足爲全國所取法的。學校該以良好的政府教導學生，不可教不好的政府。中國的學生已曾爲本國和政府做過大事情了。這兒是另一種極端重要的事要做：去研究和實習良好政府的正確方法和原則。

十三 建國大綱

非但學生在學校裏要實習良好的政府；成人也必要學習自治會的原則。古代的帝制不能過了一夜就變做現代的民主的。雖然中國是以可驚的速率進步着。獨立，自由和政權該立即給予人民，如果他們能夠曉得怎樣聰明地運用它們。他們必須受民主政府的教育。孫逸仙博士劃出幾條基本原理，作建國程序的基礎。他把程序分爲三個時期。第一是軍政時期，在這個時候所有公共事業都處於軍事政府之下。國民政府要以武力克服所有的反動和統一全國。它還要把國民革命的觀念灌輸給人民。等到革命對於統一全國的工作告成，軍政時期也結束了。第二是訓政時期，在這個時候，國民政府該發展天然富源，工業和農業以改進人民的生計，同時教導人民怎樣自治，直到他們能夠選舉代表和官吏以制定與實施法律時爲止。自治政府的單位是縣。在一個完全自治的縣裏，人民都該能聰明地實行選



中華民國國民政府組織系統略圖

self-governed district the people should be able to exercise wisely the four political rights of suffrage, recall, initiative, and referendum. When all the districts in a province are fully self-governed, the province becomes fully self-governed. When more than half the provinces have reached this goal, the nation as a whole will be ready to enter into another new stage of reconstruction. This is called the *constitutional stage*¹. At that time a *national people's assembly*² will be called to determine the constitution of China. When that is done, a constitutional government will be established and managed accordingly.

14. The Five Administrative Powers³ of Government

A modern government must have definite and well-understood ways of-acting, or else there will be confusion, conflicts within the government itself, uncertainty and discouragement, waste of time and money, inefficiency in public service, and failure of law and order and justice. There must be a definite and well-understood way of making the laws, of carrying out the laws, of giving justice according to law and equity, of selecting competent men for public offices, and of supervising various organs of the government. These are called the five administrative powers of government. In the National Government of the Republic of China there are five Yuan, *exercising several/y*⁴ these five powers: the Executive Yuan, the Legislative Yuan, the Judicial Yuan, the Examination Yuan, and the Control Yuan. Western governments usually have departments similar to the first three only. The last two in our government, organized at the suggestion of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, are *quite unique*⁵ and serve some special needs in our country. A constitution providing for these five branches of government is called *the Constitution of Five Powers*⁶. Changes like those proposed by Dr. Sun Yat-Sen give our republic an opportunity to make use of the best in other national constitutions and also to take advantage of the best in China's own traditions.

1 憲政時期。 2 國民大會。 3 行政權。 4 各自行使。 5 很特別的。 6 五權

舉，罷免，創制，複決這四種政權。等到一省所有的縣都已完全自治的時候，這一省也成爲完全自治了。等到半數以上的省份已達到這個目的，整個的國家就將準備進入另一個建設的新的時期了。這個時期稱爲憲政時期。在那時候要召集一個國民大會以決定中國的憲法。等到這件事辦了以後，一個憲法政府就告成立，並依據憲法處理政務。

十四 政府的五種行政權

一個現代的政府必定要有固定的與明瞭的辦事方法，否則在政府之內就要有糾紛與抵觸，不穩定和不奮勵，浪費時間和金錢，公衆事業沒有效率，公律，秩序，與公道的失敗。一定要有固定的與明瞭的方法。以制定法律，實施法律，依據法律及衡平律例施行公道，選舉相當的人爲公家官吏，監督政府的各種機關。這些機關稱爲政府的五個行政權。中華民國國民政府有五院，各自行使這五種權：行政院，立法院，司法院，考試院，和監察院。西洋政府通常只有類似前三者分部。我國政府之後二者是以孫逸仙博士的提議而組織的，很稀有，對於我國有特別的需要。一種備有政府五種分枝的憲法是稱爲五權憲法。孫逸仙博士所建議的這些改革給予我國一種利用別國憲法的機會，並且也採取中國自己的舊例的長處。

An absolute monarch or *dictator*¹ may combine all these powers in himself, as does the owner and manager of a business, except so far as he chooses to let others act for him. In a big business corporation the *directors*² may make most of the rules, but all the rest is left to an executive. All the lawmakers and officers are really the representatives of the owners, stockholders, and citizens, who are back of the organization. Whether this organization is a club, a school, a railroad, a bank, a city, a province, or a nation, it must have these main functions of control provided for, and it must have definite and well-understood ways of providing for them.

15. The Organic Law³ of the National Government

Most of the modern nations have some fundamental law on which the government is based. In some nations it is called the constitution. On October 4, 1928, the Organic Law of the National Government of the Republic of China was *promulgated*⁴. It is a framework of the Constitution of Five Powers, which will come into existence as soon as the people are ready for constitutional government. This Organic Law provides that the National Government shall exercise all the governing powers, have command of all military forces, and have the power to *declare war*⁵ and to make peace and treaties. The National Government shall have five Yuan: the Executive Yuan, the Legislative Yuan, the Judicial Yuan, the Examination Yuan, and the Control Yuan. Each Yuan has a president and a *vice*⁶ president. There shall also be a president of the National Government. National affairs are conducted by a *State Council*⁷, whose membership includes the president of the National Government and from twelve to sixteen *state councilors*⁸. The president of the National Government shall be the chairman of the State Council, and the presidents and vice presidents of the five Yuan shall be appointed from among the state councilors. All matters that cannot be settled

1 獨裁者。 2 董事。 3 組織法。 4 公布。 5 宣戰。 6 副。 7 國務會議。 8 國務委員。

一個絕對的君主或獨裁者也許把這些權力集於一身，好像商業上的老板和經理般，除非由他選擇別人來代他做。在一家大商業公司裏董事可以制定大部分的規則，可是其餘的一切都留給執行者。所有制法的人和職員實在是老板，股東，和公民的代表，他們是這個組織的背景。不管這個組織是一個俱樂部，一所學校，一條鐵道，一家銀行，一個城市，一省，一國，它一定要把這些主要機構加以規定，並且必要用固定和明瞭的方法以規定之。

十五 國民政府的組織法

大多數的現代國家有一些政府所根據的基本法律。有些國家稱之為憲法。一九二八，十月四日中華民國國民政府的組織法公布。它是五權憲法的骨架，等到人民已足夠憲法政府的程度這個憲法就成立。這個組織法規定國民政府行使所有的政治權力，命令所有的軍隊，有宣戰，議和，訂約的權力。國民政府有五院：行政院，立法院，司法院，考試院，和監察院。每院設院長及副院長各一人。國民政府還有一位主席。國務由國務會議主持，它的委員包括國民政府的主席，十二至十六個的國務委員。國府主席就是國務會議的主席，五院正副院長由國務委員中委任。兩院或兩院以上，中間的事情有不能解決的可

between two or more of the Yuan shall be referred to the State Council for decision.

16. The Executive Yuan

In the government of a club or a company or a school or a small city it is best to have one small body of representatives to make the rules and the decisions and to see that they are carried out. This is called an executive committee or a *board of managers*¹ or a *commission*² or a *council*³, or the like. It is usually made up of elected representatives. Sometimes the chairman or the president or the manager is elected and given the responsibility of appointing the members. The advantages of having such a small ruling body are that the voters can know all the members well, that there is little waste in ineffective coöperation, that responsibility is easily placed, that action is quickly secured, and that mistakes are soon corrected.

In the government of a nation, however, the affairs are too many and *complicated*⁴ for any single ruling body, so there is division of labor between branches of the government. One of the most important is the executive branch. Its duty is to carry out laws and decisions made by the government. This is a complex process, because the laws are of many kinds. One law may say that no man may have two wives; another, that each voter must register before he votes; another, that no *opium*⁵ may be sold; another, that mail shall be delivered to the people both in town and in country; another, that cities may tax the people, but not over a certain rate; another, that all children must go to school; another, that goods coming into the country must pay import duties. Since these laws must be carried out, executives of various kinds are required. A law may order some sort of public service, but there must be definite responsibility for getting that service performed.

1 理事會。 2 委員會。 3 公會。 4 錯雜。 5 鴉片。

以提交國務會議議決。

十六 行政院

一個俱樂部，一家公司，一所學校，一座小城市的行政機關最好有一個小的代表團體以製造規則和議決案件，並視察它們的實施。這種團體稱為執行委員會或理事會或委員會或公會，或類似的名稱。它通常是由選舉出來的代表組成的。有時這位主席或是會長，或是經理是選舉出來的，而他負責委任會員。這種小統治團體的優點是投票人能夠完全知道一切的會員，就不至有無效的合作之銷耗，責任易有所關，行動可以迅速，錯誤立即可以改正。

國家的政府裏，事務畢竟太多太錯雜了，一個單獨的治體不能勝任，所以政府要在各支部之間分開工作。最最重要的一個是執行的一支部。它的責任是實施政府所制定的法律與議決的案件。這是種繁複的工作，因為法律有許多的種類呢。一條法律也許說沒有人可以有兩個妻子；又一條，每個投票人在投票以前必須登記；又一條，不准售賣鴉片；又一條不論鎮上或鄉下，郵件該送給人民；又一條城市可向人民徵稅，但不得超過定率；又一條，所有孩子必要入學；又一條貨物入國必須付進口稅。因為這些法律必定要實施，各種的執行機關是需要的。法律可以命令辦理幾種公共事業，但是必定要有確定的責任才能完成那種服務。

In our National Government this definite responsibility for the carrying-out of laws and decisions is placed in the Executive Yuan. It is the highest executive organ of the National Government. It has a president, a vice president, a number of *ministries*¹, and many subordinate officers.

*The Ministry for Foreign Affairs*² is in charge of relations with foreign nations. The minister and his officers and *secretaries*³ study the relation of the country to the affairs of the world, take part in international meetings, appoint representatives to foreign countries, and protect the interests of citizens who invest their money abroad or who go to foreign lands.

*The Ministry of the Interior*⁴ attends to the general welfare of the country. It deal with the problems of the conservation and development of natural resources, such as the forests, rivers, and harbors, and also with the social conditions of the people.

*The Ministry of Education*⁵ deals with the problems of provision, regulation, and promotion of educational enterprises in the country. Its influence extends over both public and private schools as well as many other educational and cultural agencies.

*The Ministry of Public Health*⁶ is charged with the duty to improve sanitary conditions, to prevent the spread of diseases, and to promote the health of the people in every possible way.

*The Ministry of Communications*⁷ supervises the management of the post office, the telegraph and cable service, the wireless and radio service, steamship transportation, and so on. It seeks to extend and develop various means of communication.

*The Ministry of Railways*⁸ supervises the management of railroads, improves existing railroads, and makes arrangements for constructing new ones. The need for the development of railroads in China is so great and the task

1 部長。 2 外交部。 3 秘書。 4 內政部。 5 教育部。 6 衛生部。 7 交通部。
8 鐵道部。

我們的國民政府裏這種實施法律與議決案的確定責任在於行政院。它是國民政府的最高執行機關。它有一個院長，一個副院長，若干部長和許多次級官吏。

外交部處理與外國的關係。部長和屬員及秘書研究世界事件對於本國的關係，參與國際會議，委派代表到外國去，並保護投資外國與到外國去的公民利益。

內政部料理國家的一般福利。從事保守與開發富源的問題，例如森林，河流，和港口，並且處分人民的社會狀況。

教育部處理全國教育事業的規定，調整，推進的問題。它的勢力不論公私立學校和許多別的教育的和文化的機關都能達到。

衛生部負有改良衛生狀況的責任，防止疾病的傳佈，以各種可能的方法增進人民的健康。

交通部監督郵政，電報及海底電，無線電報和電話，輪船運輸等等的管理。它計劃擴充與發展交通的各種方法。

鐵道部監督鐵道的管理，改良已成鐵道，並作建設新路的準備。在中國發展鐵道的需要是這末樣大，而這種工作又是這

is so complex that it has been placed in a separate ministry.

*The Ministry of Agriculture and Mining*¹ has the function of increasing production by improving agriculture, looking after the special needs of the rural population, and developing the mineral resources of the country.

*The Ministry of Industry, Labor, and Commerce*² has the task of promoting industry and commerce, bettering labor conditions, protecting patents and copyrights, and working for economic harmony between labor and capital.

*The Ministry of Military Administration*³ deals with the problems of the army, the navy, and the air fleet.

*The Ministry of Finance*⁴ must collect money to run the government and to carry out the laws. It must make up a budget showing how much money the government expects to spend and how much it expects to receive. It must also make *public reports*⁵; for since the people pay enormous sums in taxes, directly or indirectly, they should know where the money goes.

17. The Legislative Yuan

In a republic the legislative branch of the government is usually *composed*⁶ of representatives elected by the people. These have power to make laws, to declare war and peace, and to make treaties. They have the power of taxation and *authorize*⁷ the expenditure of public funds. A member of the legislature, therefore, is a person of great opportunity for good or evil. His position is one of grave responsibility. Every citizen should keep in touch with the work of the legislature and carefully note how it votes on all important questions. He should feel free to write to any member of the legislature upon any matter relating to good government or the welfare of the nation. It is not likely that most citizens are wiser than the legislators and can tell them how to

1 農礦部。 2 實業部。 3 軍政部。 4 財政部。 5 公報。 6 組成。 7 認可。

末的繁複，所以把它另立一部。

農礦部的職權是改良農業，以增加出產，關注農民的特別需要，發展國家的礦源。

實業部的職務是促進工商業，改善勞工狀況，保護專利權和版權，謀資本家與勞工的經濟上的和諧。

軍政部處理海，陸，空軍的問題。

財政部收集金錢以推動政府與實施法律。它必要製造預算，說明政府希望支出多少與希望收入多少。它還要製成公報；因為人民繳納了大宗款項的稅，直接或是間接的，他們該知道錢用到那裏去的。

十七 立法院

民主國家裏政府的立法一枝通常是由民選的代表組織的。他們有立法，宣戰與媾和，訂條約的權。他們有徵稅及認可公債的用款的權。所以，一個立法委員為善為惡都有極大的機會。他的地位有莊嚴的責任。每個公民該和立法的工作接近，並仔細地注意在一切重要問題上它怎樣地表決他該曉得他可以自由地寫信給任何個立法委員，討論關於政府的優良和國家福利的事。並不是說大多數的公民都比立法委員聰明而能夠告訴他們怎樣解決國家的問題只是他們理解的問題和活潑的興趣可

solve the nation's problems; but their intelligent questions and lively interest will stimulate the legislators to strenuous efforts and loyal devotion to the country's good. If ever you are a member of the legislature, do your *utmost*¹ to pass only laws which are for the good of the entire nation. Through the faithful *performance*² of your legislative duties you may do far more for the country than many of its military heroes.

The highest legislative organ of the National Government of the Republic of China is the Legislative Yuan. It is composed of from forty-nine to ninety-nine members, appointed by the National Government for a term of office of two years. The Legislative Yuan has the power to decide on legislation, budgets, declaration of war, negotiation for peace, conclusion of treaties, and other important international affairs. All resolutions passed by it shall be decided upon and promulgated by the State Council. The members of the Legislative Yuan may not hold at the same time nonpolitical administrative offices in the central or local governments.

18. The Judicial Yuan

In any organization the work of judging people and of judging even the officers and the laws themselves is usually given to some very stable part of the organization. The lower judges may be elected or appointed *from time to time*³, but the highest authorities must be as permanent as possible. In a school organization the principal is the final authority. He is able to prevent the constant changing of student officers and representatives from destroying the "government" or causing such confusion or loss as to make it ineffective. A business organization comes directly under the laws and courts of the city, province, and nation. These laws and courts themselves come under the *supreme court*⁴. The supreme court of the country decides whether the laws are properly made and properly carried out. Its work,

1 權力。 2 完成。 3 時時。 4 最高法院。

以刺激立法委員，使他們奮發地努力，和忠心於國家的利益。如果你是立法院裏的一個委員，你要盡力通過為全國謀利益的法律。忠誠地完成你的立法責任，其有功於國遠過於許多軍事上的英雄。

中華民國的最高立法機關是立法院。它以四十九至九十九個委員組成，由國民政府委任，任期兩年。立法院有決議法律，預算，宣戰，議和，結約，和別的重要國際事件的權。凡立法院通過的議決案由國務會議決定後公布。立法院的委員不得在同時兼任中央或地方政府的行政官。

十八 司法院

在任何組織中審判人民與審判甚至官吏和法律自身通常都歸於組織中的極穩固部分。低級法官可以時時改選或委任，但是最高當局必定要盡可能地久任。在學校組織裏校長是最終當局。他能夠阻止學生會職員與代表時常更動，以免破壞行政，引起糾紛，或使其工作無效率。一家商業組織直屬於城市，省，國的法律和法庭。這些法律和法庭自己是直屬於最高法院。一國的最高法院決定法律的制成是否適當，與施行得是否適當。它的工作可是必定要依據一些基本法。這些法律通常

in turn, must be according to some fundamental laws. These laws are usually the constitution of that particular country and international laws and agreements.

In the National Government of the Republic of China the highest judicial organ is called the Judicial Yuan. It takes charge of administration of courts, *disciplinary punishment*¹ of officials, and other judicial affairs. It also *recommends*² to the National Government the *granting of pardons*³, *deays of punishment*⁴, and *restoration of civic rights*⁵. The Chinese courts are being modernized, and modern laws—*penal*⁶, *civil*⁷, and commercial—are being introduced.

19. The Examination Yuan

For many centuries China had a system of government examinations by which able scholars were selected and appointed to fill important offices under the monarchy. The system was *abolished*⁸ in 1905, because *corruption*⁹ had set in and because the examinations were not of a kind that would test the type of ability needed to run a modern government. However, the principle of selection of ability by examination was not wrong. In many Western countries people who want to enter civil service must pass certain examinations given by the government. This prevents the appointment of officials merely for political reasons, and it prevents *favoritism*¹⁰. A citizen of ability along a certain line knows that he has a chance to render public service along that line, no matter how humble his origin. So there has been organized in our National Government an Examination Yuan, which is the highest examination organ in the country. It takes charge of examinations and determines the qualifications for public service. Many kinds of public offices can be filled only by citizens who have passed certain examinations and whose qualifications for public service have been determined by the Examination Yuan. The important thing is that the examinations must be of the right kind and be administered with strict fairness.

1 懲戒。 2 呈請。 3 特赦。 4 緩刑。 5 恢復公權。 6 刑事的。 7 民事的。
8 取消。 9 腐化。 10 徇私。

是一國的憲法和國際法及條約。

中華民國國民政府的最高司法機關稱爲司法院。它管理法院行政，懲戒官吏與處理別的法律上事務。它還可呈請國民政府給予特赦，緩刑和恢復公權。中國的法庭已現代化了，而現代的法律——刑事，民事，商業——也已採納了。

十九 考試院

已有許多世紀之久中國有政府的考試制度，有能力的學者由此選出來，充君主下面的重要官吏。這種制度在一九〇五年取消了，因爲裏面已經腐化，而且這種考試也考不出推行現代政府所需要的人才。可是由考試甄別人才的原則並沒有錯。許多西洋國家人民如要做文官，必定要經過政府的某種考試。這可以防止僅由政治的原因以委任官吏，並能防止徇私。一個有能力的公民循行某條路線，就知道他在這條路線上可以有爲公衆服務的機會，不管他的出身怎樣的低微。所以我們的國民政府才有考試院的組織，它是國中最高的考試機關。它管理考試和決定公共事業裏的服務資格。許多種的官吏只能由某種考試及格和他的服務資格已由考試院審定者才能充任。所重要的是考試必須正當，管理嚴格而公平。

20. The Control Yuan

Neither is the Control Yuan in our National Government an entirely new feature in Chinese government. There were "official advisers"¹ in the Tang dynasty and "official historians"² in the Tsing (Manchu) dynasty who exercised *ensorship*³ over the government. One of the *slogans*⁴ of the National Government is to make itself "a thrifty and honest government." It means to get rid of dishonest officials, to prevent corruption and *squeezes*⁵, to reduce waste in public expenditures, to practice national economy, and to encourage thrift in all officials. It does not necessarily mean a smaller and smaller national budget every year, because as the work of the government grows, the budget will increase; but it does mean full use must be made of every dollar of public incomes for the benefit of the people. To do all this, there must be a powerful body of officers to supervise the various branches of the government. Theirs is a very difficult task; they must have great courage and must be strongly supported by the people. The Control Yuan of the National Government is the highest supervisory organ in the country, and has the power to *impeach*⁶ unworthy officials and to *audit*⁷ all government accounts. It is composed of from nineteen to twenty-nine members, appointed by the National Government. They cannot at the same time hold any office in any of the organs of the central or local governments. This is to insure their absolute independence.

21. Unity and the Central Government

One of the important questions for a nation to decide is how largely its government should be centralized; in other words, what should be left to the province and what should be managed by the *federal*⁸, or central, authority. This is too large a question to discuss here. The United States fought a four years' war over "states

1 諫議大夫。 2 御史。 3 監察官的職位。 4 口號。 5 搜刮。 6 彈劾。 7 審查。 8 聯邦的。

二十 監察院

我們國民政府的監察院在中國政府裏並非是新鮮的特點。在唐朝已有『諫議大夫』，清朝也有『御史』，他們執行監察政府。國民政府有句口號，就是『廉潔政府』。它的意義是掃除貪官污吏，防止腐化和搜刮，公費上要縮減銷耗，實行國家經濟，提倡官吏節儉。它的意思並不必需預算逐年減少，因為如果政府的工作增長，預算也將增加；它的意義是公家收入的每一塊錢都要充分地用在人民的幸福上。要做到這點，就必須要一個有權力的官吏機關以監督政府的各支。這是很困難的職務；他們必須有莫大的勇氣，必須由人民堅強地支持它。國民政府的監察院，就是本國的最高監察機關，有彈劾不勝任的官吏和審查政府各機關賬目的權。它以十九至二十九個監察委員組成，由國民政府委任。他們不得在同時兼任中央或地方政府各機關的官吏。這足以保證他們的絕對獨立。

二十一 統一和中央政府

一個國家要解決一個最重要的問題，就是它的中央政府的集權該多末大；換一句話就是該留給省的權是什麼和什麼權可由聯邦或中央政府管理。這個問題在這兒討論是太大了。美國爲了『邦權』打了四年的仗。愛爾蘭爲要自治引起了內戰，經

rights." The desire for "home rule" for Ireland, which was granted finally after generations of struggle, caused civil war there. This problem should be dealt with most carefully by the citizens of China. It is easy to see that China has great national and international problems and that she will need a strong central government to deal with them. The nation's resources—through transportation and widespread means of communication—cannot be developed on a large scale without it. There can be no assurance of law and order unless the central government is strong. Even if one province or all the districts in one section secure perfect order and protection for the people, that section may be attacked by another section. There must be a few local police or soldiers and small provincial forces also, and then a national army to prevent local fighting or disorder and to repel invasion². A country sometimes suffers at the same moment from too many protectors and not enough protection. A strong central government needs very few soldiers to preserve order. After much civil war since the establishment of the Republic of China, we rejoice at the fact that the Revolution has succeeded in making China a united nation again. China must keep this unity in order to continue to be China. The coining of money, the relations with foreign countries, the carrying of mail, the drainage³ of rivers to prevent floods and promote commerce,—all these should be controlled by the central government. One of the chief meanings of patriotism is to be loyal to the central government. Let one of our mottoes be, "China forever and forever one"⁴.

22. The Will⁴ of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen

Sun Yat-Sen, founder of the Republic of China and leader of the People's Revolution, died on March 12, 1925, but he will live forever in the hearts of the people. Students of China must prepare themselves to carry on the task of national reconstruction that he so nobly

1 自治。 2 抵抗侵略。 3 疏導。 4 中國永遠統一。 5 遺囑。

過好幾代的奮鬥最後才得願給。中國公民該仔細地考慮這個問題。這是容易看出來的，中國有本國的與國際的大問題，因此她需要一個強固的中央政府處理之。沒有它國家的富源——經過運輸和普遍的交通方法——不能大規模地發展。除非中央政府強固，法律和秩序就沒有保障。就算一省或一區裏的各縣保有充分的秩序和人民的保障，那一區也會被別一區侵犯。所以必定要有少許的地方巡警或是兵士與少數的省防隊，並且還要中央軍以防止地方的戰爭，騷擾和抵抗侵略。一個國家有時保護者太多而同時却沒有充足的保護力量以至受害。一個強固的中央政府只需要很少的兵士來維持秩序。自從中華民國成立之後經過了許多次的內戰，終於國民革命重新統一中國成功了，這件事實是使我們懼怕的。中國必定要保守這個統一，在中國繼續存在。鼓鑄錢幣，與外國的關係，施行郵政，疏導河流以防止泛濫，推進商業——所有的這些事都該由中央政府管理。愛國的主要意義之一就是效忠於中央政府。讓我們人人以此為座右銘，『中國永遠統一』。

二十二 孫逸仙博士的遺囑

孫逸仙，中華民國的建國者，國民革命的領袖，卒於一九二五年三月十二日，可是他永久地在人民的心頭活着。中國學生該負起他光榮地開始的國家建設工作。他們該仔細地研究他

began. They should carefully study his will and all his writings. Here is a translation of his will:

For forty years I have devoted myself to the cause of the People's Revolution with the object of securing freedom and equality for China. My experience, *accumulated*¹ in these forty years, has firmly convinced me that to *attain*² this object we must awaken the masses of our own people and unite ourselves in a common struggle with those peoples of the world who treat us on the basis of equality.

As the revolution has not yet come to a complete success, all my *comrades*³ must follow my "Plans for National Reconstruction," "Basic Principles of National Reconstruction" "Three Principles of the People," and the "*Manifesto*"⁴ issued by the First National Convention of our party, and strive on earnestly for their full realization. The recently proposed People's Conference and the abolition of unequal treaties especially should be carried into effect at the earliest possible date. This is my *bequest to*⁵ you.

23. The "Three Principles of the People"

What are the aims of the Revolution and what are the guiding principles for the building of our new China? We find an answer in Dr. Sun's "Three Principles of the People." You may not realize it at first, but what we have been studying in this book is closely related to these principles.

The first principle is called *People's Nationality*⁶. It means (1) the awakening in our own people of a sense of national *solidarity*⁷; (2) the elevation of China to a position of freedom and equality among the nations of the world, (3) the opportunity for *self-determination*⁸, (4) the cultivation of the good qualities of the Chinese people,

1 積。 2 達到。 3 同志。 4 宣言。 5 遺言。 6 民族主義。 7 團結。 8 民族自決。

的遺囑和所有他的著作。下面是他的遺囑：

余致力於國民革命凡四十年，其目的在求中國之自由平等。積四十年之經驗，深知欲達到此目的，必須喚起民衆及聯合世界上以平等待我之民族共同奮鬥。

現在革命尙未成功，凡我同志務須依照予所著建國方略，建國大綱，三民主義及第一次全國代表大會宣言繼續努力，以求貫徹，最近主張開國民會議及廢除不平等條約，尤須於最短期間促其實現，是所至囑。

二十三 三民主義

革命的目的是什麼？建設新中國的領導原則是什麼？在孫先生的三民主義裏，我們找得一個答覆。你也許在起先不能明瞭，但是，我們在本書裏所讀的東西都和三民主義有密切關係的。

第一種主義稱爲民族主義。它的意義是(1)喚醒國民的民族團結的意識，(2)提高中國的自由地位，與世界各國平等，(3)民族自決的機會，(4)養成中國人民的良好品質，及(5)採納外國的

and (5) constant effort toward national progress by choosing the best from foreign nations and adapting it to the conditions of China.

In Chapters I—V of this book we have studied what patriotism means, why China is a nation to be proud of and to preserve, and how the spirit of pioneering and sacrifice can build China into a modern nation of stability and permanence.

The second principle is called *People's Sovereignty*¹. It means the government of China should be a government of the people², for the people³, and by the people⁴. The people shall exercise the four political rights of suffrage, recall, initiative, and referendum, and the government shall exercise the five administrative powers—executive, legislative, judicial, examining, and supervisory.

In Chapters XVI and XVII we have studied the fundamental ideas of liberty, law and order, the nature of government and public services, and our own political ideals and National Government.

The third principle is called *People's Livelihood*⁵. It means that the government must be so organized and so cooperate with the people that the people shall have more and better food, clothing, shelter, means of communication, education, and recreation.

In Chapters VI—XV we have studied the spirit of enterprise and efficiency in promoting modern business, industry, and agriculture; the development and conservation of natural resources; the saving of time and the best use of labor; the right use of money, or capital; the ideal of service in all occupations; the importance of science for national progress; the fundamental needs of the people; and the opportunities of health and education. All these are important problems in the great work of improving the livelihood of our four hundred million people.

Throughout the book we have been eager to appreciate the best in our own people and civilization, and at the

1 民權主義。 2 民有。 3 民享。 4 民治。 5 民生主義。

使其適應中國的情形，以此努力謀國家的進步。

在本書第一至第五章我們已讀過愛國的意義，爲什麼中國是個榮譽的國家和該加保存的國家，以及怎樣能以前驅的和犧牲的精神建設中國使其成穩固與永久的現代國家。

第二種主義稱爲民權主義。它的意義是中國政府該是民有，民享，民治的政府。人民執行選舉，罷免，創制，複決的四種政權，而政府也執行五種治權——行政，立法，司法，考試，監察。

在本書的十六和十七章裏，我們已讀過自由，法律與秩序和基本觀念，政府與公共事業性質，以及我們自己的政治觀念的國民政府。

第三種主義稱民生主義。它的意義是政府必定要與人民共同組織與合作，以謀人民有較多和較好的食物，衣着，居住，交通，教育和娛樂。

在本書的第六至十五章我們已讀過企業精神和推進現代商業，和農業的效率；發展和保守天然富源；省時與善用勞力；善用金錢或資本；一切職業的服務觀念；科學關於國家進步的重要；人民的基本需要；衛生與教育的機會。所有種種都是改良四萬萬人民生活的大工作的問題。

在本書中我們始終熱烈地珍重我們自己人民的優點和文化

same time we have been keen to study the best in modern nations of the West. This will make us better able to solve our own problems and to strive for our national progress. We have not finished this study; we have just begun. Let us always keep in mind the problems we have been studying, and let everyone determine to discover and do his or her part in this great and noble task of building a new China.

QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES

1. State in your own words the chief purposes of government.
2. What is a monarchy? an *oligarchy*? a democracy?
3. Contrast the new view of government with the older attitude toward it.
4. Write a short paragraph on "A Hero of Everyday Life."
5. Select some article of food that was brought to you by men of several countries and briefly trace its progress from its source to you.
6. In your own words tell what we mean by a "good army."
7. What are the five functions of government?
8. Name a few of the important departments of national government and tell briefly what each does.
9. Tell how the people can make use of specialists in government and at the same time have control over them.
10. Study Dr. Sun's will in Chinese and try to make a better translation than the one given.
11. Look back over this book and recall many examples of ways in which we have shown how the Three Principles are carried out in the life and government of a modern nation.
12. If you were appointed a magistrate of a district, how would you go about to teach self-government to the people in the district?

，同時我們還銳利地研究西洋現代各國的優點。這可以使我們更有能力去解決我們自己的問題和努力謀國家的進步。我們還沒有讀完畢；我們正在開頭呢。讓我們常常記好我們所讀過的問題，並且在建設新中國的偉大而高貴的事業中，讓人人決定去發見或工作他或她的本分。

問題和練習

1. 用本國文字說明政府的主要目的。
2. 專制是什麼？寡頭政治呢？民主政治呢？
3. 比較政府的新現象與舊態度。
4. 以『日常生活中的英雄』為題，寫一篇短文。
5. 選出幾種物品，為幾個不同國家的人民帶來給你的，並簡單追溯它從產生至到你手裏的過程。
6. 用本國文字說明你以為『好軍隊』的意義是什麼？
7. 政府有那五種職權？
8. 舉出幾個國民政府的重要機關，並簡單地陳說每個機關的職務。
9. 陳述人民怎樣能在政府中引用專家，在同時又怎樣能控制他們。
10. 研究中文的總理遺囑，並試為譯成比上文較好的英文。
11. 把本書重讀一遍，回憶許多方法的例子，這些方法是我們曾用以說明三民主義怎樣能在現代國家的生活，與政府中實現的。
12. 如果你被委任為縣長，你將怎樣去教育本縣人民自治？

